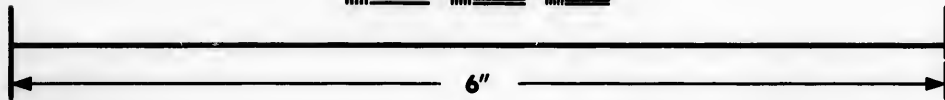
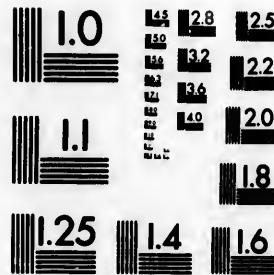


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14590
(716) 872-4503



**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques



© 1984

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments: / Various pegings.
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- Coloured pages/-
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

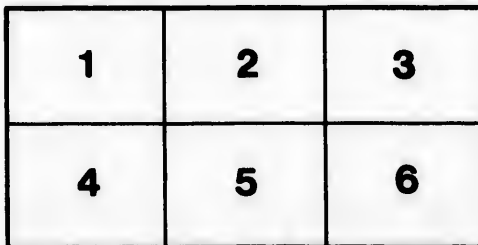
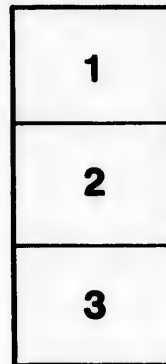
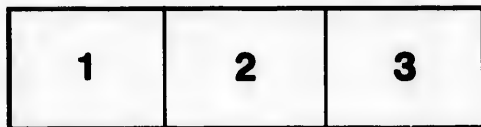
Douglas Library
Queen's University

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Douglas Library
Queen's University

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



T. FISHER, 1785

Published 17th April 1785 by R. Johnson and Son

Deviser's Rules

Con
 ison
 &
 and
 Cook
 Int
 in

Printe

Voyage to the Pacific Ocean
UNDERTAKEN
By Command of His Majesty for making
discoveries in the Northern Hemisphere
Performed
under the direction of Captains
Cook, Clerke and Gore
In the Years 1776, 7, 8, 9 and 80.
in Four Volumes. Volume 1st



Printed by R. Morison jun^r for R. Morison & Son
1785.

THE
P A
BY
D
NOR
CAPT
FROM TH
PRINTED
1847

J. 36. 66.

V O Y A G E
TO THE
P A C I F I C O C E A N ;

UNDERTAKEN
BY THE COMMAND OF HIS MAJESTY,
FOR MAKING
D I S C O V E R I E S

IN THE
N O R T H E R N H E M I S P H E R E ;

PERFORMED UNDER THE DIRECTION OF
C A P T A I N S C O O K , C L E R K E , A N D G O R E ,

IN THE YEARS
1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, 1780.

COMPILED
FROM THE VARIOUS ACCOUNTS OF THAT VOYAGE
HITHERTO PUBLISHED.

I N F O U R V O L U M E S .

T H E F O U R T H E D I T I O N .

V O L . I .

EDINBURGH:

PRINTED FOR R. MORISON AND SON, BOOKSELLERS IN
PARIS, AND W. COKE, BOOKSELLER IN LEITH,

1793.

LP

9420.C72

v.1

VOLUME I

BOOK II

Captains
 tion a
 age—
 Depart
 riffs—
 &c.—
 Good
 Island
 Coast
 Van I
 tives—
 Habito
 —Inter
 the H
 Crew—
 Country

behaviour
 Island
 —Vishi
 and M

C 72

THE
CONTENTS,
OF
VOLUME I.

BOOK I.

Captains Cook and Clerke appointed to the Resolution and Discovery—Preparations for the Voyage—Occurrences preceding their setting sail—Departure of the Resolution—Proceeds to Teneriffe—Some Accounts of the Island, Inhabitants, &c.—Junction with the Discovery at the Cape of Good Hope—Passage through Prince Edward's Islands—Arrival at Christmas Harbour—The Coast of Kerguelan's Land explored—Arrival at Van Diemen's Land—Interview with the Natives—Their Persons, Dress, Behaviour, and Habitations—Arrival at Queen Charlotte's Sound—Intercourse with the Natives—Particulars of the Horrid Massacre of the adventure's Boat Crew—Curious Remarks on the Inhabitants, Country, &c.—Departure from New-Zealand.

BOOK II.

Behaviour of the two New-Zealand Youths—The Island of Mangeea with its Inhabitants described—Visit and Behaviour of Mouroua—Disposition and Manners of the Mangeeans—Watecoo Dis-

A 2

covered

covered—*Mess. Gore, Burney, and Anderson, with Omai, sent on shore—Account of their Reception—Omai's Meeting and astonishing Adventure with his countrymen—Remarks concerning Wateco—Departure from it—Otakootaia or Wenoa-ette Visited—Singularity in the Natives of Hervey's Island—Submarine Grotto at Palmerston's Island—Arrival at the Friendly Isles—Amiable character of the Natives—Propensity to thieving—Of their persons—Transactions with them—Expedients to prevent their depredations—Opinions of the Islanders of a Volcano—Entertainments exhibited by the English and Natives—Mobs of Shavings, &c. Wife of Poulako, the King—Poulako's inauspicious Victory—Offering to prevent death—Mourning Ceremonies—Sentiments concerning the Soul—Future State—Their Language, &c.*

BOOK III.

Island of Tobouat Discovered—Arrival at Otahite—Omai's Reception—Otahite Visited by the Spaniards—Their Attempts to depreciate the Character of the English—Interview with Wabciatboa, the Chief of Faraboo—Omai's imprudent conduct—Poultry and cattle left on the Island—Captain Cook admitted into a council of the Chiefs—Reflections on a Human Sacrifice—Heevas Described—Girls Dressed to bring a present—Manner of preserving the Body of a Dead Chief—Riding on Horseback—Mock Fight between two war Canoes—A curious Medical Operation—Otai's Art—Omai's War Canoe—Naval Power, &c.

INTRODUCTION.

and Anderson,
 of their Re-
 ishing Adven-
 res concerning
 kootaia or We-
 the Natives of
 to at Palmer-
 iendly Isles—
 ves—Propensi-
 —Transactions
 their deprada-
 a Volcano—
 glifs and Na-
 Wifs of Foula-
 ate: Viatro—
 rning Ceremo-
 Boul—Fature
 e and, and
 val of beatus
 W. 1801—
 val at Otabeit
 d by the Spani-
 e the Character
 Kabeiaboa, the
 dent conduct—
 and—Captain
 e Chiefs—Re-
 Heewas Def-
 resent—Man-
 ad Chief—Ri-
 tween two war-
 ervation—Oto's
 al Power, &c
 DDUCTION.

INTRODUCTION.

ALTHOUGH Great Britain cannot vaunt
 of being an early Stoop to the spirit of
 discovery, but in that respect must give place to
 the Dutch, yet it may with truth be asserted
 that she has since far surpassed them, even in
 their own track. In the fifteenth and sixteenth
 centuries, some spirited enterprises were under-
 taken; but afterwards, the spirit of Discovery,
 seemed to have totally subsided, till about the
 year 1741, when by the command of his late
 Majesty, a voyage was undertaken under the di-
 rection of Captain Middleton, for discovering a
 north-west passage through Hudson's Bay. In
 1746, two ships were fitted out by subscription
 for the same purpose, under the command of
 Captains Smith and Moor. But it was refer-
 red for his present Majesty, by that munificence
 and patronage, which every liberal pursuit meets
 with from him, to open friendly communicati-
 ons, with some recesses of the Globe, hitherto
 unexplored. Captain (now Admiral) Byron,
 with the ships Dolphin and Tamar, in 1764—6;
 Wallis and Carteret, with the Dolphin and Swal-

low, in 1766-9, and Cook, with the Endeavour, in 1768-71, and with the Resolution and Adventure, in 1772-5, carried on a plan of Discovery, which it was the purpose of the present voyage to finish.

The intimate connection between these voyages, render it very necessary, to state as shortly as possible, the objects accomplished by the preceding voyages, and how far the intention of the present one has been answered.

In general, it may be premised, that the universal object of all the voyages of the present reign, was to explore the vast Ocean which extends thro' the whole Southern Hemisphere; as the result of all the researches which had hitherto been made, might be justly considered as obscure traditions, bold fictions, and plausible conjectures; that these five different circumnavigations, have answered a better purpose, than is visible from the following observations.

Falkland's Islands, in the South Atlantic Ocean were barely known to exist before Anson; and so erroneous was even his idea of them, that he considered Pepys Island and Falkland's Isles to be different places; there can be no doubt that they are the same, from Byron and McBride's joint testimony; and of them we have as exact charts, as of the Coasts of Great Britain itself. Besides this, the discovery of Sandwich Land, the most southerly point yet known, and the certain accounts we have of the Isle of Georgia, are all to be attributed to Cook. Sir John Narborough gave us very imperfect accounts of

Magalhaens

the Endeavour Resolution
 on a plan
 pose of the
 these voya-
 as short-
 shed by the
 intention of
 that the
 the present
 on which ex-
 Hemisphere;
 which had be-
 considered as
 and plausible
 nt circumsta-
 purpose, in
 fons.
 Atlantic O-
 before Anson;
 of them; that
 Island's Isles
 be no doubt
 and Mr. Brides
 say, as exact
 Britain itself
 rich, Islands
 and the
 of Georgia,
 in John Nis-
 accounts of
 Magalhaens

Magalhaens's Straits, but Captains Byron, Wal-
 s and Carteret, have furnished us with very
 accurate accounts of its coast, harbours, head-
 lands, bays, islands, tides, soundings, and cur-
 rents, which are a very valuable acquisition, and
 would deter any future adventurers from steering
 that course, especially when a much safer en-
 trance may be had to the Pacific Ocean, by
 doubling Cape Horn; this navigation Captain
 Cook has clearly shown, to be by no means attend-
 ed with such danger as might be suspected from
 the hardships and distresses which Anson and
 Barrb suffered there; and that wholly owing
 to the season in which they were obliged to ha-
 ve had it. But they have not only rendered the
 passage to the Pacific Ocean more easy, but have
 actually acquainted with a far greater part of
 its coasts. As the Spanish navigators had no
 other design, than to get a passage to the Mo-
 reccas and other spice Islands, they never steer-
 ed further westward, by deviating from their
 track, except accidentally, and if then they fell
 upon any Islands, or made any discoveries,
 the benefit was derived from them, their ac-
 counts being so inaccurate as sometimes to occa-
 sion a question if such places existed. Indeed,
 the vast quantity of territory annexed to the
 Spanish Crown; and the many rich mines never
 sought, rendered new acquisitions by no means
 to be coveted; so that, except the annual Man-
 ana and Acapulco ships, they seldom attempted
 to steer across the vast gulph which separates
 Asia from America.

Other

Other

Other Navigators in these seas, generally followed the Spanish track: as indeed, their sole business there, was either for the purpose of commerce or hostilities with them. It is probable then, that after passing Terra del Fuego, they would hold a northerly course to the uninhabited Island of Juan Fernandes, and thence sail along the American coast from Chili to California, but they would either return to the Atlantic by the same course, or steer the track of the Phillipine galleons, as trade or rapine could be benefited by no other. In latter years, the enterprising Dutch have made some more certain and effectual researches in the southern latitudes of this ocean. In 1642 Tasman's voyage will ever be remembered, for the discoveries he made in a circuit, reaching from a high southern latitude, so far North as New Guinea. Le Maire and Schouton in 1616, and Roggiuein in 1772, crossing the south tropic, traversed this ocean, from Cape Horn to the East Indies. But even the discoveries they made, can only be considered as a proof how much might be done. If they discovered a coast, they often declined to land; or if they ventured, their enquiries and observations were so futile, as not to satisfy common curiosity, much less philosophical enquiry.

While we thus must allow the Dutch to have been our harbingers, it is also to be observed, that we afterwards went beyond them, even in their own track. And now successively his Majesty's ships have penetrated into the obscure

It reced
ar fre
oration
so con
The se
covere
anish
er; an
any co
ry me
mist
us, th
to, w
thern
true p
the Ne
But de
access
g catal
cal kno
tific O
endle
found
azing
her sep
as clust
ceived,
t, to m
have le
Byron,
wards in
Pacific
thern t
reil

generally fol-
 lowed, their sole
 purpose of
 m. It is pro-
 ra del Fuego,
 rise to the un-
 es, and thence
 a Chili to Ca-
 return to the
 steer the track
 de or rapine
 In latter years,
 le some more
 the southern
 1742 Tasman's
 for the dis-
 achings from
 North as New
 in 1616, and
 south tropic,
 e Horn to the
 coveries they
 a proof how
 discovered a
 d; or if they
 ervations were
 non curiosity,
 Dutch to have
 be observed,
 them, even in
 uccessively his
 nto the obscu-
 reit

It recollects of the South Pacific Ocean, will ap-
 pear from a recital of their various and extensive
 operations, which have adjusted the geography
 of so considerable a part of the globe.

The several lands, mentioned to have been
 discovered by preceding navigators, whether
 Spanish or Dutch have been diligently sought
 for; and most of those which appeared to be
 of any consequence, found out and visited; when
 every method was put in practice to correct for-
 mer mistakes, and supply former deficiencies.
 Thus, the famous Tierra Austral del Espiritu
 Santo, which was always considered a part of a
 Southern continent, Captain Cook has defined
 its true position and bounds, in the Archipelago
 of the New Hebrides.

But besides perfecting the discoveries of their
 predecessors, our late navigators have added a
 new catalogue of their own, to enrich geogra-
 phical knowledge. By repeatedly traversing the
 South Pacific Ocean, within the south tropic, a seem-
 ingly endless profusion of habitable spots of land
 were found. Islands interspersed through the
 amazing space of eighty degrees of longitude,
 either separately scattered, or grouped in nume-
 rous clusters; and such ample accounts have we
 received, both of them and their inhabitants,
 that, to make use of the Captain's own words,
 we have left little more to be done in that part.

Byron, Wallis, and Carteret all contributed
 towards increasing our knowledge of the isles in
 the South Pacific Ocean, within the limits of the
 southern tropic; but how far that ocean ex-
 tended

tended to the west, by what lands it was bounded on that side, and the connections of those lands with the former discoveries, remained unknown, till Captain Cook, after his first voyage, brought back a satisfactory decision to these questions. With wonderful skill and perseverance, amidst perplexities, difficulties and dangers, he traced this coast almost 2000 miles, from the 33° of south latitude, across the tropic, to its northern extremity, within 10° and a half of the equinoctial, where it joined the land, already explored by the Dutch, which they have denominated New Holland. Tasman's discovery in the last century is now completed by Captain Cook; and we are fully acquainted with the circumference of this vast body of land, which is justly computed to be *One Fifth of the Globe.*

Although Tasman was the first Discoverer of New-Zealand, yet the small portion of it along which he sailed, rendered his account of it imperfect, that it was the general opinion of geographers, that New-Zealand was part of a Southern Continent, running North and South from the 33° to the 64° of south latitude. Captain Cook having spent six months in this country in 1769 and 70 has fully explored it, and all its coasts; so that from his accounts, as well as that of other visitors, it is established to be no part of a continent, but containing the largest islands, hitherto discovered in the southern hemisphere.

Again, Captain Cook has put beyond doubt that there is no junction between New-Holland

d New
em. T
covered
certain
portanc
reflect
her tha
leagues
ns from
provinc
or a si
indebt
a name
lists of
ough w
ch bett
east-w
Islands
Byron,
ployed
w no m
tally oc
as Cap
age was
ite, his
venting
, where
suppose
ectures
out wit
2, on t
erto att
be in hi

and New Guinea, as he sailed through between them. Though Mr Dalrymple and others had discovered some traces of such a passage, yet the uncertainty of its practicability, as well as the importance of the discovery, may be judged of, reflecting that Mons. Bougainville in 1768, rather than attempt such a passage, sailed nine-leagues about, while reduced to feed on sealskins front of the yards and riggings, for want of provisions

For a similar discovery to the preceding, we are indebted to Captain Carteret; *viz.* that the island named by Captain Dampier New Britain, consists of two large and several smaller islands, through which, by Sir George's Channel, is a much better and shorter passage, whether from east-ward or west-ward, than round all the Islands and lands to the north-ward

Byron, Wallis and Carteret were principally employed in exploring the south Atlantic, and knew no more of the south Pacific, than accidentally occurred in the direct tract they held: as Captain Cook's main object in his first voyage was to observe the transit of Venus at Otaheite, his anxiety to be there in proper time, preventing his visiting that part of the South Pacific, where the riches and mine of discovery were supposed to exist. To put an end to all conjectures on this matter, Captain Cook was sent out with the Resolution and Adventure, in 1772, on the most enlarged plan of discovery hitherto attempted, *viz.* to circumnavigate the globe in high southern latitudes, and carefully

to

to examine every corner of the South Pacific, and to determine, whether a southern continent existed in any accessible part of the South Sea hemisphere.

In attending Captain Cook in this second voyage together with his preceding one, we have the greatest certainty to conclude, that many extensive continents and islands mentioned by former navigators, were either large fields of ice, or existed only in the chimerical heads of the pretended discoverers.

It has been, by many, considered an insuperable argument, that a southern continent is necessary to preserve the static equilibrium of the earth; but from the thorough knowledge of the greater part of the southern hemisphere, of which we are now possessors, we may with certainty assert that the equilibrium of the earth is maintained, although the vast track of sea filled throughout leaves no proportion for an equal quantity of land.

That though some preceding navigators have annexed more land to the known Globe, the Captain Cook, to him belongs the honour of disclosing the extent of sea covering its surface. To conclude our observations on this subject we shall make free with his own words: "I have now made the circuit of the southern Ocean at a high latitude, and traversed it in such a manner as to leave not the least room for there being a continent, unless near the pole, and out of the reach of navigation. By twice visiting the tropical sea, I had not only scolded the

tion o
many
to be d
that th
respect
hisphere
ent to
which I
ome of
eries p
ograp
From
in of
ough
uther
we ha
a nos
acific
estward
ound
Could
daily
East
on this
Notwi
ese diff
obtaining
estirable,
VOL I.
* The pr
bpt, in L
adore co
1631; 4th
reventen
private so

tion of some old discoveries, but made there many new ones, and left, I conceive, very little to be done in that part. Thus I flatter myself, that the intention of the voyage has, in every respect, been fully answered; the southern hemisphere sufficiently explored; and a final end put to the searching after a southern continent, which has, at times, engrossed the attention of some of the maritime powers for near two centuries past, and been a favourite theory amongst geographers of all nations.

From the general sketch we have already given of the preceding voyages, it is evident that, though the utmost accessible extremities of the southern hemisphere had been visited, yet our knowledge had not; and it remained a question, how a northern passage between the Atlantic and Pacific Ocean was practicable, either by sailing westward round North America, or eastward, round Asia.

Could such a passage be effected, it would greatly shorten passages to Japan, China, and the East Indies, in general. But all the attempts for this purpose proved ineffectual*.

Notwithstanding the insuperable bars which these different navigators had experienced, the obtaining a northerly passage was an object so desirable, that it was determined to bring the

VOL. I. B matter

* The principal of these attempts were made by, 1st, Bont, in 1496, who discovered Newfoundland and the Labrador coast; 2d, Frobisher, in 1576; 3d, James and Ross, in 1631; 4th, Wood, in 1676; 5th, Middleton, fitted out by the Government, in 1741; 6th, Captains Smith and Moore, by private society, in 1746; lastly, Lord Mulgrave, in 1773.

matter to a certainty, by sending out Captain Cook once more on this important errand. Thus was this valuable commander again called to expose himself to new toils and dangers, in the service of mankind, although, after what he had already done, he might have enjoyed himself at home, in ease and plenty, without any imputation of sloth.

The various operations proposed were so new and extensive, that they can be best judged of from the following Instructions, under which he sailed.

By the Commissioners for executing the office of Lord High Admiral of GREAT BRITAIN and IRELAND, &c.

SECRET INSTRUCTIONS for Captain JAMES COOK, Commander of his Majesty's Sloop the RESOLUTION.

WHEREAS the Earl of Sandwich has signified to us his Majesty's pleasure, that an attempt should be made to find out a Northern passage by sea, from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean; and whereas we have, in pursuance thereof, caused his Majesty's sloops, Resolution and Discovery, to be fitted, in all respects, proper to proceed upon a voyage for the purpose above mentioned, and, from the experience we have had of your abilities and good conduct in

our Captain
again called
dangers, in
ter what he
enjoyed him-
without any
were so new
it judged: of
der which he

ing the office
AT BRITAIN and
the enobivory

for Captain
his majesty's

to guiding

which has sig-
pleasure, that

out a North

to the Atlan-

in pursuance

s. Resolution

respects, pro-

the purpos

experience. We

conduct in

you

your late voyages, have thought fit to intrust
you with the conduct of the present intended
voyage, and with that view appointed you to
command the first mentioned sloop, and direc-
ed Captain Clerke, who commands the other,
to follow your orders for his further proceedings.
You are hereby required and directed to proceed
with the said two sloops directly to the Cape of
Good Hope, unless you shall judge it necessary
to stop at Madeira, the Cape de Verd, or Ca-
nary Islands, to take in wine for the use of their
companies; in which case you are at liberty to
do so, taking care to remain there no longer
than may be necessary for that purpose.

On your arrival at the Cape of Good Hope,
you are to refresh the sloops companies and to
cause the sloops to be supplied with as much
provisions and water as they can conveniently

now. You are, if possible, to leave the Cape of

Good Hope by the end of October, or the be-

ginning of November next, and proceed to the

south-ward in search of some islands said to have

been lately seen by the French, in the latitude

of 48° 0' south, and about the meridian of

Mauritius. In case you find those islands, you

are to examine them thoroughly for a good har-

bour; and upon discovering one, make the ne-
cessary observations to facilitate the finding it a-

gain; as a good port, in that situation, may
hereafter prove very useful, although it should

afford little or nothing more than shelter, wood,
and water. You are not, however, to spend

too much time in looking out for those islands, or in the examination of them, if found, but proceed to Otaheite, or the Society Isles, (touching at New-Zealand in your way thither, if you should judge it necessary and convenient), and taking care to arrive there time enough to admit of your giving the sloop companies the refreshments they may stand in need of, before you prosecute the further object of these instructions.

Upon your arrival at Otaheite, or the Society Isles, you are to land Omai at such of them as he may choose, and to leave him there.

You are to distribute among the Chiefs of those islands such part of the presents with which you have been supplied as you shall judge proper, reserving the remainder to distribute among the natives of the countries you may discover in the Northern Hemisphere. And having refreshed the people belonging to the sloops under your command, and taken on board such wood and water as they may respectively stand in need of, you are to leave those islands in the beginning of February, or sooner if you shall judge it necessary, and then proceed in as direct a course as you can to the coast of New Albion, endeavouring to fall in with it in the latitude of 45° 0' north; and taking care, in your way thither, not to lose any time in search of new lands, or to stop at any you may fall in with, unless you find it necessary to recruit your wood and water.

You are also, in your way thither, strictly enjoined

enjoin
nish o
meric
able a
longer
and to
or off
of his
ther p
direct
Prince
may th
them,
but, o
ty and
- Upe
on, yo
to recr
refresh
along
further
ise y
ring r
until y
of 65^o
month
you ar
plore,
of a co
Hudso
own ob
may re
son to

enjoined not to touch upon any part of the Spanish dominions on the Western continent of America, unless driven thither by some unavoidable accident; in which case you are to stay no longer there than shall be absolutely necessary, and to be very careful not to give any umbrage or offence to any of the inhabitants or subjects of his Catholic Majesty. And if, in your further progress to the north-ward, as hereafter directed, you find any subjects of any European Prince or State upon any part of the coast you may think proper to visit, you are not to disturb them, or give them any just cause of offence, but, on the contrary, to treat them with civility and friendship.

Upon your arrival in the coast of New Albion, you are to put into the first convenient port to recruit your wood and water, and procure refreshments, and then to proceed north-ward along the coast, as far as the latitude of 65° , or further, if you are not obstructed by lands or ice, taking care not to lose any time in exploring rivers or inlets, or upon any other account, until you get into the before-mentioned latitude of 65° where we could wish you to arrive in the month of June next. When you get that length you are very carefully to search for, and to explore, such rivers or inlets as may appear to be of a considerable extent, and pointing towards Hudson's or Baffin's Bay; and if, from your own observations, or from any information you may receive from the natives, (who there is reason to believe are the same race of people, and

speak the same language, of which you are furnished with the vocabulary, as the Esquimaux), there shall appear to be a certainty, or even a probability, of a water passage into the above-mentioned bays, or either of them, you are, in such case, to use your utmost endeavours to pass through with one or both of the sloops, unless you shall be of opinion that the passage may be effected with more certainty, or with greater probability, by smaller vessels; in which case you are to set up the frames of one or both the small vessels with which you are provided, and, when they are put together, and are properly fitted, stored, and victualled, you are to dispatch one or both of them under the care of proper officers, with a sufficient number of petty officers, men, and boats, in order, to attempt the said passage, with such instructions for their rejoining you, if they should fall, or for their further proceedings, if they should succeed in the attempt, as you shall judge most proper. But, nevertheless, if you shall find it more eligible to pursue any other measures than those above pointed out, in order to make a discovery of the before-mentioned passage, (if any such there be), you are at liberty, and we leave it to your discretion to pursue such measures accordingly.

In case you shall be satisfied that there is no passage through to the above-mentioned bays sufficient for the purposes of navigation, you are, at the proper season of the year, to repair to the port of St Peter and St Paul in Kamtschatka, or wherever else you shall judge more proper, in

order

you are fur-
 (Esquimaux),
 ty, or even
 into the afore-
 ; you are, in
 avours to pass
 loops, unless
 affage may be
 with greater
 which case you
 both the small
 ty, and; when
 properly fitted,
 dispatch one
 of proper offi-
 petty officers,
 empt the said
 their rejoin-
 their further
 ed in the at-
 proper. But,
 ore oblig'd to
 those above
 fovery of the
 uth there be),
 it to your dis-
 cordingly. all
 at there is no
 mentioned bays
 ation, you are,
 o repair to the
 mtshatka, or
 te proper, in
 order

order to refresh your people, and pass the win-
 ter; and, in the spring of the ensuing year
 1778, to proceed from thence to the northward;
 as far as, in your prudence, you may think pro-
 per, in further search of a North-West passage
 from the Pacific Ocean into the Atlantic Ocean
 by the North-Sea; and if, from your own ob-
 servation, or any information you may receive,
 there shall appear to be a probability of such a
 passage, you are to proceed as above directed,
 and, having discovered such passage, or fail'd
 in the attempt, make the best of your way back
 to England, by such route as you may think
 fit for the improvement of geography, and na-
 vigation; repairing to Spithead with both fleets,
 where they are to remain till further order.
 At whatever places you may touch in the
 course of your voyage, where accurate observa-
 tions of the nature hereafter mentioned have
 not already been made, you are, as far as your
 time will allow, very carefully to observe the
 true situation of such places, both in latitude
 and longitude; the variation of the needle;
 the bearings of head-lands; height, direction, and
 course of the tides and currents; depths, and
 soundings of the sea; shoals, rocks, &c.; and
 so to survey, make charts, and take views of
 such bays, harbours, and different parts of the
 coast, and to make such notations thereon, as
 may be useful either to navigation or commerce.
 You are also carefully to observe the nature of
 the soil, and the produce thereof; the animals,
 and fowls that inhabit or frequent it; the fishes
 that

that are to be found in the rivers or upon the coast, and in what plenty; and, in case there are any peculiar to such places, to describe them as minutely, and to make as accurate drawings of them, as you can; and, if you find any metals, minerals, or valuable stones, or any extraneous fossils, you are to bring home specimens of each, as also of the seeds of such trees, shrubs, plants, fruits, and grains, peculiar to those places, as you may be able to collect, and to transmit them to our Secretary, that proper examination and experiments may be made of them. You are likewise to observe the genius, temper, disposition, and number of the natives and inhabitants, where you find any; and to endeavour, by all proper means, to cultivate a friendship with them; making them presents of such trinkets as you have on board, and they may like best; inviting them to traffic; and shewing them every kind of civility and regard; but taking care, nevertheless, not to suffer yourself to be surpris'd by them, but to be always on your guard against any accidents.

You are also, with the consent of the natives to take possession, in the name of the King of Great Britain, of convenient situations in such countries as you may discover, that have not already been discovered or visited by any other European power; and to distribute among the inhabitants such things as will remain a trace and testimonies of your having been there; but if you find the countries so discovered are uninhabited, you are to take possession of them

for

or upon the
in case there
describe them
re drawings of
d any metals,
y extraneous
mens of each
hrubs, plants,
ose places, w
transmit them
mination and
m. You are
nper, disposi
and inhabi
o endeavour
e a friendship
s of such tri
they may like
shewing them
; but taking
yourself to be
ways on your
of the natives
f the King o
ations in such
that have no
by any othe
ribute among
will remain a
ng been there
discovered an
ession of them
fo

his Majesty, by setting up proper marks and descriptions, as first discoverers and possessors.

But forasmuch as, in undertakings of this nature, several emergencies may arise, not to be foreseen, and therefore not particularly to be provided for by instructions before-hand; you are, in all such cases, to proceed as you shall judge most advantageous to the service on which you are employed.

You are, by all opportunities, to send to our Secretary, for our information, accounts of your proceedings, and copies of the surveys and drawings you shall have made; and upon your arrival in England, you are immediately to repair to this office, in order to lay before us a full account of your proceedings in the whole course of your voyage; taking care, before you leave the sloop, to demand from the officers and petty-officers the log-books and journals they may have kept, and to seal them up for our inspection; and enjoining them, and the whole crew, not to divulge where they have been, until they shall have permission so to do; and you are to direct Captain Clerke to do the same, with respect to the officers and crew of the Discovery.

If any accident should happen to the Resolution in the course of the voyage, so as to disable her from proceeding any further, you are, in such case, to remove yourself and her crew into the Discovery, and to prosecute your voyage as she shall direct; her Commander being hereby strictly required to receive you on board, and to obey your

your orders, the same, in every respect, as when you were actually on board the Resolution. And in case of your inability, by sickness or otherwise, to carry these Instructions into execution, you are to be careful to leave them with the next officer in command, who is hereby required to execute them in the best manner he can.

Given under our hands the 6th day of July, 1776.

SANDWICH.

C. SPENCER.

H. PALLISER.

By command of their Lordships,

PH. STEPHENS.

Government, now heartily in earnest, neglected no step which might tend to promote the object in view. In 1745, a law had passed offering a donation of £100,000 to the discoverer of a Northern passage through Hudson's Bay, in which his Majesty's ships were excluded. This was now extended to any ship belonging to his Majesty, or any of his subjects, and the restriction to Hudson's Bay cancelled, bearing that the discoverer of a passage by sea, between the Atlantic and Pacific Ocean in any direction, or parallel of the Northern Hemisphere, should be entitled, &c. As also a reward of five thousand pounds, to any ship that should approach to within 1° of the North Pole. In the beginning of summer 1776, Captain Pickersgill was appointed

Commander of the armed brig the *Lion*, and ordered to proceed to Davis's Straits, to protect the British fishers; and in order to facilitate Captain Cook's expedition, to proceed up Baffin's Bay, and make such charts and take such views of the several bays, harbours, &c. as might be useful to navigators and others; and to be careful to return in the fall of the year. As Bicker Gill failed in executing his commissions, and in March following Lieutenant Young was appointed to succeed him.

As the object of this voyage is immediately connected with that of Captain Cook, we have annexed a summary of his instructions, dated March 13th, 1777. The first article is to be commencing with
 "That as the Resolution and Discovery had been sent out under the command of Capt. Cook, to attempt the discovery of a northern passage, by sea, from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean, and to run as far up as the 65° of north latitude, and there, and as far north as he judged it proper, to search for such rivers or inlets as might appear to him pointing towards Baffin's Bay, or the north seas; and to attempt a passage by these if possible: so, on the other hand, you are to proceed to Baffin's Bay, and carefully to explore the western shores thereof; and if an inlet or river is discovered seemingly pointing towards the Pacific Ocean, you are to attempt navigating the same; and if not, endeavour to return to England once this year."

But this expedition was of no service; Young

was

was found more calculated to assist in the glory of a victory, than explore icy mountains.

On examining these instructions, it may be questioned, why Captain Cook was not directed to commence his search, before he arrived at 65° ? Why not examine Hudson's Bay, on our side of America? Why was the western sea of John de Fuca in latitude 47° and 48° ; the Archipelago of St Lazarus of Admiral de Fonte from 50° to 55° ; and the rivers and lakes to the north east-ward, neglected? It may easily be shewn that these pretended discoveries are mere fictions, and that the Orders, not to begin his search before the 65° of north latitude was founded upon a thorough knowledge of the coast to the south-ward of that point.

Captain Middleton, the commander of the expedition in Hudson's Bay, in 1741, and 42, had entertained a notion of the probability of discovering a passage to the Pacific, and in search of it, had proceeded further north than any of his predecessors; but he found it utterly impracticable. Mr Dobbs, however, the patron of the interprise, upon the information of some of Middleton's officers, ventured to accuse him of misrepresenting facts, and that from his own accounts of an inlet running west-ward in latitude 65° or 66° it was evident he had not taken proper pains. To be at a point upon this, he prevailed upon a society of merchants and gentlemen to fit out the Dobbs and California to investigate this very inlet, having previously got the L. 20,000 premium established.

But

But
Middl
was fo
rad ex
posed
of this
tainabl
most p
bet, i
Bay in
directe
able, v
under
and thi
acted
rom v
voyages
Church
Bene
incida
was sen
level
tr, wh
Dobbs
et out
Wales,
is tran
al. I
were pu
ount o
nhabita
eral b
771,

ft in the glory
untains. It
ns, it may be
as not directed
he arrived at
s Bay, on our
western sea of
48°; the Ar-
miral de Fonte
and lakes to
It may easily
discoveries are
ers, not to be
north latitude
nowledge of the
oint.
mander of the
1741, and 42,
probability of
and in search
h than any of
it utterly im-
r, the patron
nation of some
to accuse him
from his own
ward in lati-
e had not ta-
int upon this,
merchants and
and California
ng previously
lished.

But

But this voyage abundantly established Captain Middleton's opinion; for the supposed straits was found to be a fresh water river. So high an expectation been raised in favour of this supposed passage, that notwithstanding the failure of this expedition, it was still considered as attainable. Two places were mentioned as the most probable, the one Chesterfield or Bowden's Bay, in latitude 63° or 64°, the other Repulse Bay in latitude 67°. This last, the committee who directed the enterprise, declared to be impracticable, upon the testimony of Mr Ellis, the commander of the *Dobbs*, and some of his officers; and the former has been fully explored, and traced 270 miles up the country, to a large lake from whence it takes its rise, in two different voyages by Captain Christopher, in the sloop *Churchill* in the years 1701 and 62.

Besides these sea voyages, the matter is much elucidated by the journey of Mr Hearne, who was sent out by the Hudson's Bay company to travel over land, as far as the *Coper Mine River*, which had been much spoken of by Mr *Dobbs* and other favourers of the scheme. He set out in December 1770, from Fort Prince of Wales, on Churchill's River lat. 58° 50', and his transactions are preserved in his written journal. It is much to be wished that this journal were published, as it contains a very dismal account of the wretched situation of the miserable inhabitants of that part of the globe. His general course was to the north-west. In June 1771, when at a place called *Conge Catha wha*

C

Chaga,

Chaga, he determined by two good observations, that this place is situated $24^{\circ} 2'$ west longitude of Churchill River, and in $68^{\circ} 46'$ north latitude. On the 13th of July, he reached Copper Mine River; and contrary to the idea he had been left to form of it, found it scarcely navigable for a canoe. Without entering particularly into the account Mr Hearne gives of this river, it is sufficient for our purpose to mention, that he found it by no means navigable for the smallest vessels, and impossible to be made so. On our general chart, the particular situation of this river, as well as the country in general, through which Mr Hearne passed, is accurately laid down. In fine, Mr Hearne's travelling 1300 miles before he arrived at the sea, makes it clear that the continent of North America stretches from Hudson's Bay, at least that distance to the north-west, while his most westerly distance from Hudson's Bay was about 600 miles; and the Indians who attended him as guides were convinced that there existed a vast track of continent, stretching on in the same direction. What we have now mentioned, being sufficiently known to the first Lord of the Admiralty, was a good reason for his ordering Captain Cook to commence his search in latitude 65° , and not more to the south-ward. But if there are any, we are still inclined to think it should have begun earlier. We beg leave to recommend to them a perusal of the Spanish voyages, particularly that on the coast of America in 1775, published by Mr Danes Barrington.

In the present idea may be done. The be rated a 1. A as Buff few vo of trea gain C and wh imprac by hav 2. B discour ries att great n of the rocky shoals, besides which, part of By thus a scene course height any con highly p be made an the f have ta

f observations,
 west longitude
 46' north lati-
 tude. Attached
 Copper. The
 idea he had
 scarcely navi-
 gating particu-
 larly of this ri-
 se to mention,
 vailable for the
 to be made fo-
 lar situation of
 ry in general,
 d, is accurately
 ne's travelling
 he sea, makes
 North America
 least what dif-
 is most wester-
 was about 600
 tended him a
 e existed a vast
 n in the same
 mentioned, be-
 ft Lord of the
 r his ordering
 search in lati-
 th-ward. But
 ned to think it
 eg leave to re-
 f the Spanish
 coast of Ame-
 nes Barrington
 In

In the general sketch we have now given of the
 present and preceding voyages, a pretty distinct
 idea may be formed, of what was intended to
 be done, and what was really accomplished.—

The benefits arising from them may be enume-
 rated as follows :

1. All visionary speculators and schemers; such
 as Buffon, Campbell, and de Brosles, will find
 few votaries to support their airy fanciful dreams
 of treasures and paradises in these seas, as Cap-
 tain Cook has sufficiently investigated what is
 and what is not to be found there; so, many
 impracticable undertakings which would proba-
 bly have taken place, will be entirely prevented.

2. But unprofitable searches will not only be
 discouraged, but the distresses and inconveni-
 ences attending the navigation of these seas, in a
 great measure prevented. The exact situation
 of the different islands are properly laid down;
 rocky shores, perplexing currents, dangerous
 shoals, and narrow straits accurately described;
 besides many other advantages, to enumerate
 which, it would be necessary to transcribe great
 part of the journals of our several Commanders.
 By thus lessening the danger of these voyages,
 a scene of commerce comes in view, that in a
 course of years will probably come to such a
 height as is impossible for us at present to have
 any conception of; nay, in our own day, it is
 highly probable that some speedy advances will
 be made to form some commercial establishments
 in the south Pacific; at least, if we do not, we
 have taught the Russians and Spaniards some

important lessons in the skin-trade, and otherwise, which they will not fail to improve.

3. The valuable accessions which human knowledge has made by the continued plan of discovery carried on in the present reign, cannot fail to distinguish Britain as taking the lead in the most arduous enterprizes, for the benefit of mankind. And were no real benefit to accrue to us, either in this or a future age, as mentioned in the preceding article, certainly no greater scope was ever given to the dignified exercise of the powers of the human mind, particularly in the astronomical lines.

4. It is commonly observed, that acquisitions in one science, are generally followed by acquisitions in other branches; so here, the discovery of so many new places in the globe presents to our view fresh objects of science. Upon the report of any common sailor, much information may be obtained; but when we consider that in these voyages, the labours of some of the most eminent men of the times are united, we must be satisfied that every thing new and valuable throughout the wide extent of their researches are collected and recorded. It is necessary here to mention that in his second voyage, Captain Cook was accompanied by Sir Joseph Banks; the obligations which (if we may use the expression) science lies under to this great man cannot be better expressed than in the words of Mr Wallis, which we beg leave to transcribe.

“ That branch of natural knowledge which may be called *nautical astronomy*, was undoubtedly

ly in i
undert
which
so late
sary,
lished
in com
ted an
the alt
most fi
ken wi
six, sev
who w
to the
Cook's
few, c
observe

* The
ne si gr
voient n
que dans
elle de l
munis de
erent ex
5' 6' 7' 8
It must
Caille, th
of discov
culations
stars; bu
his succe
of affordi
ved for I
Preface t
fraction a
tude, unc
fessor of
Cambridg

and other-
 prove.
 which human
 ued plan of
 reign, can-
 ing the lead
 r the benefit
 enefit to ac-
 age, as men-
 certainly no
 dignified ex-
 mind, parti-
 acquisitions
 d by acquisi-
 he discovery
 presents to
 Upon the re-
 information
 onsider that
 some of the
 united, we
 new and va-
 of their re-
 It is neces-
 ond voyage,
 Sir Joseph
 may use the
 s great man
 the words of
 transcrib-
 ledge which
 undoubted-
 ly

ly in its infancy, when these voyages were first undertaken. Both instruments and observers, which deserved the name, were very rare; and so late as the year 1770, it was thought necessary, in the appendix to *Mayer's tables*, published by the Board of Longitude, to state facts, in contradiction to the assertions of so celebrated an Astronomer as the Abbe de la Caille, that the altitude of the sun at noon, the easiest and most simple of all observations, could not be taken with certainty to a less quantity than five, six, seven, or even eight minutes. * But those who will give themselves the trouble to look into the *astronomical observations* made in Captain Cook's last voyage, will find that there were few, even of the petty officers, who could not observe the distance of the moon from the sun,

C 3

or

* The Abbe's words are. " Si ceux qui promettent une si grande precision dans ces sortes de methodes, avoient navigue quelque temps, ils auroient vu souvent, que dans l'observation la plus simple de toutes, qui est celle de la hauteur du soleil a midi, deux observations, munis de bons quartiers de reflexion, biens rectifies, different entr'eux, lorsqu'ils observent chacun a part, de 5' 6' 7' & 8'. — *Ephemer. 1755. — 1765. Introduct. p. 32.*"

It must be however mentioned, in justice to M. de la Caille, that he attempted to introduce the lunar method of discovering the longitude, and proposed a plan of calculations of the moon's distance from the sun and fixed stars; but, through the imperfection of his instruments, his success was much less than that method was capable of affording. The bringing it into general use was reserved for Dr Maskelyne, our Astronomer Royal. See the Preface to the Tables for correcting the Effects of Refraction and Parallax, published by the Board of Longitude, under the direction of Dr Shepherd, Plumian Professor of Astronomy and Experimental Philosophy at Cambridge, in 1772.

or a star, the most delicate of all observations, with sufficient accuracy. It may be added, that the method of making and computing observations for finding the variation of the compass is better known, and more frequently practised by those who have been on these voyages, than by most others. Nor is there, perhaps, a person who ranks as an officer, and has been concerned in them, who would not, whatever his real skill may be, feel ashamed to have it thought that he did not know how to observe for, and compute the time at sea; though, but a short while before these voyages were set on foot, such a thing was scarcely ever heard of amongst seamen; and even first-rate astronomers doubted the possibility of doing it with sufficient exactness.*

* In addition to Mr. Wallis's Remark, it may be observed, that the proficiency of our naval officers in taking observations at sea must ultimately be attributed to the great attention paid to this important object by the Board of Longitude at home; liberal rewards having been given to mathematicians for perfecting the Lunar Tables, and facilitating calculations; and to artists for constructing more accurate instruments for observing, and watches better adapted to keeping time at sea. It appears, therefore, that the voyages of discovery, and the operations of the Board of Longitude, went hand in hand; and they must be combined, in order to form a just estimate of the extent of the plan carried into execution since his Majesty's accession, for improving astronomy and navigation. But, besides the establishment of the Board of Longitude on its present footing, which has had such important consequences, it must also ever be acknowledged that his present Majesty has extended his patronage to every branch of the liberal arts and useful sciences. The munificent present to the royal Society for defraying the expence of observing the Transit of Venus;—the institution of the A-

cademy

“ The
nes of
ese voy
rtant a
these o
n unexp
ves to
instanc
e tide r
cean; v
what m
d calcul
“ The
ake also
ll be fo
on this
ome, an
d every
ote, but
dge of th
ose who
er. To
mber of
emy of P
nts allot
Royal A
rden of E
sent toth
gement aff
departme
ell, which
improver
nces which
guished hi
ron of tho
vigation b

servations, added, that the observations made by the compass in these voyages, are very useful and practised in all ages, than perhaps, and has been whatever it has been to observe, though, but were set on, and heard of, the astronomer, it with suf-

"The may be observed in taking observations to the great Board of Longitude, and given Tables, and constructing and watches, and operations, and they estimate of longitude since his, and navigation, and of London, such improvements, that age to every, the munificent expense of observations of the Academy

"The number of places at which the rise and fall of the tides have been observed, in these voyages, is very great; and hence an important article of useful knowledge is afforded. In these observations, some very curious and unexpected circumstances have offered themselves to our consideration. It will be sufficient instance the exceedingly small height to which the tide rises in the middle of the great Pacific Ocean; where it falls short, two-thirds at least, of what might have been expected from theory and calculation."

"The direction and force of currents at sea, make also an important object. These voyages will be found to contain much useful information on this head; as well relating to seas nearer home, and which, in consequence, are navigated every day, as to those which are more remote, but where, notwithstanding, the knowledge of these things may be of great service to those who are destined to navigate them hereafter. To this head also we may refer the great number of experiments which have been made for the improvement of the Academy of Painting and Sculpture;—the magnificent apartments allotted to the Royal and Antiquary Societies, and to the Royal Academy, at Somerset Place;—the support of the Garden of Exotic at Kew, to improve which, Mr Mason was sent to the extremities of Africa;—the substantial encouragement afforded to learned men and learned works, in various departments; and particularly, that afforded to Mr Herbell, which has enabled him to devote himself entirely to the improvement of astronomy; these, and many other instances which might be enumerated, would have greatly distinguished his Majesty's reign, even if he had not been the patron of those successful attempts to perfect geography and navigation by so many voyages of discovery.

for inquiring into the depth of the sea, its temperature, and saltness at different depths, and in a variety of places and climates."

"An extensive foundation has also been laid for improvements in magnetism, for discovering the cause and nature of the polarity of the needle, and a theory of its variations, by the number and variety of the observations and experiments which have been made, both on the variation and dip, in almost all parts of the world. Experiments also have been made, in consequence of the late voyages, on the effects of gravity, in different and very distant places, which may serve to increase our stock of natural knowledge. From the same source of information we have learned, that the phenomenon, usually called the *aurora borealis*, is not peculiar to high Northern latitudes, but extends equally to all cold climates, whether they be North or South."

"But perhaps no part of knowledge has been so great a gainer by the late voyages, as that of botany. We are told * that, at least, twelve hundred new plants have been added to the known system; and that very considerable additions have been made to every other branch of natural history, by the great skill and industry of Sir Joseph Banks, and the other gentlemen † who have accompanied Captain Cook for that purpose."

* See Dr Shepherd's Preface, as above.

† Dr Solander, Dr Forster and his son, and Dr Sparman. Dr Forster has given us a specimen of the botanical discoveries of his voyage in the *Characteres Generum Plantarum*, &c.

To C
for ano
health o
that may
age of t
effect of
them, is
studying
interestin
from the
to be at
quondam
history of
een uncl
the Island
seem to
had occa
Pacific O
o unknow
aws, the
ure and
al equip
On the
observing
their proc
ion in ob
The So
valuable
nd much c
Observations
llo, on his
on, in whic
atural histo
nd navigat

sea, its tem-
 pths, and in
 also been laid
 r discovering
 y of the nee-
 by the num-
 and experi-
 h on the va-
 of the world.
 e, in conse-
 he effects of
 stant places,
 ock of natu-
 urce of infor-
 hænomenon,
 not peculiar
 longs equal-
 ey be North

nowledge has
 voyages, as
 at, at least,
 en added to
 considerable
 other branch
 l and indu-
 other gentle-
 ain Cook for

To

Dr Sparman.
 tanical discove-
 antarum, &c.

To Captain Cook himself, we are indebted for another improvement, which was the general health of his crew, during his long voyages, and that may be observed particularly in every passage of the succeeding volumes. Another good effect of these voyages, and that not the least of them, is the opportunity they have afforded of studying human nature in various situations both interesting and uncommon. However secluded from the rest of mankind any tribe may appear to be at this time, yet if any traces remain of a quondam acquaintance with any sect or race, by history or our own observation, there cannot be seen uncultivated nature. And in this state the Islands contiguous to the continent of Asia seem to be. But our enterprising discoverer had occasion to observe, in the center of the Pacific Ocean, tribes of fellow creatures hitherto unknown; their manners, customs, religion, laws, their every thing, the production of nature and necessity. What a soil for philosophical enquiry!

On the one hand, our admiration is raised, in observing their songs, their dances, their games, their processions, and on the other, our detestation in observing them feed on human flesh.

The Scholar and Antiquarian consider it as a valuable acquisition to discover some relique of

Roman and much curious philosophical matter is contained in his *Observations made in a Voyage round the World*. Dr Sparman, also, on his return to Sweden, favoured us with a publication, in which he expatiates on the advantages accruing to natural history, to astronomy, geography, general physics, and navigation, from our South Sea voyages.

Roman or Grecian workmanship; but how much more is not curiosity awakened, in observing the ingenious inventions of our newly discovered friends in the Sandwich Isles? What rusty collection of antiques can vie with the valuable addition made by Cook to Sir Ashton Lever's repository? And the expence of all his three voyages does not exceed the expence of digging out the buried contents of Herculaneum. In a nation so far advanced in refinement as this, the contrast must be very striking, and to trace the transition from barbarism to civility truly pleasing.

The philosopher will find a new field of discussion opened for him, in what may be termed the natural history of the human species. For example, the question concerning the existence of giants is now determined, as upon the joint testimony of Byron, Wallis, and Carteret; we are assured that the inhabitants of a district bordering on the north side of the strait of Magalhaens, considerably exceed the bulk of mankind in stature.

No subject can be more entertaining than to trace the various migrations of those who first peopled the Globe. It was formerly known, that the Asiatic nation, called the Malayans, traded considerably in the Indies, not only on the side of Asia, but also on the African coast, particularly to Madagascar. But we are indebted to Captain Cook for the information, that the same nation, who are also called Phœnicians, visited, made settlements, and founded colonies,

at

at differ
from or
east side
a space,
of the
surest of
Conn
importa
ries, vis
to give
count of
two con
stabilise
When
ted in
and not
minion,
tribes of
ing to le
pose of l
fices of
by comm
ments;
Majesty
ecution
med, be
must ha
ty, and
course v
naturall
have be
their rea
bited to

at different islands and places at vast distances from one another, and that extending from the east side of Africa to the west side of America, a space, including above half the circumference of the Globe; this he demonstrates, by the surest of all proofs, *viz.* the affinity of language.

Connected with this, we shall mention a very important benefit resulting from these discoveries, *viz.* the effectual answer we have now to give those cavillers against the Mosaic account of peopling the earth; the vicinity of the two continents of Asia and America is fully established.

When the recesses of the globe are investigated in order to promote general knowledge, and not with a prospect of enlarging private dominions; when we traverse the globe to visit new tribes of our fellow creatures, as friends, wishing to learn their existence, for the express purpose of bringing them within the pale of the offices of humanity, and to relieve their wants, by communicating to them our superior attainments; the voyages projected by his gracious Majesty George the Third, and carried into execution by Captain Cook, have not, it is presumed, been entirely useless. Some rays of light must have been darted on the Friendly Society, and Sandwich islands, by our repeated intercourse with them. Their stock of ideas must naturally be enlarged, and new materials must have been furnished them for the exercise of their reason, by the uncommon objects we exhibited to them.

Convinced,

Convinced, by comparing themselves to their English visitors, of their extreme inferiority, they will probably endeavour to emerge from it, and to rise nearer to a level with those who left behind them so many proofs of their generosity and humanity. The useful animals and vegetables introduced amongst them will certainly contribute to the comforts and enjoyments of life.

When Great Britain was first visited by the Phoenicians, the inhabitants were painted savages, much less civilized than those of Tongataboo, or Otaheite; and it is not impossible, but that our late voyages may, in process of time, spread the blessings of civilization amongst the numerous islanders of the South Pacific Ocean, and be the means of abolishing their abominable repasts, and almost equally abominable sacrifices.

AN

CA

INCLUD

EMBELLI

CO

JAM
Cle

Great A
Christen
Register

same w

Mr Me

ved in

aud, as

the nor

year 173

years old

Great A

the late

charge o

hood kn

As the

Captain

various h

AN ACCOUNT OF
CAPTAIN JAMES COOK:

INCLUDING MANY PARTICULARS NOT MENTIONED IN
THE LIFE PUBLISHED BY AUTHORITY.

EMBELLISHED WITH AN ELEGANT ENGRAVING OF HIM,
COPIED FROM THE MEDAL STRUCK BY THE

ROYAL SOCIETY.

JAMES COOK was born at Marton, in Cleveland, a village about four miles from Great Ayton, in the county of York, and was christened there, as appears from the Parish Register, Nov. 3, 1738. His father, whose name was likewise James, was a day-labourer to Mr Mewburn, a very respectable farmer, and lived in a small cottage, the walls chiefly of mud, as was generally the case at that time in the northern part of the kingdom. In the year 1730, when our Navigator was about two years old, his father removed with his family to Great Ayton, and was employed as a hind by the late Thomas Scottowe, Esq; having the charge of a considerable farm in that neighbourhood known by the name of Airyholm.

As the father continued long in that trust, Captain Cook was employed in assisting him in various kinds of husbandry suited to his years,

D

until

until the age of 13. At that period he was put under the care of Mr Pullen, a school-master who taught at Ayton, where he learned arithmetic, book-keeping, &c. and is said to have shewn a very early genius for figures. About January 1745, at the age of 17, his father bound him apprentice to William Saunderson for four years, to learn the grocery and haberdashery business, at Snaith, a populous fishing-town about ten miles from Whitby; but after a year and a half's servitude, having contracted a very strong propensity to the sea, (owing probably to the maritime situation of the place, and the great number of ships almost constantly passing and repassing within sight, between London, Shields, and Sunderland), Mr Saunderson was willing to indulge him in following the bent of his inclination, and gave up his indentures. While he continued at Snaith, by Mr Saunderson's account, he discovered much solidity of judgment, and was remarkably quick in accounts. In July, 1746, he was bound apprentice to Mr J. Walker of Whitby, for the term of three years, which time he served to his master's full satisfaction. He first sailed on board the ship *Freelove*, burthen about 450 tons, chiefly employed in the coal trade from Newcastle to London. In May, 1748, Mr Walker ordered him home to assist in rigging and fitting for sea a fine new ship, named *The Three Brothers*, about 600 tons burthen. This was designed as a favour to him, as it would greatly contribute to his knowledge in his business.

business.
the latter
the ship
ment,
to carry
When
taken
From
where
main
ployed
In the
self as
ing to
the co
continu
Walker
winter,
1751,
neither
is now
Februa
made h
Friend
station
in the
made l
ship; b
London
ship Ea
a mind
"to try
he app

od he was
 hool-master
 arned with-
 aid to have
 es. About
 his father
 Saunderfon
 and haber-
 ous fishing-
 ; but after a
 contracted a
 wing proba-
 e place, and
 nstantly pas-
 tween Lon-
 r Saunder-
 llowing the
 p his inden-
 aith, by Mr
 d much soli-
 bly quick in
 bound ap-
 by, for the
 e served to
 rft failed on
 about 450
 trade from
 1748, Mr
 t in rigging
 named The
 den. This
 as it would
 e in his bu-
 siness

siness. In this vessel he failed from Whitby in
 the latter end of June. After two coal voyages,
 the ship was taken into the service of Govern-
 ment, and sent as a transport to Middleburgh
 to carry some troops from thence to Dublin.
 When these were landed, another corps was
 taken on board, and brought over to Liverpool.
 From thence the ship proceeded to Deptford,
 where she was paid off in April 1749. The re-
 maining part of the season the vessel was em-
 ployed in the Norway trade.

In the spring, 1750, Mr Cook shipped him-
 self as a seaman, on board the Maria, belong-
 ing to Mr John Wilkison of Whitby, under
 the command of Captain Gaskin. In her he
 continued all the year in the Baltic trade. Mr
 Walker is of opinion he left this ship in the
 winter, and failed the following summer, viz
 1751, in a vessel belonging to Stockton; but
 neither the ship's name, nor that of the owner,
 is now remembered by Mr Walker. Early in
 February, 1752, Mr Walker sent for him, and
 made him mate of one of his vessels, called The
 Friendship, of about 400 tons burthen. In this
 station he continued till May or June, 1753,
 in the coal trade. At that period Mr Walker
 made him an offer to go commander of that
 ship; but he declined it; he soon after left her at
 London, and entered on board his Majesty's
 ship Eagle, a frigate of 28 or 30 guns, "having
 a mind," as he expressed himself to his master,
 "to try his fortune that way." Not long after,
 he applied to Mr Walker for a letter of recom-
 mendation

commendation to the captain of the frigate, which was readily granted. On the receipt of this he got some small preferment, which he gratefully acknowledged, and ever remembered. Some time after, the Eagle sailed with another frigate on a cruize, in which they were very successful. After this Mr Walker heard no more of Mr Cook, until August, 1758, when he received from him a letter, dated Pembroke, before Louisburgh, July 30, 1758, in which he gave a distinct account of our success in that expedition, but does not say what station he then filled.

He received a commission as Lieutenant, on the first day of April, 1760 ;—and soon after gave a specimen of those abilities which recommended him to the commands which he executed so highly to his credit, that his name will go down to posterity as one of the most skilful navigators which this country hath produced.

In the year 1765, he was with Sir William Burnaby on the Jamaica station; and that officer having occasion to send dispatches to the Governor of Jucatan, relative to the Logwood-cutters in the Bay of Honduras, Lieutenant Cook was selected for that employment; and he performed it in a manner which entitled him to the approbation of the Admiral. A relation of this Voyage and Journey was published in the year 1709, under the title of "Remarks on a Passage from the River Balise in the Bay of Honduras to Merida, the Capital of the province of Jucatan

Jucatan
nant C

To
longing
great
the R
proper
South
Venus
deliver
Islands
Rotter
then k
this me
and T
trade,
of her
the vess
turned
heite a
the Ex
by the
proved
that le
observe

On
moted
date th
hoisted
ship,
30th o
nied b
and D

Jucatan in the Spanish West-Indies, by Lieutenant Cook," in an 8vo pamphlet.

To a perfect knowledge of all the duties belonging to a sea-life, Mr Cook had added a great skill in astronomy. In the year 1767, the Royal Society resolved, that it would be proper to send persons into some part of the South Seas, to observe the Transit of the Planet Venus over the Sun's disk; and by a memorial delivered to his Majesty they recommended the Islands of Marquesas de Mendoza, or those of Rotterdam or Amsterdam, as the properest place then known for making such observation. To this memorial a favourable answer was returned, and The Endeavour, a ship built for the coal-trade, was put in commission, and the command of her given to Lieutenant Cook. But before the vessel was ready to sail, Captain Wallis returned from his voyage, and pointed out Otaheite as a place more proper for the purpose of the Expedition, than either of those mentioned by the Royal Society. This alteration was approved of, and our Navigator was appointed by that learned Body, with Mr Charles Green, to observe the Transit.

On this occasion Lieutenant Cook was promoted to be Captain, and his commission bore date the 25th of May, 1768. He immediately hoisted the pendant, and took command of the ship, in which he sailed down the river on the 30th of July. In this voyage he was accompanied by Joseph Banks, Esq; since Sir Joseph, and Dr Solander. On the 13th of October he

arrived at Rio de Janeiro, and on the 13th of April, 1769, came to Otaheite, where the Transit of Venus was observed in different parts of the island. He staid there until the 13th of July, after which he went in search of several islands, which he discovered. He then proceeded to New-Zealand, and on the 10th of October 1770, arrived at Batavia, with a vessel almost worn out, and the crew much fatigued, and very sickly. The repairs of the ship obliged him to continue at this unhealthy place until the 27th of December, in which time he lost many of his seamen and passengers, and more in the passage to the Cape of Good Hope, which place he reached on the 15th of March, 1771. On the 14th of April he left the Cape, and the 1st of May anchored at St Helena, from whence he sailed on the 4th, and came to anchor in the Downs on the 12th of June, after having been absent almost three years, and in that time had experienced every danger to which a voyage of such a length is incident, and in which he had made discoveries equal to those of all the Navigators of this country, from the time of Columbus to the present. The narrative of this Expedition was written by Dr Hawkesworth, which as the facts contained in it have not been denied, nor the excellence of the composition disputed, has certainly been treated with a degree of severity, which, when every thing is considered, must excite the astonishment of every Reader of taste and sensibility.

Soon after Captain Cook's return to England,

it was re
the disco
had long
plored p
* Gentle
met with
been ver
ascertain
Expediti
that cou
ships we
cessary v
undertak
led the
Captain
command
them sai
1772, a
on the 3
thence o
time unt
endeavo
they we
serving
direction
west.
Seas, an
turned t
of Marc
on the
and eig

he 13th of
 e the Tran-
 parts of the
 of July, af-
 ral islands,
 oceeded to
 of October
 effel almost
 ed, and ve-
 ged him to
 the 27th of
 y of his sea-
 e passage to
 he reached
 n the 14th
 ft of May
 ce he sailed
 the Downs
 een absent
 had experie-
 ce of such a
 had made
 Navigators
 olumbus to
 Expedition
 hich as the
 denied, nor
 sputed, has
 of severity,
 ered, must
 der of taste

o England,
 it

It was resolved to equip two ships to complete
 the discovery of the Southern Hemisphere. It
 had long been a prevailing idea, that the unex-
 plored part contained another continent, and a
 * Gentleman, whose enterprising spirit has not
 met with the encouragement he deserved, had
 been very firmly persuaded of its existence. To
 ascertain the fact was the principal object of this
 Expedition; and that nothing might be omitted
 that could tend to facilitate the enterprise, two
 ships were provided, furnished with every ne-
 cessary which could promote the success of the
 undertaking. The first of these ships was cal-
 led the Resolution, under the command of
 Captain Cook; the other, The Adventure,
 commanded by Captain Furneaux. Both of
 them sailed from Deptford on the 9th of April,
 1772, and arrived at the Cape of Good Hope
 on the 30th of October. They departed from
 thence on the 22d of November, and from that
 time until the 17th of January, 1773, continued
 endeavouring to discover the continent, when
 they were obliged to relinquish the design, ob-
 serving the whole sea covered with ice from the
 direction of south-east, round by the south to
 west. They then proceeded into the South
 Seas, and made many other discoveries, and re-
 turned to the Cape of Good Hope on the 21st
 of March, 1774, and from thence to England,
 on the 14th of July; having, during three years
 and eighteen-days (in which time the voyage
 was

* Alexander Dalrymple, Esq.

was performed), lost but one * man, by sickness, in Captain Cook's ship; although he had navigated through all the climates from 52° north, to 71° south, with a company of an hundred and eighteen men.

The relation of this voyage was given to the Public by Captain Cook himself, and by Mr George Forster, son of Dr Forster, who had been appointed by Government to accompany him for the purpose of making observations on such natural productions as might be found in the course of the navigation. That published by Captain Cook has generally been ascribed to a Gentleman of great eminence in the literary world; but if the testimony of one † who was on board the ship, and who made an extract from the Journal in its rude uncorrected state, may be relied on, there seems no reason to ascribe the merit of the work to any other person than he whose name it goes under.

The want of success which attended Captain Cook's attempt to discover a southern continent, did not discourage another plan being resolved on, which had been recommended some time before. This was no other than the finding out a north-west passage, which the fancy of some chimerical projectors had conceived to be a practicable scheme. The dangers which our Navigator

* This was a consumption terminating in a dropsy, Mr Pattern Surgeon of the Resolution, observed that this man began so early to complain of a cough and other consumptive symptoms which had never left him, and his lungs, must have been affected before he came on board.

† Mr Hodges.

gator had
have ex
time to
tries, an
mates, a
opinion
would be
he once
forts of
turbulen
ger. H
duced hi
were acc
in which
occasions
could be
ture with
in the m
A few
land, no
Royal So
Gold Me
he had t
taken to
ship; an
nounced
" how
who had
the most
discovere
coasts;
Australis
habitable

n, by sick-
ugh he had
s from 52°
pany of an

iven to the
and by Mr
ho had been
any him for
n such natu-
n the course
by Captain
o a Gentle-
ary world ;
as on board
ft from the
te, may be
ascribe the
on than he

ed Captain
n continent,
g resolved
some time
finding out
ry of some
o be a prac-
our Navi-
gator
in a story,
bserved that
ough and p-
ver left him,
e he came on

gator had twice braved and escaped from, would have exempted him from being solicited a third time to venture his person in unknown countries, amongst desert islands, inhospitable climates, and in the midst of savages ; but, on his opinion being asked concerning the person who would be the most proper to execute this design, he once more relinquished the quiet and comforts of domestic life, to engage in scenes of turbulence and confusion, of difficulty and danger. His intrepid spirit and inquisitive mind induced him again to offer his services ; and they were accepted without hesitation. The manner in which he had deported himself on former occasions, left no room to suppose a fitter man could be selected. He prepared for his departure with the utmost alacrity, and actually sailed in the month of July, 1776.

A few months after his departure from England, notwithstanding he was then absent, the Royal Society voted him Sir Godfrey Copley's Gold Medal, as a reward for the Account which he had transmitted to that Body, of the method taken to preserve the health of the crew of his ship ; and Sir John Pringle, in an oration pronounced on the 30th of November, observed " how meritorious that person must appear who had not only made the most extensive, but the most instructive voyages ; who had not only discovered, but surveyed vast tracts of new coasts ; who had dispelled the illusion of a *terra australis incognita*, and fixed the bounds of the habitable earth, as well as those of the navigable

ble ocean in the Southern hemisphere ; but that, however ample a field for praise these circumstances would afford, it was a nobler motive that had prompted the Society to notice Captain Cook in the honourable manner which had occasioned his then address. After descending on the means used on the voyage to preserve the lives of the sailors, he concluded his discourse in these terms : " Allow me then, Gentlemen, to deliver this Medal, with his unperishing name engraven upon it, into the hands of one who will be happy to receive that trust, and to hear that this respectable body never more cordially, nor more meritoriously, bestowed that faithful symbol of their esteem and affection. For if Rome decreed the *Civic Crown* to him who saved the life of a single citizen, what wreaths are due to that man, who, having himself saved many, perpetuates in your Transactions the means by which Britain may now, on the most distant voyages, save numbers of her intrepid sons, her Mariners ; who, braving every danger, have so liberally contributed to the fame, to the opulence, and to the maritime empire of their country ? "

It will give pain to every sensible mind to reflect, that this honourable testimony to the merit of our gallant Commander never came to his knowledge. While his friends were waiting with the most earnest solicitude for tidings concerning him, and the whole nation expressed an anxious impatience to be informed of his success,

cess, adv
in a letter
of June,
was kille
Captai
Several c
his Maje
aum, an
a remark
Cook wa
very time
had dete
Cook plac

* Captai
in his first
ent on the
before the

re; but that
 these circum-
 stances, more
 noble motive
 notice Cap-
 tain Cook, for
 which had
 been descanting
 to preserve the
 his discourse
 Gentlemen,
 wishing name
 of one who
 and to hear
 more cordially,
 that faithful
 tion. For if
 him who sa-
 t wreaths are
 self saved ma-
 ins the means
 most distant
 bid sons, her
 ger, have so
 to the opu-
 of their coun-
 mind to re-
 y to the me-
 r came to his
 ere waiting
 tidings con-
 on expressed
 ed of his suc-
 cess,

ness, advice was received from Captain Clerke*,
 in a letter dated at Kamtschatka, the 8th day
 of June, 1779; advising, that Captain Cook
 was killed on the 14th of February, 1779.

Captain Cook was a married man, and left
 several children behind him. On each of these
 his Majesty has settled a pension of 25l. per an-
 num, and 200l. per annum on his Widow. It
 is remarkable, if true as reported, that Captain
 Cook was god-father to his wife; and at the
 very time she was christened declared that he
 had determined on the union which afterwards
 took place between them.

* Captain Clerke went Midshipman with Captain Cook
 in his first Voyage, and was appointed by him a Lieuten-
 ant on the death of Mr Hicks, who died about three weeks
 before the ship arrived in England.

TO THE HONOURABLE

CASTLE OF ST. JAMES COVENTRY

THE HONOURABLE

THE HONOURABLE

THE HONOURABLE

THE HONOURABLE

THE HONOURABLE

C

The

HE r
a very o
tain in t
killed by
on the
he had s
secuting

He po
qualifica
great un
and wor

Cool
determin
persever
unremitt
ficulties,
dients:
ways po
found un

Mild,
father to
from aff
Vol. I.

TO THE MEMORY OF
CAPTAIN JAMES COOK,

The ablest and most renowned navigator this
or any other country hath produced.

HE raised himself, solely by his merit, from a very obscure birth, to the rank of Post Captain in the royal navy, and was, unfortunately, killed by the Savages of the Island Owhyhee, on the 14th of February 1779; which Island, he had not long before discovered, when prosecuting his third voyage round the globe.

He possessed, in an eminent degree, all the qualifications requisite for his profession and great undertakings; together with the amiable and worthy qualities of the best men.

Cool and deliberate in judging: sagacious in determining: active in executing: steady and persevering, in interprising from vigilance and unremitting caution: unsubsidied by labour, difficulties, and disappointments: fertile in expedients: never wanting presence of mind: always possessing himself, and the full use of a sound understanding.

Mild, just, but exact in discipline: he was a father to his people, who were attached to him from affection, and obedient from confidence.

His knowledge, his experience, his sagacity, rendered him so intirely master of his subject, that the greatest obstacles were surmounted, and the most dangerous navigations became easy, and almost safe, under his direction.

He explored the Southern Hemisphere to a much higher latitude than had ever been reached, and with fewer accidents than frequently befall those who navigate the coasts of this island.

By his benevolent and unabating attention to the welfare of his ship's company, he discovered and introduced a system for the preservation of the health of seamen in long voyages, which has proved wonderfully efficacious: for in his second voyage round the world, which continued upwards of three years, he lost only one man by distemper, of one hundred and eighteen, of which his company consisted.

The death of this eminent and valuable man was a loss to mankind in general; and particularly to be deplored by every nation that respects useful accomplishments, that honours science, and loves the benevolent and amiable affections of the heart. It is still more to be deplored by this country, which may justly boast of having produced a man hitherto unequalled for nautical talents; and that sorrow is further aggravated by the reflection, that his country was deprived of this ornament by the enmity of a people, from whom, indeed, it might have been dreaded, but from whom it was not deserved. For, actuated always by the most attentive care and tender compassion for the savages in general,

this

this ex
vourin
fears,
their t
terpos
them
injure
The
and at
rica, a
by the
Tra
emula
skill a
phys.
disclo
rang
of this
gance
their
please
yond
create
dained
correl
so
ty pla
Job x
If
extrac
world
and u
quaint

this excellent man was ever assiduously endeavouring, by kind treatment, to dissipate their fears, and court their friendship; overlooking their thefts and treacheries, and frequently interposing, at the hazard of his life, to protect them from the sudden resentment of his own injured people.

The object of his last mission was to discover and ascertain the boundaries of Asia and America, and to penetrate into the Northern Ocean by the North East cape of Asia.

Traveller! contemplate, admire, revere, and emulate this great master in his profession; whose skill and labours have enlarged natural philosophy; have extended nautical science; and have disclosed the long concealed and admirable arrangements of the Almighty in the formation of this globe, and, at the same time, the arrogance of mortals, in presuming to account, by their speculations, for the laws by which He was pleased to create it. It is now discovered beyond all doubt, that the same Great Being who created the universe by his fiat, by the same ordained our earth to keep a just poise, without a corresponding southern continent—and it does so! He stretches out the North over the empty place, and hangeth the earth upon nothing. Job xxvi. 7.

If the arduous but exact researches of this extraordinary man, have not discovered a new world, they have discovered seas, un navigated and unknown before. They have made us acquainted with islands, people, and productions,

of which we had no conception. And if he has not been so fortunate as Americus to give his name to a continent, his pretensions to such a distinction remain unrivalled; and he will be revered, while there remains a page of his own modest account of his voyages, and as long as mariners and geographers shall be instructed, by his new map of the Southern Hemisphere, to trace the various courses and discoveries he has made.

If public services merit public acknowledgements; if the man who adorned and raised the fame of his country is deserving of honours, then Captain COOK deserves to have a monument raised to his memory, by a generous and grateful nation.

Viridis uberrimum alimentum est bonus.

VAL. MAXIMUS, Lib. 2. Cap. 6.

PA

Captain
and
reco
Reso
the l
eove
Pria
boun
rival
tives
tion
cour
Mas
mar
from

O
the R
receiv
cedin

VOYAGE
TO THE
PACIFIC OCEAN.

BOOK I.

CONTENTS.

Captains Cook and CLEAKE appointed to the Resolution and Discovery—Preparations for the Voyage—Occurrences preceding their setting Sail—Departure of the Resolution—Proceeds to Teneriffe—Some account of the Island, Inhabitants, &c.—Junction with the Discovery at the Cape of Good Hope—Passage through Prince Edward's Islands—Arrival at Christmas Harbour—The coast of Keaguken's Land Explored—Arrival at Van Diemen's Land—Interview with the natives—Their Persons, Dress, Behaviour, and Habitations—Arrival at Queen Charlotte's Sound—Inter-course with the Natives—Particulars of the Horrid Massacre of the Adventure's Boat Crew—Curious Remarks on the Inhabitants, Country, &c.—Departure from New-Zealand.

ON the 10th of February, 1776, Captain Cook went on board his Majesty's sloop the Resolution, and hoisted the pendant, having received a commission to command her the preceding day. The Discovery, of three hundred

d if he has
o give his
to such a
will be re-
f his own
as long as
ructed, by
sphere, to
ies he has

nowledge-
raised the
honours,
e a monu-
crous and

bons.
2. Cap. 6.

tons, was, at the same time, prepared for the service, and Captain Clerke appointed to the command of her. It may be necessary to observe, that Captain Clerke had been Captain Cook's Second Lieutenant on board the *Resolution*, in his second voyage round the world.

These two ships were then equipping in the dock at Deptford, for a voyage to make farther discoveries in the Pacific Ocean, under the direction of Captain Cook.

The *Resolution* was hauled into the river on the 9th of March to complete her rigging, and take in stores and provisions for the voyage. Both ships, indeed, were abundantly supplied with every thing requisite for a voyage of such duration. We sailed on the 29th of May, and arrived the next day at Long Reach, where our powder and shot, and other ordnance stores were received.

On the 8th of June, while we lay in Long Reach, we had the satisfaction of a visit from the Earl of Sandwich, Sir Hugh Palliser, and others of the Board of Admiralty, to examine whether every thing had been completed pursuant to their orders, and to the convenience of those who were to embark. They honoured Capt. Cook with their company to dinner on that day, and were saluted on their coming on board, and on their going ashore, with seventeen guns and three cheers.

To convey some permanent benefit to the inhabitants of Otaheite, and of the other islands which we might happen to visit, his Majesty commanded some useful animals to be taken out. On the

the tot
their c
for the
sufficie
den se
food to
discove

Both
miralty
affortu
tate a
the in
might
nothing
to heal

The
were e
public
the ne
cal inf
intrust
cond
the pl
likewi
er, wh
last vo
It was
py of
the fa
instru
for th
skilful
with

the 10th we took on board a bull, two cows with their calves, and some sheep; with hay and corn for their support. We were also furnished with a sufficient quantity of our valuable European garden seeds, which might add fresh supplies of food to the vegetable productions of our newly discovered islands.

Both the ships, by order of the board of Admiralty, were amply supplied with an extensive assortment of iron tools and trinkets, to facilitate a friendly commerce and intercourse with the inhabitants of such new countries as we might discover. With respect to our wants, nothing was refused us that might be conducive to health, comfort, or convenience.

Those at the head of the naval department were equally solicitous to render our voyage of public utility; accordingly we received on board, the next day, variety of astronomical and nautical instruments, which the Board of Longitude intrusted to Captain Cook and Mr King, his Second Lieutenant; they having engaged to supply the place of a professed observer. The Board, likewise, put into their possession the time-keeper, which Captain Cook had carried out in his last voyage, and which had performed so well. It was constructed by Mr Kendal, and was a copy of Mr Harrison's. Another time-keeper, and the same assortment of astronomical and other instruments, were put on board the Discovery, for the use of Mr William Bailey, a diligent and skilful observer, who was engaged to embark with Captain Clerke.

Mr

Mr Anderson, Surgeon to Captain Cook, added to his professional abilities a great proficiency in natural history. He had already visited the South-Sea Islands in the same ship, and enabled the Captain to enrich his relation of the preceding voyage with remarks of use and value.

Tho' several young men, among the sea-officers, were capable of being employed in constructing charts, drawing plans, and taking views of the coasts and head-lands, Mr Webber was engaged to embark with Captain Cook, for the purpose of supplying the defects of written accounts, by taking accurate and masterly drawings of the most memorable scenes of our transactions.

The necessary preparations being completed, Captain Cook received orders to proceed to Plymouth, and to take the *Discovery* under his command. In consequence of which, he ordered Captain Clerke to carry his ship also round to Plymouth.

The *Resolution*, with the *Discovery* in company, sailed from Long Reach on the 15th of June, and anchored at the Nore the same evening. The *Discovery* proceeded the next day in obedience to Captain Cook's order, and the *Resolution* remained at the Nore, till Captain Cook, who was then in London, should join her.

It being our intention to touch at Otaheite and the Society Islands, it had been determined to carry Omai back to his native country; accordingly Captain Cook and he set out from London early on the 24th, and reached Chatham between ten and eleven o'clock, where they

dined

dined
orders
where
them

The
of reg
indulg
was m
with j
this co
prospe
would
of obt
his cou
very u
the sh

Omai
quantit
be in e
several
and ma
been e
and at
ment o
ed opin

Abo
and ma
at nort
anchor
by east

On
stood
the fan

dined with commissioner Proby, who afterwards ordered his yacht to convey them to Sheerness, where the Captain's boat was waiting to take them on board the Resolution.

Though Omai left London with some degree of regret, when he reflected upon the favours and indulgences he had received, yet, when mention was made of his own islands, his eyes sparkled with joy. He entertained the highest ideas of this country and its inhabitants; but the pleasing prospect of returning home, loaded with what would be deemed invaluable treasures there, and of obtaining a distinguished superiority among his countrymen, operated so far as to suppress every uneasy sensation; and when he got onboard the ship, he appeared to be quite happy.

Omai was furnished, by his majesty, with quantities of every article that were supposed to be in estimation at Otaheite. He also received several presents from Lord Sandwich, Mr Banks, and many others. Every method had, indeed, been employed, during his abode in England, and at his departure, to make him the instrument of conveying to his countrymen, an exalted opinion of British greatness and generosity.

About noon on the 25th we weighed anchor, and made sail for the Downs, with a gentle breeze at north-west by west. At nine the same day we anchored, with the North Foreland bearing south by east, and Margate Point south-west by south.

On the 26th, at two o'clock, we weighed, and stood round the Foreland; and at eight o'clock the same morning anchored in the Downs. Here

Captain

Captain Cook received two boats on board, which had been built for him at Deal; and the next day, at two o'clock in the afternoon, we got under sail, but the breeze soon died away, and we anchored again. At ten o'clock the same night we weighed again, and proceeded down the channel.

We anchored at Plymouth Sound on the 30th at three o'clock in the afternoon. The *Discovery* had arrived there three days before. We saluted Admiral Amherst, whose flag was flying on board the *Ocean*, and he returned the compliment.

We were employed on the 1st and 2d of July in replacing the water and provisions we had expended, and in receiving on board a supply of port wine. On the 8th Captain Cook received his instructions for the voyage, and an order to proceed to the Cape of Good Hope with the *Resolution*; with directions also to leave an order for Captain Clerke to follow him, as soon as he should join his ship, he being at that time in London.

The officers and men on board the *Resolution* (including marines) were one hundred and twelve, and those on board the *Discovery* were eighty.

On the 10th of July the proper persons came on board, and paid the officers and crew up to the 30th of last month. The petty officers and seamen received also two months wages in advance. Such indulgence to the latter is customary; but the payment of what was due to the superior officers, was in consideration of our peculiar

cular
pence
a voya

In t
livered
tenant
orders
comm
mouth
rival.
ebb, a
Sound
lowing
weighe
with a

Soon
the win
which
we wer
in the

On t
Agnes
by west
on the

On
o'clock
and we
here w
we sup
22d, at
gal abo

We
and on

culiar situation, to enable us to defray the expence of furnishing ourselves with necessaries for a voyage of such uncommon duration.

In the morning of the 11th, Captain Cook delivered into the hands of Mr Burney, First Lieutenant of the *Discovery*, Captain Clerke's sailing orders; a copy of which he also left with the commanding officer of his Majesty's ships at Plymouth, to be delivered to the Captain on his arrival. In the afternoon we weighed with the ebb, and got out beyond all the shipping in the Sound, where we were detained most of the following day. At eight o'clock in the evening, we weighed again, and stood out of the Sound, with a gentle breeze at north-west by west.

Soon after we came out of Plymouth Sound, the wind came more westerly, and blew fresh, which obliged us to ply down the channel; and we were not off the Lizard till the 14th at eight in the evening.

On the 16th at noon, the light-house of St Agnes, on the isles of Scilly, bore north-west by west, distant about seven or eight miles; and on the 17th and 18th, we were off Ushant.

On the 19th we stood westward till eight o'clock in the morning, when the wind shifted, and we tacked and fetched to the southward: here we beheld nine sail of large ships, which we supposed to be French men of war. On the 22d, at ten in the morning, we saw Cape Ortegal about four leagues distant.

We had calm weather on the 22d and 23d, and on the afternoon of the 24th, we passed Cap-Finisterre,

Finisterre, with a fine gale at north-north-east. Captain Cook determined to touch at Teneriffe, to get a supply of hay and corn for the subsistence of his animals on board, as well as the usual refreshments for ourselves. We saw Teneriffe on the 31st of July, at four in the afternoon; and at day-light on the first of August, we sailed round the east point of that island and anchored on the south side, in the road of Santa Cruz, about eight o'clock, in 23 fathoms water.

There were, riding in this road, a French frigate, two French brigantines, an English brigantine, and fourteen sail of Spanish ships.

Immediately after we had anchored, we received a visit from the master of the port, who presented us with a letter from the Governor, in the name of the Governor. Upon his return, Captain Cook sent an officer ashore, to present his respects to the Governor, and ask his permission to take fresh water, and to purchase such articles, as were thought necessary. The Governor very politely complied with Captain Cook's request, and sent an officer on board to compliment him on his arrival. In the afternoon Captain Cook waited upon him, accompanied by some of his officers; and before he returned to his ship, bespoke some corn and straw, ordered a quantity of wine, and made an agreement for a supply of water.

The road of Santa Cruz is situated on the south-east side of the island, before the town of the same name. It is said to be the principal road of Teneriffe for shelter, capacity, and the

goodness

good
shipping
Santa
from
in wood
this tin
scarce.

From
Santa
Teneri
howev
that it
own in
visitors
the isla
sterling
lean, a
try, ma
great v
as pear
&c. be
The pu
here, a

Indi
sold at
bushel
ral, ver
indiffer
seas, th
on the
sells at

Ten
Madeir

VOL

goodness of its bottom. The water to supply the shipping, and for the use of the inhabitants of Santa Cruz, is derived from a rivulet that runs from the hills, which is conveyed into the town in wooden troughs. As these troughs were at this time repairing, fresh water was extremely scarce.

From the appearance of the country about Santa Cruz, it might naturally be concluded that Teneriffe is a barren spot; we were convinced, however, from the ample supplies we received, that it not only produced sufficient to supply its own inhabitants, but also enough to spare for visitors. Though wine is the chief produce of the island, beef may be had at about three-pence sterling a pound; the oxen, however, are small, lean, and boney. Sheep, goats, hogs, and poultry, may be had on terms equally reasonable. A great variety of fruits are to be had in plenty, as pears, figs, grapes, mulberries, musk melons, &c. besides others that were not then in season. The pumpkins, potatoes, and onions which grow here, are excellent.

Indian corn is produced on this island, and is sold at about three shillings and six pence per bushel: the fruits and vegetables are, in general, very cheap. Tho' the inhabitants are but indifferently supplied with fish by the adjoining seas, they are engaged in a considerable fishery on the coast of Barbary, and the produce of it sells at a very moderate price.

Teneriffe is certainly a more eligible place than Madeira, for ships to touch at which are bound

on long voyages; but the wine of the latter is infinitely superior to that of the former: the difference of their prices is almost as considerable as their qualities, for the best Teneriffe wine was sold for twelve pounds a pipe, whereas a pipe of the best Madeira was worth considerably more than double that sum.

Behind the town of Santa Cruz, the country rises gradually to a moderate height; afterwards it continues to rise south-west-ward towards the celebrated pic of Teneriffe. But we were much disappointed in our expectations with respect to its appearance.

The island, east-ward of Santa Cruz, appears perfectly barren. Ridges of high hills run towards the sea, between which are deep vallies, terminating at mountains that run across and are higher than the former.

On the 1st of August in the afternoon, Mr Anderson (Captain Cook's surgeon) went on shore to one of these vallies, intending to reach the top of the remoter hills, but time would not permit him to get farther than their foot. The lower hills produce great quantities of the *euphorbia canariensis*. The people on the spot imagine its juice to be so caustic as to erode the skin; but Mr Anderson convinced them to the contrary, by thrusting his finger into a plant full of it. The inhabitants dry the bushes of the *euphorbia*, and

carry

In Sparto's History of the Royal Society, page 200, &c. is an account of a journey to the top of the pic of Teneriffe. A modern traveller, viz. the Chevalier de Borda, who measured the height of this mountain in August 1776, makes it 12340 English feet.

carry
not lar
have
they an
Almos
the fea
ly erec
reflect

On
Ander
to the
miles
tween
of it d
roads
rent.
deserv
There
of the
ger th
appear

The
up a st
some
ever,
hour,
with f
servin
er on

The
perform
relerv
are al

carry them home for fuel. Santa Cruz, though not large, is a well built city. Their churches have not a magnificent appearance without, but they are decent and tolerably handsome within. Almost facing the stone pier, which runs into the sea from the town, is a marble column, lately erected, enriched with human figures which reflect honour on the statuary.

On the 2d of August, in the afternoon, Mr Anderson and three others hired mules to ride to the city of Laguna, about the distance of four miles from Santa Cruz. They arrived there between five and six in the evening, but the sight of it did not reward us for our trouble, as the roads were very bad, and our cattle but indifferent. Though the place is extensive, it hardly deserves to be dignified with the name of a city. There is some good houses, but the disposition of the streets is very irregular. Laguna is larger than Santa Cruz, but much inferior to it in appearance.

The road from Santa Cruz to Laguna, runs up a steep barren hill; but, lower down, we saw some fig-trees and corn-fields. The corn, however, is not produced here without great labour, the ground being greatly encumbered with stones. Nothing else presents itself, deserving notice, except a few aloe plants in flower on the side of the road.

The laborious work in this island is chiefly performed by mules, horses being scarce, and reserved for the use of the officers. Oxen are also much employed here. Some hawks

and parrots were seen, which were natives of the island; as also, the sea-swallow, sea-gulls, partridges, swallows, canary-birds, and black-birds. There are also lizards, locusts, and three or four sorts of dragon-flies.

Mr Anderson was informed, by a gentleman of acknowledged veracity, that a shrub is common here, agreeing exactly with the description given by Linnæus of the tea-shrub, as growing in China and Japan. It is considered as a weed, and large quantities are rooted out of the vineyards every year. The Spaniards, however, who inhabit the island, sometimes make use of it, and ascribe to it all the qualities of the tea imported from China.

The same gentleman mentioned to Mr Anderson another botanical curiosity, which is called the *impregnated lemon*. It is a distinct and perfect lemon inclosed within another.

A certain sort of grape growing here, is deemed an excellent remedy in phthical complaints. The air and climate are remarkably healthful, and particularly adapted to afford relief in such complaints. By residing at different heights in the island, it is in the power of any one to procure such a temperature of air as may be best suited to his constitution. He may continue where it is mild and salubrious, or he may ascend till the cold becomes intolerable. A person, it is said, can live comfortably within a mile of the perpendicular height of the pic, after the month of August. Smoke continually issues from near the top of the pic, but they

have
whe
ing
flow
ships

T
forty
mad
or m
Wes
sider
neris
filter

T

Span
a dif
Span

may
tall,

tawr

tanti

and
sing

Tho

are

decl

fero

pear

thei

try
I
boa
qui

have had no earthquake or eruption since 1704, when the port of Garrachica was destroyed, being filled up by the rivers of burning lava that flowed into it; and houses are now built, where ships formerly lay at anchor.

The trade of Teneriffe is very considerable, forty thousand pipes of wine being annually made there; which is consumed in the island, or made into brandy, and sent to the Spanish West-Indies. Indeed the wine is the only considerable article of the foreign commerce of Teneriffe, unless we reckon the large quantities of filtering stones brought from Grand-Canary.

The race of inhabitants found here when the Spaniards discovered the Canaries, are no longer a distinct people, having intermarried with the Spanish settlers; their descendants, however, may be known, from their being remarkably tall, strong, and large boned. The men are tawny, and the women are pale. The inhabitants, in general, of Teneriffe, are decent, grave, and civil; retaining that solemn cast which distinguishes those of their country from others. Though we are not of opinion that our manners are similar to those of the Spaniards, yet Onal declared, he did not think there was much difference. He said, indeed, that they did not appear to be so friendly as the English; and that their persons nearly resembled those of his countrymen.

Having got our water and other articles on board, we weighed anchor on the 4th of August, quitted Teneriffe, and proceeded on our voyage,

On the 10th, at nine o'clock in the evening, we saw the island of Bonavista bearing south, distant about a league; though we then thought ourselves much farther off, but it soon appeared we were mistaken; so, after hauling to the eastward, to clear the sunken rocks that lie near the south-east point of the island, we found ourselves close upon them, and barely weathered the breakers. Our situation was, for some minutes, so very alarming, that Captain Cook did not chuse to sound, as that might have increased the danger without any possibility of lessening it.

Having cleared the rocks, we steered between Bonavista and the island of Mayo, intending to look into Port Praya for the Discovery, as Captain Cook had told Captain Clerke that he should touch there. At one o'clock we saw the rocks south-west of Bonavista, bearing south-east, distant three or four leagues.

On Monday the 12th, at six o'clock in the morning, the isle of Mayo bore south-south-east, distant four or five leagues. We sounded, and found ground at sixty fathoms. At the distance of three or four miles from this island, we saw not the least appearance of vegetation; nothing presented itself to our view, but that lifeless brown, so common in unwooded countries under the torrid zone.

During our continuance among these islands, we had gentle breezes of wind, varying from the south-east to east, and some calms. On the 13th, at nine o'clock in the morning, we arrived before Port Praya, in the island of St. Jago, where

where
brigant
being t
south-w

We
after w
on the
south-e
princip
rally bl
and in
of shor
and of
and fre
enable
est part

Ever
ed from
ther ac
ought
with fi
to cha
These
ved on
we enj
sick th
voyage
in all
opene
passed
gun-r
water
man

where

where two Dutch East-India ships and a small brigantine, were at anchor. The Discovery not being there, we did not go in, but stood to the south-ward.

We lost the north-east trade wind, the day after we left the Cape de Verde islands; and, on the 30th, got that which blows from the south-east. The wind, during this interval, was principally in the south-west quarter. It generally blew a gentle breeze, but sometimes fresh, and in squalls. We had few calms, and those of short duration. Between the latitude of 12° , and of 79° north, the weather was very gloomy, and frequently rainy; insomuch, that we were enabled to save as much water as filled the greatest part of our empty casks.

Every bad consequence is to be apprehended from these rains, and the close sultry weather accompanying them. Commanders of ships ought carefully to purify the air between decks with fires and smoke, and to oblige the people to change their cloths at every opportunity. These necessary precautions were strictly observed on board the Resolution and Discovery, and we enjoyed the advantage of it, having fewer sick than on either of Captain Cook's former voyages. Our ship, however, was very leaky in all her upper works. The sultry weather had opened her seams so wide, that the rain-water passed through as it fell. The officers in the gun-room were driven from their cabins, by the water that came thro' the sides, and hardly a man could lie dry in his bed. The caulkers were employed

A Voyage to the Pacific Ocean,

employed to repair these defects, as soon as we got into fair settled weather; but Captain Cook would not trust them over the sides while we were at sea.

On the 1st of September, we crossed the equator, in the longitude of $27^{\circ} 38'$ west and passed the afternoon in performing the old ceremony of ducking those, who had not crossed the equator before. On the 8th, we were a little to the southward of Cape St Augustine. We proceeded on our voyage, without any remarkable occurrences, till the 6th of October. Being then in the latitude of $35^{\circ} 15'$ south longitude $70^{\circ} 45'$ west, we alternately met with light airs and calms for three successive days. For some days before we had seen albatrosses, and pinta-does, and we then saw three penguins. In consequence of this we sounded, but found no ground with a line of one hundred and fifty fathoms. We shot a few birds, one of which was a black petrel, about the size of a crow.

In the evening of the 8th, a bird, which the sailors call a noddy, settled on our rigging, and was taken. It was larger than a common English blackbird, and nearly of the same colour, except the upper part of the head, which was white. It was web-footed, had black legs, and a long black bill. Though it is said these birds never venture far from land, we knew of none nearer our station than Gough's or Richmond island, which could not be less than one hundred leagues. But, as the Atlantic Ocean, southward of us, has been but little frequented, there
may

may pe
A fresh
calm y
terward
twenty
returne
the ap
chored

After
ster-att
sent an
vernor,
guns,
the sam
were in
home wa

After
shore,
waited
vernor,
troops,
with the
particul
instance
tain Co
meat,
for the

On t
tory: t
altitude
ther th
ers were
tain Co

may possibly be more islands than we know of. A fresh gale from the north-west succeeded this calm weather, which continued two days. Afterwards we had variable light airs for about twenty-four hours, when the north-west wind returned, and blew fresh. On the 17th we saw the ape of Good Hope, and, on the 18th, anchored in Table Bay, in four fathoms water.

After receiving the usual visit from the Master-attendant, and the Surgeon, Captain Cook sent an officer to Baron Plettenburgh, the Governor, and saluted the garrison with sixteen guns, and was complimented, in return, with the same number. Two French East-India ships were in the bay, the one outward, and the other homeward bound.

After having saluted, Captain Cook went on shore, accompanied by some of his officers, and waited on the Governor, the Lieutenant-Governor, the Fiscal, and the Commander of the troops. These gentlemen received Captain Cook with the greatest civility, and the Governor, in particular, voluntarily promised him every assistance that the place afforded. Before Captain Cook returned on board, he ordered fresh meat, greens, &c. to be provided every day for the ship's company.

On the 22d we fixed our tents and observatory; the next day we began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to discover whether the watch had altered its rate. The caulkers were set to work to caulk the ship, and Captain Cook had concerted measures for supplying both

both ships with such provisions as were wanted; and, as the several articles for the Resolution were got ready, they were immediately conveyed on board.

The homeward-bound French ship sailed for Europe on the 26th, and by her we sent letters to England. The next day the Hampshire East-India ship, from Bencoolen, anchored in the bay.

On the 31st of Oct. it blew excessively hard at south-east, and continued for three days. The Resolution was the only ship in the bay that rode out the gale without dragging her anchors.

The storm ceased on the 3d of Nov. and on the 6th, the Hampshire sailed for England, in which Captain Cook sent home an invalid. On the 10th, in the morning, the Discovery arrived in the bay. She sailed from Plymouth on the 1st of August, and would have been with us a week sooner, had not the late gale of wind blown her off the coast. Captain Clarke, on his passage from England, lost one of his marines, by falling over board. No other accident happened among his people, and they arrived in perfect health. The next day, the Discovery wanting caulking, Captain Cook sent all his workmen on board her, and lent every other assistance to the Captain to expedite his supply of provisions and water.

Having, by the Governor's permission, taken our cattle on shore, on the night preceding the 14th, some dogs got in amongst the sheep, forced them out of the pen, killed four, and dispersed the rest. We recovered six of them the next day; but among those which were missing were two

two
whole
boast
tain's
cal's
trouble
lowest
the two
so miser
he wou
Mr
obliging
Captain
sent for
the offe
purpose
in this
Henry
sheep
trated
who lig
of their
produce
fides
Cape
sh
tails, wh
While
cution
our offi
of the
lates the
In the
vember,

two rams, and two of the finest ewes in the whole flock. Though the Dutch frequently boast of the police at the Cape, yet the Captain's sheep evaded all the vigilance of the Fiscal's officers and people. At length, after much trouble and expence, by employing some of the lowest fellows of the place, we recovered all but the two ewes. One of the rams, however, was so miserably torn by the dogs, that we thought he would never recover.

Mr Hemmy, the Lieutenant-Governor, very obligingly offered to make up this loss, by giving Captain Cook a Spanish ram, our of some he had sent for from Lisbon; but the Captain declined the offer, thinking it would equally answer his purpose to take with him some of the Cape rams: in this, however, the Captain was mistaken. Mr Hemmy had endeavoured to introduce European sheep to the Cape, but all his attempts were frustrated by the obstinacy of the country people, who highly esteem their own breed, on account of their large tails, the fat of which sometimes produces more money than the whole carcass besides. Indeed, the most remarkable thing in the Cape sheep is the length and thickness of their tails, which weigh from ten to fifteen pounds.

While the ships were repairing for the prosecution of our voyage, Mr Anderson, and some of our officers, made an excursion, to take a survey of the neighbouring country. Mr Anderson relates their proceedings to the following effect:

In the forenoon of Saturday the 16th of November, he, and five others, set out in a waggon,

to take a view of the country. They crossed the large plain to the eastward of the town, which is entirely a white sand, resembling that which is commonly found on beaches. At five in the afternoon they passed a large farm-house, some corn-fields and vine-yards, situated beyond the plain, where the soil appeared worth cultivating. At seven they arrived at Stellenbosch, a colony, in point of importance, next to that of the Cape.

The village stands at the foot of the range of lofty mountains, about twenty miles to the eastward of Cape Town, and consists of about thirty houses, which are neat and clean: a rivulet, and the shelter of some large oaks, planted at its first settling, form a rural prospect in this desert country. There are some thriving vine-yards and orchards about the place, which seem to indicate an excellent soil; though perhaps much may be owing to the uncommon fertility of the air.

At this season of the year, Mr Anderson could find but few plants in flower, and insects were very scarce. He and his companions left Stellenbosch the next morning, and soon arrived at the house they had passed on Saturday; Mr Cloeder, the owner of which, having sent them an invitation to visit him, they were entertained by this gentleman with great politeness and hospitality. They were received with a band of music, which continued playing while they were at dinner; which, in that situation, might be reckoned elegant. In the afternoon they crossed the country, and passed some large planta-

tions.

tions.
house,
ward
view
of
country
plantati

Plant
Stellenb
shrub
they ha

On T
went to
the inha
Reth. D
low hills
the top
east and
south
height
north p
very ext

The
a mile
it, inclu
road, at
Paul's ch
one unim
of that f
glutinati

On th
from the
passed th
Tyger H

Vol.

tions. In the evening they arrived at a farmhouse, which is said to be the first in the cultivated tract called the Pearl. Here they had a view of Drahenstein, the third colony of this country, which contains several little farms or plantations.

Plants and insects were as scarce here as at Stellenbosch, but there was a greater plenty of shrubs, and small trees, naturally produced, than they had before seen in the country.

On Tuesday the 19th, in the afternoon, they went to see a remarkable large Stone, called by the inhabitants the Tower of Babylon, or the Pearl Diamond. It stands upon the top of some low hills, and is of an oblong shape rounded on the top, and lying nearly south and north. The east and west sides are nearly perpendicular. The south end is not equally steep, but its greatest height is there; whence it declines gently to the north part, which they ascended, and had a very extensive prospect of the whole country.

The circumference of this stone is about half a mile; as they were half an hour walking round it, including allowances for stopping and a bad road; its height seems to equal the dome of St Paul's church. Except some few fissures, it is one uninterrupted mass of stone. The stone is of that sort which mineralogists call *Saxum Conglutinatum*.

On the 20th, in the morning, they set out from the Pearl, and, going a different road, passed through an uncultivated country to the Tyger Hills, where they beheld some tolerable

corn-fields. About noon they stopped in a valley for refreshment, where they were plagued with a vast number of musquitoes; and, in the evening, arrived at Cape-Town.

On Saturday the 23d, we got the observatory, clock, &c. on board. From the result of several calculations and observations, we had reason to conclude, that the watch, or time-piece, had performed well all the way from England.

Captain Cook fearing a second disaster, got his sheep and other cattle on board as soon as possible. He also increased his stock by purchasing two bulls, two heifers, two stone-horses, two mares, two rams, some ewes and goats, some poultry, and some rabbits.

Both ships being supplied with provisions and water sufficient for two years and upwards, and every other necessary article, and Captain Cook having given Captain Clerke a copy of his instructions, we repaired on board in the morning of the 30th. A breeze sprung up at south-east, at 5 in the afternoon, with which we weighed and stood out of the Bay; at nine it fell calm, and we anchored. At three o'clock the next morning we weighed and put to sea, with a light breeze at south, but did not get clear of land till the 3d of December in the morning.

On Thursday the 5th, a squall of wind carried away the mizzen top-mast of the Resolution, but we had another to replace it. On the evening of the 6th, being then in the latitude of $39^{\circ} 14'$ south, and in the longitude of $23^{\circ} 56'$ east, we observed several spots of water of a red-

dish

dish h
that w
small
to refe

We
a mou
to rol
trouble
males,
to feel

On
ed lan
with
it to b
the sou
in circ
nine te

We
islands
shrub
a rock
parts,
and sur

The
the ear
du Fre
Januar
of God
they h
Southe
two we
the oth
Crozet

dish hue. Upon examining some of this water that was taken up, we perceived a number of small animals, which the microscope discovered to resemble cray-fish.

We continued to the south-east, followed by a mountainous sea, which occasioned the ship to roll exceedingly, and rendered our cattle troublesome. Several goats, especially the males, died, and some sheep. We now began to feel the cold in a very sensible degree.

On Thursday the 12th, at noon, we discovered land extending from south-east by south, to south-east by east. We, at length, discovered it to be two islands. That which lies most to the south, appeared to be about fifteen leagues in circuit, and the most northerly one, about nine leagues in circuit.

We sailed at an equal distance from both islands, and could not discover either tree or shrub on either of them. They seemed to have a rocky shore, and, excepting the south-east parts, a ridge of barren mountains, whose sides and summits were covered with snow.

These two islands, and four others more to the east, were discovered by Captains Marion du Fresne and Crozet, French navigators, in January 1772, on their passage from the Cape of Good Hope to the Philippine Islands. As they have no names in the French chart of the Southern Hemisphere, Captain Cook named the two we now saw Prince Edward's Islands, and the other four by the name of Marion's and Crozet's Islands.

We had now, in general, strong gales, and very indifferent weather. After leaving Prince Edward's Islands, we shaped our course to pass to the southward of the four others, to get into the latitude of the land discovered by Monsieur de Kerguelen.

Captain Cook had received instructions to examine this island, and endeavour to discover a good harbour. On the 16th we saw numbers of penguins and divers, and rock-weed floating in the sea; and on the 21st we saw a very large seal. The weather was now very foggy, and as we hourly expected to fall in with the land, navigation was both dangerous and tedious.

On the 24th, at six in the morning, the fog clearing away a little, we saw land, bearing south-south-east, which we afterwards found to be an island of considerable height, and about three leagues in circuit. We soon after discovered another of equal magnitude, about one league to the eastward; and, between these two, some smaller ones. In the direction of south by east, another high island was seen. We did but just weather the island last mentioned: it was a high round rock, named Bligh's Cape. Captain Cook supposed this to be the same that Monsieur de Kerguelen called the Isle of Rendezvous; but he knew nothing that could rendezvous at it but the fowls of the air, for it was certainly inaccessible to every other animal.

The weather beginning to clear up about eleven, we tacked, and steered in for the land. At noon we were enabled to determine the latitude

of

of Bl
gitud
with
Pr
four
west
extre
north
chart
termi
right
To
we sa
theref
Ha
to the
bays, a
harbor
began
anch
covery
the m
who r
Ear
and h
chore
got in
Capt
difficu
of the
he cou
fore,

of Bligh's Cape to be $48^{\circ} 29'$ south, and its longitude $68^{\circ} 40'$. We passed it at three o'clock, with a fresh gale at west.

Presently after we clearly saw the land, and at four o'clock it extended from south-east to south-west by south, distant about four miles. The left extreme, which Captain Cook judged to be the northern point of this land, called in the French chart of the southern hemisphere Cape Francois, terminated in a high perpendicular rock; and the right one in a high indented point.

Towards the middle of the land there appeared to be an inlet; but, on our approaching it, we saw it was only a bending on the coast; we, therefore, bore up to go round Cape Francois.

Having got off the Cape, we observed the coast to the southward, much indented by points and bays, and, therefore, fully expected to find a good harbour. We soon discovered one, into which we began to ply; but it presently fell calm, and we anchored in forty-five fathoms water: the Discovery also anchored there soon after. Mr Bligh, the master, was ordered to sound the harbour; who reported it to be safe and commodious.

Early in the morning of the 25th we weighed, and having wrought into the harbour, we anchored in eight fathoms water. The Discovery got in at two o'clock in the afternoon; when Captain Clerke informed us, that he had with difficulty escaped being driven on the south point of the harbour, his anchor having started before he could shorten in the cable. They were, therefore, obliged to set sail, and drag the anchor af-

ter them, till they had room to heave it up, when they perceived that one of its palms was broken off.

Immediately after we had anchored, Captain Cook ordered all the boats to be hoisted out, and the empty water-calks to be got ready. In the mean time he landed, to search for a convenient spot where they might be filled, and to observe what the place afforded.

He found vast quantities of penguins, and other birds, and seals, on the shore. The latter were not numerous, but so insensible of fear, that we killed as many as we chose, and made use of their fat and blubber to make oil for our lamps, and other purposes. Fresh water was exceedingly plentiful; but not a single tree or shrub was to be discovered, and but little herbage of any kind; though we had flattered ourselves with the hope of meeting with something considerable growing here, having observed the sides of some of the hills to be of a lively green. Before Captain Cook returned to his ship, he ascended a ridge of rocks, rising one above another, expecting, by that means, to obtain a view of the country; but before he had reached the top, so thick a fog came on, that it was with difficulty he could find his way down again. Towards the evening we hauled the seine at the head of the harbour, but caught no more than half a dozen small fish; nor had we any better success the next day, when we tried with hook and line. Our only resource, therefore, for fresh provisions, was birds, which were innumerable.

Though

Th
Thur
to cu
the h
swelle
that p
appea
Th
cessiv
Capta
cemb
In co
on sh
which
treme
a qua
found
ed wi
bottle
follow

It i
were
harbo
left b
on sh
that

Though it was both foggy and rainy, on Thursday the 26th, we began to fill water, and to cut grass for our cattle, which we found near the head of the harbour. The rivulets were swelled to such a degree, by the rain that fell, that the sides of the hills, bounding the harbour, appeared to be covered with a sheet of water.

The people having laboured hard for two successive days, and nearly completed our water, Captain Cook allowed them the 27th of December as a day of rest, to celebrate Christmas. In consequence of which, many of them went on shore, and made excursions into the country, which they found desolate and barren in the extreme. In the evening one of them presented a quart bottle to Captain Cook, which he had found on the north-side of the harbour, fastened with some wire to a projecting rock. This bottle contained a piece of parchment, with the following inscription:

*Ludovico XV. Galliarum
rege, et d' de Boynes
regi a Secretis ad res
maritimas annis 1772 et
1773.*

It is evident, from this inscription, that we were not the first Europeans who had visited this harbour. Captain Cook supposes it to have been left by Monsieur de Boilguchenneu, who went on shore the 13th of February 1772, the day that Monsieur de Kerguelen discovered this land;

The *d* is probably a contraction of the word *Domino*.

land; but the Captain appears to be for once mistaken; for how could Monsieur de Boisgubenneu, in the beginning of 1772, leave an inscription which commemorates a transaction of the following year?

Captain Cook, as a memorial of our having been in this harbour, wrote on the other side of the parchment as follows:

*Naves Resolution
et Discovery
de Rege Magna Britannia,
Decembris 1776.*

He then put it again into the bottle, accompanied with a silver two-penny piece of 1772, covered the mouth of the bottle with a leaden cap, and placed it the next morning in a pile of stones, erected for that purpose on an eminence, near the place where it was first found. Here Captain Cook displayed the British flag, and named the place *Christmas Harbour*, it being on that festival we arrived in it.

It is the first inlet that we meet with on the south-east side of Cape Francois, which forms the north side of the harbour, and is the northern point of this land. The situation sufficiently distinguishes it from any of the other inlets; and, to make it still more remarkable, its south point terminates in a high rock, perforated quite through, forming an appearance like the arch of a bridge. The head of the harbour lies open to only two points of the compass, and these are covered by islands in the offing, so that a
sea

for once
Boisgue-
e an in-
ction of
having
r side of

accom-
of 1772,
a leaden
a pile of
nience,
Here
ag. and
being on

on the
n forms
north-
sufficient-
inler;
s south
d quite
ae arch
lies o-
d these
that a
fea

altogether

[Faint, mostly illegible text]

[Faint, mostly illegible text]

[Faint, mostly illegible text]

[Faint, mostly illegible text]

J. J. Ross

Cook's Voyages



sea can
ter her
days,

In th
nied by
upon C
vation
the isla
distant
The lan
was vis
naked
southw
When
her uni
did not
mornin

As f
hour, w
along t
notwith
prevail
breeze
we kep
struck t

Abo
tory, w
berland
from th
hour ;
arms.
high isl
what li

sea cannot fall in to hurt a ship. It is high water here about ten o'clock at the full and change days, and the tide rises about four feet.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr King, his Second Lieutenant, went upon Cape Francois; expecting from this elevation to have had a view of the sea-coast, and the islands lying off it. But they found every distant object below them; hid in a thick fog. The land even with them, or of a greater height was visible enough, and appeared exceedingly naked and desolate; except some hills to the southward, which were covered with snow. When they returned to the ship, they found her unmoored, and ready to put to sea; but we did not weigh anchor till five o'clock the next morning.

As soon as the ships cleared Christmas Harbour, which was on Sunday the 29th, we steered along the coast in a south-east direction; and notwithstanding for some time past, fogs had prevailed more or less every day, we had a fine breeze at north-west, and clear weather. Tho' we kept the lead constantly going, we seldom struck the ground with a sixty fathom line.

About eight o'clock, we were off a promontory, which Captain Cook named Cape Cumberland. It is situated about a league and a half from the south-most point of Christmas Harbour; and between them is a bay with two arms. Off Cape Cumberland, is a small but high island, on the top of which, is a rock somewhat like a sentry-box, which occasioned our
giving

giving it that name. Two miles farther to the eastward lie a group of other small islands between which and Sentry-box Island we sailed, the channel being a full mile broad, and forty fathoms deep, having founded with a line of that length.

Having passed through this channel, we discovered a bay running in three leagues to the westward, which is formed by Cape Cumberland to the north, and a promontory to the south. This the Captain named Point Pringle, in compliment to Sir John Pringle, President of the Royal Society. The bottom of the bay is named Cumberland's Bay.

To the southward of this a fifth bay is formed, which was named White-bay, on account of some white sands or rocks in the bottom. There are also several lesser bays or coves, which appeared to be sheltered from all winds. Off the south point, several rocks raise their heads above water, and probably there are many others that do not.

Thus far we had steered in a direction parallel to the coast, and at no time more than two miles from it. We observed the beach to be sandy, and frequently swarming with birds, but all along retaining the same barren and naked appearance.

Having kept on our larboard bow, the land which we first discovered off Cape Francois, in the direction of south 53° east, we took for an island, and expected to find a passage between it and the main; but we found it to be a peninsula

fula, joined to the continent by a narrow isthmus. The Captain named this peninsula the Point of Foreland.

On our return, we were informed by the crew that the number of men who had perished on the east side of the bay was one. A large number of the charred bones and the remains of the dead were to be seen, and the ground was crowded with the bones and of a stench that served up.

Having mentioned the names of the several checquerons, and the number of water in each, we found that they withstood nearly to the top, and makes it difficult to examine them, by the way they were as a mill-race, and was going, and a line of water in the manner of a mill-race, even with the water was sufficient to prevent any precaution.

sula, joined to the rest of the coast by a low isthmus. The bay formed by this peninsula, Captain Cook named Repulse Bay. The northern point of the peninsula was named Howe's Foreland, in honour of Lord Howe.

On our approach to it, we discovered a number of rocks and breakers, and two islands to the eastward of it, which at first seemed but one. About noon, we were in the middle of the channel, having steered betwixt the island and the foreland when our latitude we found to be $48^{\circ} 51$ south. The coast is but low and crowded with sea-birds. The land is pretty high and of a rocky substance. Some seals were observed upon the beaches.

Having cleared the rocks and islands before mentioned, we found the sea before us, to be checquered with sea-weeds, which we were sensible were fast to the bottom. A great depth of water is sometimes found on such shoals; notwithstanding of which, the tops of some rocks nearly touched the surface of the water. This makes it dangerous to sail over them without examining them. We endeavoured to avoid them, by sailing through the channels whereby they were separated. The sea was as smooth as a mill-pond, and we kept the lead continually going, yet never struck the ground, even with a line of sixty fathoms. Having run in this manner for an hour, we discovered a large rock even with the water, amidst a bed of weeds: this was sufficiently alarming, to make us take every precaution to avoid danger.

We

We were now about eight miles to the southward of Howells Rockland, across the mouth of a large bay. In this bay are several rocks, low islands, and beds of sea-weed, but these appeared to be winding channels between them. We were so much embarrassed with these shoals, that we hauled off to the eastward, in hopes of extricating ourselves from our difficulties; but this plunged us into greater, and we found it absolutely necessary to secure the ships, if possible before night, especially as the weather was hazy, and a fog was apprehended.

Observing some inlets to the south-west of this, Captain Clerke was ordered to lead in for the shore, as his vessel drew less water than the Resolution; this he attempted, by running over the edges of some of the shoals; having from ten to twenty fathoms water, which so soon as he passed, he had no ground, at the depth of fifty fathoms. About five o'clock in the evening, Captain Clerke made the signal for discovering a harbour, in which we got to a safe anchor in a little time thereafter, at about half a mile distant from the shore.

We were scarce settled when the wind blew very strong; it however continued fair, and the fogs being dispersed, we got a good view of the country round: Mr Bligh the Master of Captain Cook's vessel, was ordered ashore with two boats, to survey the upper part of the harbour, and look out for wood.

He also desired Captain Clerke, to send his Master, to sound the channel south of the small

isles,

isles,
panied
on the
be ma
Fro
had a
as How
several
it, with
of the l
was dis
at anch
A great
ers app
the four
saw no
than by
Whil
king the
a hill,
boat wa
thing to
precipice
barren a
Harbour
was neit
fort, and
rished.
waiting f
Penguin
those bir
fresh wat
difficulty.
VOL. I

isles, and went himself in his own boat, accompanied by Mr Gore and Mr Bailey, and landed on the north point, to see what discovery could be made from thence.

From the highest hill over the point, they had a pretty good view of the sea-coast, as far as Howe's Foreland. It is much indented, and several rocky points seemed to shoot out from it, with coves and inlets of unequal extent. One of the latter, the end of which they could not see, was disjoined from that in which the ships were at anchor, by the point they then stood upon. A great many small islands, rocks, and breakers appeared scattered along the coast, as well to the southward as to the northward; and they saw no better channel to get out of the harbour, than by the one thro' which they had entered it.

While Captain Cook and Mr Bailey were making these observations, Mr Gore encompassed a hill, and joined them at the place where the boat was attending for them. There was nothing to obstruct their walk, except some craggy precipices; the country being if possible more barren and desolate than that about Christmas Harbour. With regret he observed, that there was neither food nor covering for cattle of any sort, and if he had lost any, they must have perished. In the little cove, where their boat was waiting for them, (which Captain Cook called Penguin Cove, from the immense number of those birds appearing there), is a fine river of fresh water, which we could approach without difficulty. Some large seals, shags, and a few

Indesec. Journal

ducks, were seen here; and Mr Bailey had a
 pluck of a very small land-bird, but it flew a-
 way among the rocks and they lost it. *M. B. 171*
 They got on board at nine, and Mr Bligh re-
 turned soon after: he reported that he had been
 four miles up the harbour probably near the top
 of it; he found its direction to be south-west; its
 breadth near the ships about a mile, but narrow-
 er farther up. He found the country very rocky,
 and very little verdure of any kind. *70* Penguins
 and other birds were seen in great numbers. *do*

Next morning we put to sea, Captain Cook
 having named the harbour Port Palliser. It is
 situated $49^{\circ} 3'$ south latitude, and $69^{\circ} 37'$ east
 longitude, and lies above five leagues south-east
 from Howel's Foreland. *do*

At four leagues distance, they perceived a
 round hill like a sugar loaf, which was named
 Mount Campbell; a low point, beyond which
 no land was to be seen, bore south-east at a-
 bout twenty miles distance; we were then two
 leagues from shore. The land is low and level.
 The mountains end about five leagues from the
 low point, leaving a great extent of low land,
 on which Mount Campbell is situated. These
 mountains seem to be composed of naked rocks,
 whose summits were covered with snow; and
 nothing but sterility was to be seen in the vallies.

At noon we perceived low land, opening off
 the low point just mentioned, in the direction of
 south-south-east. It proved to be the eastern
 extremity of this land, and was named Cape
 Digby. The shore forms one great bay from
 Cape

Cap
 auc
 whi
 facu
 is n
 of i
 thio
 71 V
 abou
 Digt
 chor
 forw
 could
 by,
 point
 her
 lotte.
 Six
 of sou
 jectin
 Forel
 same
 south
 most
 he d
 in hor
 Bet
 Wales
 which
 to the
 al Sou
 of Wa
 the R

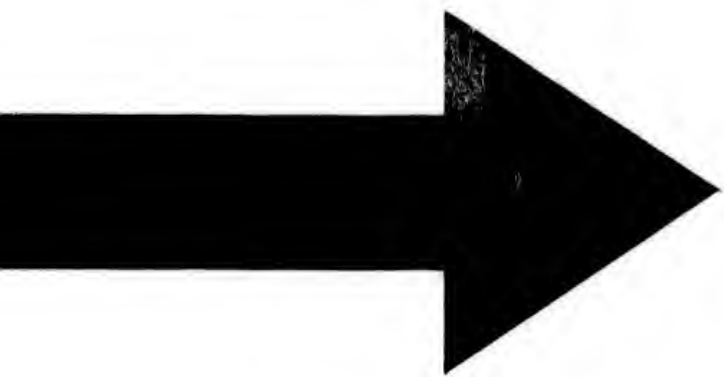
Cape Digby to Howe's Foreland; which produces a vast quantity of sea-weed, of that sort which Mr Banks distinguishes by the name of *fucus giganteus*. Though the stem of this weed is not much thicker than a man's thumb, some of it grows to the amazing length of sixty fathoms.

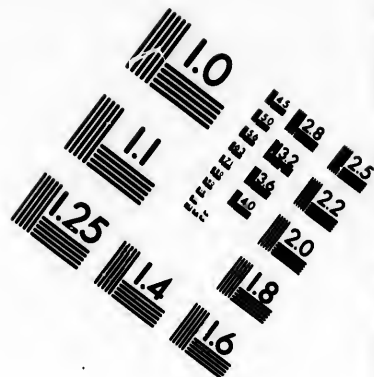
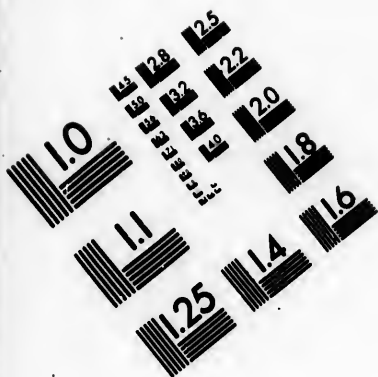
We observed a small bending in the coast, about one o'clock, on the north side of Cape Digby, for which we steered intending to anchor, which, finding impossible, we stretched forward, to make what further observations we could that night. The coast, from Cape Digby, trends nearly south-west by south, to a low point, to which Captain Cook, in honour of her Majesty, gave the name of Point Charlotte.

Six leagues from Cape Digby, in the direction of south-south-west & west, is a pretty high projecting point, which was called Prince of Wales's Foreland; and six leagues beyond that, in the same direction, and in latitude of $70^{\circ} 54'$ south, and the longitude of $170^{\circ} 13'$ east, is the most southerly point of the whole coast, which he distinguished by the name of Cape George, in honour of his Majesty.

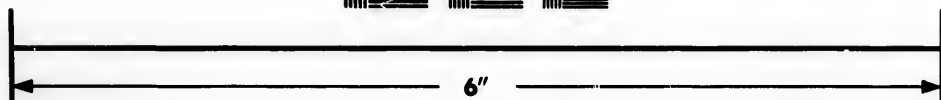
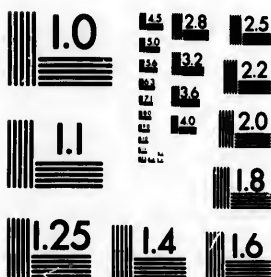
Between point Charlotte and the Prince of Wales's Foreland, we discovered a deep inlet, which was called Royal Sound; and, advancing to the south, we saw another inlet into the Royal Sound, on the south-west side of the Prince of Wales's Foreland. On the south-west side of the Royal Sound, all the land to Cape George,







**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5
5.0
5.6
6.3
7.1
8.0
9.0
10.0
11.2
12.5
14.0
16.0
18.0
20.0
22.5
25.0
28.0
31.5
36.0
40.0
45.0
50.0
56.0
63.0
71.0
80.0
90.0
100.0

1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5
5.0
5.6
6.3
7.1
8.0
9.0
10.0
11.2
12.5
14.0
16.0
18.0
20.0
22.5
25.0
28.0
31.5
36.0
40.0
45.0
50.0
56.0
63.0
71.0
80.0
90.0
100.0

consists of elevated hills, gradually rising from the sea to a considerable height; they were naked and barren, and their summits cleft with snow. Not a vestige of a tree or shrub was to be seen. Some of the low land about Cape Digby seemed to be covered with a green turf, but a considerable part of it appeared quite naked. Penguins and other oceanic birds were numerous on the beaches, and flocks immovable kept flying about our ships.

Anxious to get the length of Cape St. George, in order to be certain whether it was the most southerly point or not, we stretched to the south, with all the sail we could carry; but the wind blowing, we found it impossible to proceed in that direction, and stood away from the coast.

At this time Cape George bore south 53° west, distant about seven leagues. We observed no land to the south of it, except a small island, that lay off the pitch of the Cape; and a south-west breeze which we met, when we brought the Cape to bear in this direction, almost convinced us, that there was no more in that quarter.

The French discoverer imagined Cape Francois to be the projecting point of a southern continent. The English have discovered that no such continent exists, and that the land in question is an island of small extent, which, from its sterility, might properly be called the Island of Desolation; but Captain Cook was unwilling to rob Monsieur de Kerguelen of the honour of its bearing his name.

Mr

Mr. Anderson also, during the short time we lay in Christmas Harbour, lost no opportunity of searching the country in every direction, relates the following particulars:

No place (says he) hitherto discovered in either hemisphere, affords so scanty a field for the naturalist as this sterile spot. Some verdure indeed, appeared, when at a small distance from the shore, which might raise the expectation of meeting with a little herbage; but all this lively appearance was occasioned by one small plant, resembling saxifrage, which grew upon the turf in large spreading tufts, on a kind of rocky turf, which, if dried, might serve for fuel, and was the only thing seen here that could possibly be applied to that purpose.

Another plant, which grew to near the height of two feet, was pretty plentifully scattered about the boggy declivities: it had the appearance of a small cabbage when it has shot into seeds. It had the watery acid taste of the antiscorbutic plants, though it materially differed from the whole tribe. When eaten raw, it was not unlike the New Zealand scurvy-grass; but when boiled, it acquired a rank flavour. At this time, none of its seeds were ripe enough to be brought home, and introduced into our English kitchen-gardens.

Near the brooks and boggy places were found two other small plants, which were eaten as salad; the one like garden cresses, and very hot; and the other very mild: the latter is a curiosity, having not only male and female, but also an-

drogynus plants. Some coarse grass grew pretty plentifully in a few small spots near the harbour, which was eat down for our cattle. In short, the whole catalogue of plants did not exceed eighteen, including a beautiful species of lichen and several sorts of moss. Nor was there the appearance of a tree or shrub in the whole country.

Among the animals, the most considerable were seals, which were distinguished by the name of sea bears, being the sort that are called the urine seal. They came on shore to repose and breed. At that time they were shedding their hair, and so remarkably tame, that there was no difficulty in killing them.

No other quadruped was seen, but a great number of oceanic birds, as ducks, shags, petrels, &c. The ducks were somewhat like a winged snipe, both in size and figure, a considerable number of them were killed and eaten, they were excellent food, and had not the least fishy taste.

The Cape petrel, the small blue one, and the small black one, or Mother Carey's chicken, were not plenty here; but another sort, which is the largest of the petrels, and called by the seamen Mother Carey's goose, is found in abundance. This petrel is as large as an albatross, and is carnivorous, feeding on the dead carcasses of seals, birds, &c.

The greatest number of birds here were penguins, which consist of three sorts. The head of the largest is black, the upper part of the body of a leaden grey, the under part white, and the feet black; two broad stripes of fine yellow

yellow
the
in the
had
grey
white
bill
the
the
is for
ib. can
The
lesser
with
sea-
the
in the
few
varied
and
geon.
The
few
only
and
The
of an
with
is nea
frequ
three
pearls
hills,

yellow descend from the head to the breast; the bill is of a reddish colour, and longer than in the other sorts. The second sort is about half the size of the former. It is of a blackish grey on the upper part of the body, and has a white spot on the upper part of the head. The bill and feet are yellowish. In the third sort, the upper part of the body and throat are black, the rest white, except the top of the head, which is ornamented with a fine yellow arch, which it can erect as two crests.

The fowls here were of four sorts, *Aurora*, the lesser cormorant, an water cray, and another with a blackish back and a white belly. The sea swallow, the tern, the common sea gull, and the Port Egmont hen were also found here. Large flocks of a singular kind of white bird flew about here, having the base of the bill covered with a honey crust, but had a black bill and white feet. It was somewhat larger than a pigeon, and the flesh tasted like that of a duck.

The seine was once hauled, when we found a few fish about the size of a small haddock. The only shell fish we saw here, were a few limpets and mussels.

Many of the hills, notwithstanding they were of a moderate height, were at that time covered with snow, though answering to our June. It is reasonable to imagine that rain must be very frequent here, as well from the marks of large torrents having rushed down, as from the appearance of the country, which, even on the hills, was a continued bog or swamp.

The

The rocks consist principally of a dark blue and very hard stone, intermixed with particles of glimmer or quartz. Some considerable rocks were also formed here from a brownish brittle stone.

Having left Esquimaux's land, Captain Cook bore east by north in order to proceed to New Zealand, according to his instructions, for the purpose of taking in wood and water, and hay for the cattle, of which last article our stock was now considerably reduced. The 5th of December our longitude by observation of the sun and moon, was $72^{\circ} 33' 36''$ east; and on the first day of the year 1777 we were in the latitude of $58^{\circ} 41'$ south, longitude $76^{\circ} 30'$ east. Till the third of January the weather was tolerably clear, with fresh gales from the west and south-west; but now the wind veered to the north, and continued in that quarter eight days, during which, tho' there was at the same time a thick fog, we ran upwards of three hundred leagues, chiefly in the dark; the sun, indeed, sometimes made its appearance, but very rarely. On the 7th Captain Cook dispatched a boat with orders to Captain Clerke, fixing their rendezvous at Adventure Bay, in Van Diemen's Land, if the ships should happen to separate before they arrived there; however, we had the good fortune not to lose company with each other. On Sunday the 12th, the northerly winds were succeeded by a calm, which was soon followed by a southerly wind. Our latitude was now $48^{\circ} 40'$ south, longitude $110^{\circ} 26'$ east. The wind blew

from

from
to the
fair

T
with
the
board
with
The
very
clear
vred
north
47
fo
gave
lie at
or Ro
to Ed
may
ble di
rocks
Storm
shelter
mined
bably
Ab
which
Bay
was fo
at Ney
for the
in two
shore

from the south a whole day, and then veering to the west and north-west, brought on some fair weather.

They continued their course to the eastward without interruption, till the nineteenth, when the fore-top-mast of the *Resolution* went by the board, and carried the main-top-gallant-mast with it; this occasioned some delay in resting. The wind continued westerly, and the air blew very fresh, the weather was notwithstanding clear. In the morning of the 24th, we discovered Van Diemen's land bearing towards the north-west. Our latitude being at noon 49° 47' south, longitude 137° east. Captain Cook gave the name of the Eddystone to a rock that lies about a league to the eastward of Swally Isle or Rock, on account of its striking resemblance to Eddystone light-house. These two rocks may, even in the night, be seen at a considerable distance, and are the summits of a ledge of rocks under water. On the north-east side of Storm Bay are some creeks that form tolerably sheltered harbours, and if this coast was carefully examined, several good harbours would most probably be found.

About noon on the 26th a breeze sprung up which determined us to anchor in Adventure Bay, for the purpose of watering, &c. which was found could not be wanted till our arrival at New Zealand. The ship therefore stood in for the Bay, and anchored in a sandy bottom, in twelve fathoms water, at the distance from shore of about three quarters of a mile.

After

After anchoring, Captain Cook and Clerke were ashore in the boats, to look out for the most commodious place for procuring the necessary supplies. Wood and water they found could be procured easily, but grass, which was principally needed, was scarce and bad. The next morning Captain Cook detached two parties under the conduct of Lieutenant King, to the east side of the bay to cut wood and grass, some marines attending them as a guard, though none of the natives had yet appeared. He also sent the launch to provide water for the ships, and afterwards paid a visit to the parties thus employed.

The launch was drawn in the evening, and at one haul, a great quantity of fish was taken; after which, all hands returned on board, to be ready for sailing, when the wind should permit. But this however did not happen, the next day was employed for cutting down spars for the ships. We were surprized in the afternoon with a visit from some of the natives: eight men and a boy approached us from the woods, with the greatest confidence, none of them having weapons, but one, who held in his hand a stick, about two feet long, pointed at one end. They were quite naked, and wore no ornaments, unless we consider as such some large punctures or ridges on different parts of their bodies, some in straight, and some in curved lines. They were of the common stature, but slender. Their skin was black, and also their hair, which was as woolly as that of any native of Guinea; but they

they
ses;
from
eyes,
very
heard
some
By
witho
some
it was
threw
also r
but or
viour
tain C
view t
stant t
they f
by the
mediat
be per
of know
ed, Ca
of them
of woo
stance
howeve
Omai,
pons, t
ed them
with gr
Imm

they had not remarkably thick lips nor flat noses; on the contrary, their features were far from being disagreeable. They had pretty good eyes, and their teeth were tolerably even, but very dirty. Most of them had their hair and beards smeared with a red ointment, with which some also had their faces painted.

Every present made to them they received without any appearance of satisfaction. When some bread was given, as soon as they understood it was to be eaten, they either returned it, or threw it away, without even tasting it. They also refused some fish, both raw and dressed; but on giving some birds to them, their behaviour indicated a fondness for such food. Captain Cook had brought two pigs ashore, with a view to leave them in the woods; but the instant they came within reach of the savages, they seized them, as a dog would have done, by the ears, and were for carrying them off immediately; with no other intention, as could be perceived, but to kill them. Being desirous of knowing the use of the stick before mentioned, Captain Cook, by signs, prevailed upon one of them to shew him. This savage set up a piece of wood as a mark, and threw it, at the distance of about 20 yards. On repeated trials, however, he was always wide from his object. Omai, to shew them the superiority of our weapons, then fired his musquet at it; which alarmed them so much, that they fled into the woods with great precipitation.

Immediately after they had retired, Captain Cook

Cook ordered the two pigs, one a male and the other a female, to be carried about a mile within the woods, and for himself saw them left there, taking care that none of the natives should observe what was passing. He also intended to have left a young bull and a cow, besides some goats and sheep; but he soon relinquished that design being of opinion that the natives would destroy them, which he supposed would be the fate of the pigs, if they should chance to find them out. But as swine soon become wild, and are fond of being in the woods, it is probable that they were preserved. The other cattle could not have remained long concealed from the savages, as they must have been put into an open place.

We were prevented from sailing on the 20th by a dead calm, which continued the whole day. Captain Cook, therefore, sent parties on shore to cut wood and grass, as usual, and he accompanied the wooding party himself. Soon after our landing, about twenty of them joined us, one of whom was distinguished not only by his deformity, but by the drollery of his actions, and the seeming humour of his speeches, which however, we could not understand. Those whom we now saw differed in some respects, particularly in the texture of the hair, from the natives of the more northerly parts of this country, whom Captain Cook met with in his first voyage. Some of our present company had a slip of the kangaroo skin round their ancles; and others wore round their necks some small round made

of fish. They seem not to value iron, but were apparently pleased with the medals and beads that were given them. They did not even appear to know the use of fish-hooks; though it is more than probable that they were acquainted with some method of catching fish.

Their habitations were little streets or hovels built of mats, and covered with bark. Evident signs appeared of their sometimes making up their abode in the trunks of large trees, which had been hollowed out by fire, and the marks of fire near their habitations, and near every heap of shells, were indubitable proofs that they did not eat their food raw.

Captain Cook on leaving the wooden party, went to the grass cutters, and having seen the boats loaded with hay, returned on board. He had just quitted the shore, when several women and children appeared, and were introduced to Lieutenant King, by the men who accompanied them. These females wore a kangaroo skin (in the shape as it came from the animal) and over their shoulders, and round the waist. Its only use seemed to be to support their children when carrying on their backs; for it did not cover those parts which modesty directs us to conceal; their bodies were black, and marked like those of the men with scars. Some of them had their hair completely shaved; others on the one side only, while the rest of them had all the upper part of the head shorn close, having a circle of hair all round, something like the tonsure of the Roman Ecclesiastics. Many of the

children had fine features, and were thought pretty, but the women in general, were far from handsome. Some of our gentlemen paid their addresses to them, accompanied with large presents, which were rejected with great disdain; whether from a sense of virtue, or fear of displeasing their men, is not certain. That the husbands did not relish this gallantry, was clear, from their behaviour on the occasion. Captain Cook's reflections on this circumstance we shall give in his own words. This conduct of Europeans among Savages, to their women, is highly blameable; as it creates a jealousy in their men, that may be attended with consequences, fatal to the success of the common enterprise, and to the whole body of the adventurers, without advancing the private purpose of the individual, or enabling him to gain the object of his wishes. I believe it has been generally found among uncivilized people, that where the women are easy of access, the men are the first to offer them to strangers; and that where that is not the case, neither the assurances of presents, nor the opportunity of privacy, will be likely to have the desired effect. This observation, I am sure will hold good through all the parts of the South Sea where I have been.

During our continuance in Van Diemen's Land, we had either light airs from the east, or calms; we therefore lost little or no time by touching on this coast. This land was discovered in November 1642, by Tasman, who gave it the name of Van Diemen's Land. Captain Furneaux

Furneaux, touched at it in March 1773. It is the southern point of New-Holland, which is by far the largest island in the known world, and most deserves the name of a continent. The land is diversified with hills and vallies, and well wooded. The only wind to which Adventure Bay is exposed, is the north-east; and, upon the whole, this may be considered as a very safe road. Its latitude is $43^{\circ} 21' 20''$ south, and its longitude $147^{\circ} 29'$ east.

Mr Anderson, surgeon of the Resolution, employed himself in examining the country during our continuance in Adventure Bay. His remarks on the inhabitants and their language, and his account of the natural productions of the country, are to the following purport.

There is a beautiful sandy beach, about two miles long, at the bottom of Adventure Bay, formed to all appearance by the particles which the sea washes from a fine white sandy-stone. This beach is very well adapted for hauling a seine. Behind it is a plain, with a brackish lake, out of which we caught, by angling, some bream and trout. The parts adjoining the bay are mostly hilly, and are an entire forest of tall trees, rendered almost impassable by brakes of fern, shrubs, &c. The soil on the flat land, and on the lower part of the hills, is sandy, or consists of a yellowish earth, and in some parts of a reddish clay, but farther up the hills, it is of a grey tough cast. This country, upon the whole, bears many marks of being very dry, and the heat appears to be great. No mineral bodies, nor stones of

thought
far from
to that
ge pre
distin
of dis
that the
was clear
Captain
we shall
of Euro
is highly
near men
ces, fatal
e, and to
thout ad
vidual, or
is wishes
mong un
n are easy
them to
the case,
or the op
have the
fare will
the south
Diemen's
the east,
to him by
s discover
who gave
Captain
Furneaux

any other kind than the white sandy-stone, were observed by us; nor could we find any vegetables that afforded sustenance for men. The forest trees are all of one kind, and generally quite straight: they bear clusters of small white flowers. The principal plants we observed were wood-forrel; milk-wort, cudweed, bell-flower, gladiolus, samphire, and several kinds of fern. The only quadruped we saw distinctly was a species of opossum, about twice the size of a large rat. The kangaroo, found farther northward in New-Holland, may also be supposed to inhabit here, as some of the inhabitants had pieces of the skin of that animal.

The principal sorts of birds in the woods are brown hawks or eagles, crows, large pigeons, yellowish paroquets, and a species which we called *mosaica cana*, from the beautiful azure colour of its head and neck. On the shore were several gulls, black oyster catchers, or sea-pies, and plovers of a stone-colour.

We observed in the wood, some blackish snakes that were pretty large, and we killed a lizard which was about fifteen inches long and six round, very beautifully clouded with yellow and black.

Among a variety of fish we caught some large rays, morses, leather jackets, bream, soles, flounders, gurnards, and elephant-fish; besides a sort which we did not recollect to have seen before, and which partakes of the nature both of a round and a flat fish. Upon the rocks are mussels and other shell fish; and upon the beach we found some

some pretty Medusa's heads. The most troublesome insects we met with, were the mosquitoes, and a large black ant, whose bite inflicts extreme pain.

The inhabitants seemed mild and chearful with little of that wild appearance that savages in general have. They are almost totally devoid of personal activity or genius, and are nearly upon a par with the wretched natives of Terra del Fuego. They display, however, some contrivance in their method of cutting their arms and bodies in lines of different directions, raised above the surface of the skin. Their indifference for our presents, their general inattention, and want of curiosity, were very remarkable, and testified no acuteness of understanding. Their complexion is a dull black, which they sometimes heighten by smutting their bodies, as we supposed, from their leaving a mark behind on any clean substance. Their hair is perfectly woolly, and is clotted with grease and red ochre, like that of the Hottentots. Their noses are broad and full, and the lower part of the face projects considerably. Their eyes are of a moderate size, and though they are not very quick or piercing, they give the countenance a frank, chearful, and pleasing cast. Their teeth are not very white, nor well set, and their mouths are too wide; they wear their beards long, and clotted with paint. They are, upon the whole, well proportioned, though their belly is rather protuberant. Their favourite attitude is to stand with one side forward, and one

hand grasping across the back, the opposite arm, which, on this occasion, hangs down by the side that projects.

Near the shore in the bay we observed some wretched constructions of sticks covered with bark; but these seemed to have been only temporary, and they had converted many of their largest trees into more comfortable and commodious habitations. The trunks of these were hollowed out, to the height of six or seven feet, by means of fire. That they sometimes dwell in them was manifest from their hearths in the middle made of clay, round which four or five persons might sit. These places of shelter are rendered durable, by their leaving one side of the tree sound, so that it continues growing with great luxuriance.

That the natives of Van Diemen's land originate from the same stock with those who inhabit the northern parts of New-Holland, seems evident. Though they differ in many respects, their dissimilarity may be reasonably accounted for, from the united considerations of distance of place, length of time, total separation, and diversity of climate.

As the inhabitants of New-Holland seem all to have sprung from one common source, there is nothing very peculiar in them; for they greatly resemble the savages of the islands of Tanna and Manicou. There is even some reason for supposing, that they may originally have come from the same place with all the natives of the Pacific Ocean: for, of about ten words which

we

I
quin
the
from
are
O
weig
from
to se
ced a
to the
bate
intole
a com
not pe
In
bruary

we found means to get from them, that which is used to express cold, is very similar to that of New-Zealand and Orahene, the first being *mulluadee*, the second *mallea*, and the third *malyudee*. The remainder of our scanty vocabulary of Van Diemen's Land is as follows, viz.

- Quadne*, a woman.
- Eve'mai*, the eye.
- Muidje*, the nose.
- Ka'my*, the teeth, mouth, or tongue.
- Laelronne*, a small bird, living in the woods here.
- Koygea*, the war.
- Teegerd*, to eat.
- No'ongy*, devoted fear on the body.
- Toga'vage*, I will go, or I must be gone.

It will probably be found, upon a diligent enquiry, and an accurate comparison drawn from the affinity of languages, that all the people from New-Holland, eastward to Easter-Island, are of the same extraction.

On the 6th of January, in the morning, we weighed anchor with a light westerly breeze, from Adventure Bay. Soon after we had put to sea, the wind became southerly, and produced a perfect storm, but veering in the evening to the east and north-east, its fury began to abate. This wind was attended with an almost intolerable heat, which, however, was of so short a continuance, that some of our company did not perceive its existence.

In the night, between the 6th and 7th of February, one of the Discovery's marines fell overboard

board and was drowned. On the 26th, in the afternoon, we descried the coast of New Zealand, at the distance of eight or nine leagues. We then steered for Cape Barrow, and afterwards for Stephen's Island; and, in the morning of the 27th, anchored in Ship Cove, Queen Charlotte's Sound. We soon after landed many empty water-casks, and cleared a place for two observatories. In the mean time several canoes came alongside of our ships; but very few of those who were in them would venture on board. This conduct appeared the more extraordinary, as Captain Cook was well known to all of them; and as one man in particular among the present group had been treated by him with distinguished kindness during a former voyage. This man, however, could not by any means be prevailed on to come aboard. We could only account for this reserve by supposing, that they were apprehensive of our revenging the death of Captain Furneaux's people who had been killed here. But, upon Captain Cook's assuring them of the continuance of his friendship, and that he should not molest them on that account, they soon laid aside all appearance of suspicion and distrust. The next day we pitched two tents, and erected the observatories, in which Messrs King and Baily immediately commenced their astronomical operations. Two of our men were employed in brewing spruce beer; while others filled the water-casks, collected grass for the cattle, and cut wood. Those who remained on board were occupied in repairing the rigging, and performing

forming the necessary duty of the ships. A guard of marines was appointed for the protection of the different parties on shore, and arms were given to all the workmen, to repel all attacks from the natives, if they had been inclined to molest us; but this did not appear to be the case.

During the course of this day, many families came from various parts of the coast, and encamped their huts close to our encampment. The facility with which they build these temporary habitations, is remarkable. They have been seen to erect above twenty of them on a spot of ground, which was covered with plants and shrubs not an hour before. Captain Cook was present when a number of savages landed, and built a village of this kind. They had no sooner leaped from the canoes, than they tore up the shrubs and plants from the ground they had fixed upon, or put up some part of the framing of a hut. While the men were thus employed, the women took care of the canoes, secured the provisions and utensils, and gathered dry sticks, to serve as materials for a fire. These huts are sufficiently calculated for affording shelter from the rain and wind. The same tribe or family, however large, generally associate and build together, so that their towns and villages are usually divided by palisades into separate districts. We received considerable advantage from the natives coming to live with us; for, every day, some of them were occupied in catching fish, a good share of which we generally procured by exchanges.

exchange. Besides fish, we had other refreshments in abundance. Scurvy-grass, celery, and portable soup, were boiled every day with the wheat and pease; and we had spruce beer for our drink. Such a regimen soon removed all seeds of the scurvy from our people, if any of them had contracted it. But indeed, on our arrival here, we had only two invalids in both ships.

We were occasionally visited by other natives besides those who lived close to us. Their articles of traffic were fish, curiosities, and women; the two first of which were speedily disposed of, but the latter did not come to a good market, as our crew had conceived a dislike to them. Captain Cook observes upon this occasion, that he connived at a connexion with women, because he could not prevent it; but that he never encouraged it, because he dreaded its consequences. Among our occasional visitors was a chief called Kahoon, who headed the party that cut off Captain Furneaux's people. He was far from being beloved by his countrymen, some of whom even importuned Captain Cook to kill him, at the same time expressing their disapprobation of him in the severest terms. A striking proof of the divisions that prevail among these people occurred to us; for the inhabitants of each village, by turns, solicited our Commodore to destroy the other.

Captain Cook, on the 15th, went in a boat to search for grass, and visited the hippah, or fortified village, at the south-west point of the island

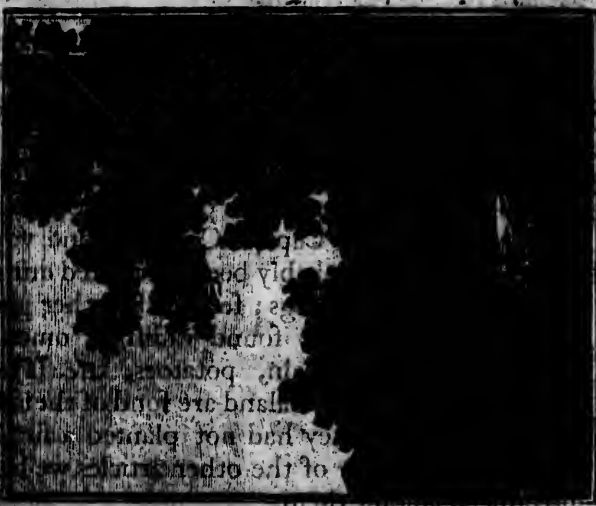
exchanges. Besides this, we had other refreshments in abundance. Sourwy-grass, celer, and portable soup, were boiled every day with the wheat and peas; and we had spruce beer for our drink. Such a regimen soon removed all seeds of the scurvy from our people, if any of them had contracted it. But indeed, on our arrival here, we had only two invalids in the ship.

We were occasionally visited by other natives besides those who lived close to us. Their articles of traffic were fish, cucumbers, and women, the two first of which were regularly disposed of; but the latter did not come to a good market, as our crew had conceived a dislike to them. Captain Cook observes upon this occasion, that he conceived at a connexion with women, because he could not prevent it, but that he was discouraged; because he dreaded its consequences. Among our occasional visitors was a chief called Kahooa, who headed the party that called Captain Furneaux's people. It was far from being beloved by his countrymen, some of whom even importuned Captain Cook to kill him, at the same time expressing their approbation of him in the lowest terms. A striking proof of the divisions that prevail among these people occurred to us, for the inhabitants of each village, by turns, solicited our Commodore to destroy the other.

On the 13th, we went in a boat to search for grass, and found the supply of it very abundant. The natives were very friendly to us, and we had a great quantity of fish, which we took care to preserve. The Commodore, on the 14th, went in a boat to search for grass, and found the supply of it very abundant. The natives were very friendly to us, and we had a great quantity of fish, which we took care to preserve.

On the 15th, we went in a boat to search for grass, and found the supply of it very abundant. The natives were very friendly to us, and we had a great quantity of fish, which we took care to preserve.

...and the for all of our both natives art-omen; sed of, market, them. n, that en, be- e never sequen- a chief hat cut ar from whom aim, at ation of or of of people ach vil- to de- a boat ab, or of the island



Cook's Voyages

Copyright

AN OPPOSUM, SEE VOL. I. P. 66.

DESCRIBING OF THE FRIENDLY ISLANDS.

if
at
of
an
No
ga
pa
ag
ma
der
leel
the
mer
one
intr
E
tain
cers
New
lect
abou
ed or
ent q
On t
fit to
neak
met v
is me
voyag
ceived
and p
of fear
quickl

island of Motuara. He observed no inhabitants at this village, though there were evident marks of its having been lately occupied, the houses and palisades being in a state of good repair. Not the smallest vestige remained of the English garden-seeds which had been planted at this hip-pah in 1773, during Captain Cook's second voyage. They had probably been all rooted out to make room for buildings; for, at the other gardens then planted, we found radishes, onions, leeks, cabbages, purslain, potatoes, &c. Tho' the natives of New-Zealand are fond of the last-mentioned root, they had not planted a single one, much less any of the other articles we had introduced among them.

Early in the morning of the 16th, the Captains Cook and Clerke, and several of the officers and sailors, accompanied by Omai and two New-Zealanders, set out, in five boats, to collect fodder for the cattle. Having proceeded about three leagues up the Sound, they landed on the east side, where they cut a sufficient quantity of grass to load the two launches. On their return down the Sound, they paid a visit to Grass Cove, the place where Captain Furneaux's people had been massacred. They here met with Captain Cook's old friend Pedro, who is mentioned by him in the history of his second voyage. He, and another New-Zealander, received them on the beach, armed with the spear and patoo, though not without manifest signs of fear. Their apprehensions, however, were quickly dissipated by a few presents, which brought

AN OPPOSUM. SEE VOL. I. P. 66.
THE FRIENDLY ISLANDS.

brought down to the shore two or three others of the family.

During the continuance of our party at this place, the Commodore, being desirous of enquiring into the particular circumstances relative to the massacre of our countrymen, fixed upon Omai as an interpreter for that purpose, as his language was a dialect of that of New-Zealand. Pedro, and the other natives who were present, none of whom had been concerned in that unfortunate transaction, answered every question without reserve. Their information imported, that while our people were at dinner, some of the natives stole, or snatched from them, some fish and bread, for which offence they received some blows: a quarrel immediately ensued, and two of the savages were shot dead, by the only two muskets that were fired; for, before a third was discharged, the natives rushed furiously upon our people, and being superior in number, destroyed them all. Pedro and his companions also pointed out the very spot where the *fracas* happened, and the place where the boat lay, in which a black servant of Captain Furneaux had been left to take care of it.

According to another account, this negro was the occasion of the quarrel; for, one of the natives stealing something out of the boat, the black gave him a violent blow with a stick. His countrymen hearing his cries at some distance, imagined he was killed, and immediately attacked our people, who, before they could reach the boat, or prepare themselves against the

the
ry
will
- as i
- the
- been
- tiki
- prop
- their
- and
- mfer
- by W
- had d
- the ar
- party
- ow; O
- cover
- hship
- the fir
- for the
- they
- boats
- rit was
- liberty
- Towar
- ing to
- Tuesday
- name to
- this ch
- ain: for
- tion of
- live back
- farmers
- VOL.

the unexpected assault which surprised the party of the exasperated savages. It is probable, both these accounts were true; as it is natural to suppose, that while some of the natives were stealing from the man who had been left in the boat, others of them might be taking the same liberty with the property of our people who were on the shore. But all agree, that there was no premeditated plan of bloodshed; and that if the thefts had not been so hastily detected, no mischief would have happened. With regard to the boat, some say, that it had been pulled to the shore, and others, that it had been washed off by a party of savages. On the 12th of the month, our party returned to the ships. On the evening, which they had spent at the shore, when the wind began to blow violently from the west, so that it was not without great difficulty that they could wind the ships, wherefore, of the boats did not arrive with the rest; and it was very fortunate that they got on board them, for in the night a perfect storm arose. Towards the evening, however, the wind veering to the east, brought us fair weather. On Tuesday the 13th, Pedro and his whole family came to reside near us. The proper name of this chief was Mandouah, but the sons of Captain Cook's people had given him the appellation of Pedrarin, before his voyage. On the 20th we had another storm of less duration than the former; but more violent, in consequence of

others
at this
of en-
relative
ed upon
e, as his
Zealand.
e present,
that un-
question
imparted,
ome of the
some fish
eived some
, and two
e only two
ore a third
uriously u-
a number,
companions
the *fracas*
boat lay, in
rneaux had
this negro
for, one of
f the boat,
with a sick.
e some dis-
mediately
they could
lves against
the

which, both our ships struck their yards and top-masts. These tempests are frequent here; and the nearer the shore, the more sensible are their effects.

On Friday the 21st, a tribe or family of about thirty persons came from the upper part of the Sound to visit us. Their chief was named Tomatongeauroanuc: he was about the age of forty-five, and had a frank, cheerful countenance; and, indeed, the rest of his tribe were, upon the whole, the handsomest of all the New-Zealanders that Captain Cook had ever seen. By this time upwards of two-thirds of the natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound had settled near us, numbers of whom daily resorted to the ships, and our encampment on shore; but the latter was most frequented, during the time when our people there were making seal blubber; for the savages were so fond of train oil, that they relished the very dregs of the casks, and skimmings of the kettle; and considered the pure stinking oil as a most delightful feast.

When we had procured a competent supply of hay, wood, and water, we struck our tents, and the next morning, which was the 24th, weighed out of the Cove. But the wind not being so fair as we could have wished, we were obliged to cast anchor again near the Isle of Motuara. While we were getting under sail, Tomatongeauroanuc, Matahouah, and many others of the natives, came to take leave of us. These two chiefs having requested Captain Cook to present them with some hogs and goats, he

gave

gave
and
and
stro
tain
now
after
yout
popu
and
Be
taara
towa
them
these
diately
cited
to be
presum
of Om
that h
compar
ving ob
him to
cabin, s
But, fe
upon to
instantly
and per
earnestly
subject,
England,
hoora h

gave to Tomatongeauoovanuc two pigs, a boar and a sow; and to Matahouah two goats, a male and female, after they had promised not to destroy them. As for the animals, which Captain Furneaux had left here, Captain Cook was now told, that they were all dead; but he was afterwards informed, by the two New-Zealand youths who went away with us, that Tiratou, a popular chief, had in his possession many cocks and hens, besides a sow.

Before we had been long at anchor near Motara, several canoes, filled with natives, came towards us, and we carried on a brisk trade with them for the curiosities of this place. In one of these canoes was Kahoora, whom Omai immediately pointed out to Captain Cook, and solicited him to shoot that chief: he also threatened to be himself his executioner, if he should ever presume to pay us another visit. These menaces of Omai had so little influence upon Kahoora, that he returned to us the next morning, accompanied with his whole family. Omai, having obtained Captain Cook's permission to ask him to come on board, introduced him into the cabin, saying, 'There is Kahoora; dispatch him.' But, fearing perhaps that he should be called upon to put his former threats in execution, he instantly retired. He soon, however, returned; and perceiving that the chief was unhurt, he earnestly remonstrated to Captain Cook on the subject, saying, that if a man killed another in England, he was hanged for it; but that Kahoora had killed ten, and therefore justly de-

served death. These arguments, however plausible, had no weight with our Commodore, who desired Omai to ask the New-Zealand chief, why he had destroyed Captain Furneaux's people? Kahoorā, confounded at this question, hung down his head, folded his arms, and seemed in expectation of immediate death: but, as soon as he was assured of safety, he became chearful. He appeared, however, unwilling to answer the question which had been put to him, till after repeated promises that no violence should be offered to him. He then ventured to inform us, that one of the natives having brought a stone-hatchet for the purpose of traffic, the person to whom it was offered took it, and refused either to return it, or give any thing in exchange; upon which the owner of it seized some bread by way of an equivalent; and this gave rise to the quarrel that ensued. He also mentioned, that he himself, during the disturbance, had a narrow escape; for a musquet was levelled at him, which he found means to avoid by skulking behind the boat; and another man, who happened to stand close to him, was shot dead: upon which Kahoorā attacked Mr Rowe, the officer who commanded the party, who defended himself with his hanger, with which he gave the chief a wound in the arm, till he was overpowered by superiority of numbers. Mr Burney, whom Captain Furneaux dispatched next day with an armed party in search of his people who were missing, had, upon discovering the melancholy proofs of this catastrophe, fired several

vera
the
rid
supp
upon
son
whic
M
pecte
on I
and n
stific
and n
this,
often
dore.
made
not h
scapin
him:
questi
entert
in the
desired
and fat
withou
tain Co
with th
for he
declara
been a
nue in
reason

veral volleys among the natives who were still on the spot, and were probably partaking of the horrid banquet of human flesh. It was reasonable to suppose that this firing was not ineffectual; but upon enquiry it appeared, that not a single person had been killed, or even hurt; by the shot which Mr Burney's people had discharged.

Most of the natives we had met with, expected that Captain Cook would take vengeance on Kahoora for his concern in the massacre; and many of them not only wished it, but testified their surprize at the Captain's forbearance and moderation. As the chief must have known this, it was a matter of astonishment that he so often put himself in the power of our Commodore. His two last visits, in particular, were made under such circumstances, that he could not have flattered himself with a prospect of escaping, had the Captain been inclined to detain him: and yet, when his first fears, on being questioned, had subsided, so far was he from entertaining uneasy sensations, that, on seeing in the cabin a portrait of a New-Zealander, he desired that his own likeness might be taken, and sat till Mr Webber had finished his portrait, without the smallest token of impatience. Captain Cook admired his courage, and was pleased with the confidence which he reposed in him; for he placed his whole safety in the uniform declarations of the Captain, that he had always been a friend to the natives, and would continue in the same sentiments till they gave him reason to behave otherwise: that he should

think no more of their barbarous treatment of our countrymen, as that transaction had happened long ago; but that, if they should ever venture to make a second attempt of that kind, they might rest assured of meeting with an adequate punishment.

Before our arrival in New-Zealand, Omai had expressed a desire of taking one of the natives with him to his own country. He soon had an opportunity of gratifying his inclination, for a youth named Taweiharooa, the only son of a deceased chief, offered to accompany him, and took up his residence on board. Captain Cook caused it to be made known to him and all his friends, that if the youth departed with us, he would never return. This declaration, however, had no effect. The day before we quitted the Cove, Tiratoutou, his mother, came to receive her last present from Omai; and the same evening she and her son parted, with all the marks of the tenderest affection. But she said she would weep no more, and faithfully kept her word; for the next morning, when she returned to take her last farewell of Taweiharooa she was quite cheerful all the time she remained on board, and departed with great unconcern. A boy of about ten years of age accompanied Taweiharooa as a servant; his name was Kokoa. He was presented to Captain Cook by his own father, who parted with him with such indifference, as to strip him, and leave him entirely naked. The Captain having in vain endeavoured to convince these people of the great improbability

bl
le
un
ed
as
trib
it is
me
ner
and
whic
with
wom
ed th
them
dead
home
If the
execu
steal o
and at
They
that th
safety.
and th
New-Z
and cir
guard
powerf
vation
for it is
the ma

bility of these youths ever returning home, at length consented to their going.

The inhabitants of New-Zealand seem to live under continual apprehensions of being destroyed by each other; most of their tribes having, as they think, sustained injuries from some other tribe, which they are ever eager to revenge: and it is not improbable, that the desire of a good meal is frequently a great incitement. They generally steal upon the adverse party in the night, and if they chance to find them unguarded, which is seldom the case, they kill every one without distinction, without sparing even the women and children: when they have completed the inhuman massacre, they either gorge themselves on the spot, or carry off as many dead bodies as they can, and feast on them at home, with the most horrid acts of brutality. If they are discovered before they have time to execute their sanguinary purpose, they usually steal off again, and sometimes they are pursued and attacked by the adverse party, in their turn. They never give quarter, or take prisoners, so that the vanquished must trust to flight alone for safety. From this state of perpetual hostility, and this destructive mode of carrying it on, a New-Zealander derives such habitual vigilance and circumspection, that he is scarce ever off his guard: and, indeed, these people have the most powerful motives to be vigilant, as the preservation of both soul and body depends on it: for it is a part of their creed, that the soul of the man whose flesh is devoured by his enemies,

is

is condemned to an incessant fire; while the soul of him whose body has been rescued from those that slew him, as well as the souls of those who die a natural death, ascend to the mansions of the gods. Captain Cook having asked them, whether they eat the flesh of such friends as had lost their lives in war, but whose bodies had been prevented from falling into the enemy's hands, they answered in the negative, and expressed their abhorrence of the idea.

Their ordinary method of disposing of their dead is to commit their bodies to the earth; but when they have more of their slain enemies than they can conveniently eat, they throw them into the sea. There are no *morais*, or other places of public worship among them; but they have priests, who pray to the gods for the success of their temporal affairs. The principles of their religion, of which we know but little, are strongly instilled into them from their infancy. We observed a remarkable instance of this in a youth, who abstained from eating during the greatest part of the day, merely on account of his hair being cut, though every method was practised that could induce him to change his resolution. He said that the *eatooa*, or deity, would kill him if he eat any thing on that day. Towards the evening, however, his religious scruples gave way to the importunate cravings of appetite, and he eat, though sparingly.

Notwithstanding the divided state in which these people live, travelling strangers, whose designs are honourable, are well received and entertained;

ent
ren
It i
call
us,
at a
of C
man
ing t
ly a
wate
the f
ward
of a l
broug
the w
is call
the w
The
among
have t
marria
marrie
The
the sm
they m
are no
strike t
fix the
being a
times a
tened t
On our

entertained; but it is expected that they will remain no longer than their business requires. It is thus that a trade for green talc, which they call *poenamoo*, is carried on. They informed us, that none of this stone is to be found, except at a place which bears its name, near the head of Queen Charlotte's Sound. We were told many fabulous and improbable stories concerning this stone, one of which is, that it is originally a fish, which they strike with a gig in the water, and having tied a rope to it, drag it to the shore, to which they fasten it, and it afterwards hardens into a stone. As it is fished out of a large lake, it is probable that it may be brought from the mountains, and deposited in the water, by means of the torrents. This lake is called by the inhabitants *Tavasi Poenamoo*, or the water of green talc.

The New-Zealanders have adopted polygamy among them; and it is common for one man to have two or three wives. The women are ripe for marriage at an early age; and those who are unmarried, find difficulty in procuring subsistence.

These people seem perfectly contented with the small degree of knowledge they possess, for they make no attempts to improve it. They are not remarkably curious, nor do new objects strike them with much surprise, for they scarce fix their attention for a moment. Omai, indeed being a great favourite with them, would sometimes attract a circle about him; but they listened to his speeches with very little eagerness. On our enquiring of Taweiharooa, how many ships,

ships,

ships, resembling ours, had ever arrived in Queen Charlotte's Sound, or in its neighbourhood, he gave us an account of one entirely unknown to us. This vessel, he said, had put into a harbour on the north-west coast of Teerawitte, a few years before Captain Cook arrived in the Sound in the Endeavour. He further informed us, that the Captain of her, during his continuance here, had cohabited with a female of the country, who had born him a son that was still living. He also mentioned, that this ship first introduced the venereal disease among the natives of New-Zealand. This dreadful disorder is now but too common among them, The only method they put in practice as a remedy, is to give the patient the use of a kind of hot bath, produced by the steam of certain green plants placed over hot stones.

Taweiharooa's intelligence induced us to believe, that a ship had really been at Teerawitte previous to Captain Cook's arrival in the Endeavour, as it corresponded with what the Captain had formerly heard; for, towards the latter end of 1774, some of the natives informed him of a ship's having put into a port on the coast of Teerawitte.

We had another piece of information from Taweiharooa, importing that there are here snakes and lizards of an enormous size. The latter were described by him as being eight feet long, and equal to a man's body in circumference. He said that they burrow in the ground; that they sometimes seize and devour men, and are
killed

kill
hole
resp
wha
very
on a
T
vatio
6' fo
Th
count
Capta
marks
curate
altoge
Ab
uncom
from t
tances
sea in a
behind
usually
more c
through
sea.
The
shore, a
dy ston
is laved
horizon
The mo
sembles
in thick

killed by making fires at the mouths of their holes. We could not misunderstand him with respect to the animal; for, in order to show us what he meant, he drew, with his own hand, very good representations of a lizard and snake on a piece of paper.

The longitude of Ship Cove, by lunar observations, is $174^{\circ} 25' 15''$ east; its latitude $41^{\circ} 6'$ south.

Though much has been said concerning this country and its inhabitants, in the accounts of Captain Cook's two former voyages, yet the remarks of Mr Anderson, being the result of accurate observations, must not be considered as altogether superfluous. They are as follow:

About Queen Charlotte's Sound, the land is uncommonly mountainous, rising immediately from the sea into large hills. At remote distances are vallies, terminating each towards the sea in a small cove, with a pebbly or sandy beach, behind which are flat places, where the natives usually build their huts. This situation is the more convenient, as a brook of fine water runs through every cove, and empties itself into the sea.

The bases of these mountains, towards the shore, are constituted of a brittle yellowish sandy stone, which acquires a bluish cast where it is laved by the sea. At some places it runs in horizontal, and, at others, in oblique strata. The mould or soil by which it is covered resembles marle, and is, in general, a foot or two in thickness.

The

The luxuriant growth of the productions here, sufficiently indicates the quality of the soil. The hills, except a few towards the sea, are one continued forest of lofty trees, flourishing with such uncommon vigour, as to afford an august prospect to the admirer of the sublime and beautiful works of nature.

This extraordinary strength in vegetation is, doubtless, greatly assisted by the agreeable temperature of the climate; for, in this time, tho' answering to our month of August, the weather was not so warm, as to be disagreeable, nor did it rise, the thermometer higher than 60°. The winter also seems equally mild with respect to cold; for in the month which corresponds to our December, the mercury was never lower than 48°; the trees at the same time retaining their verdure, as if in the height of summer. It is supposed their foliage remains, till pushed off in spring, by the succeeding leaves.

Though the weather is generally good, it is sometimes windy, with heavy rain; which, however, is never excessive and does not last above a day. In short, this would be one of the finest countries on earth, were it not so extremely hilly; which, supposing the woods to be cleared away, would leave it less proper for pasturage than flat land, and infinitely less so for cultivation, which could never be effected here by the plough.

The large trees on the hills are principally of two sorts. One of them, of the size of the largest firs, grows nearly after their manner.

The
be
lea
liqu
An
is li
is fi
the
yard
A
hind
plum
is yel
is bla
had a
peopl
On
grows
ing flo
leaves
them
fort.
A k
fully in
mong t
nother
forts wa
mill, fo
peace-fo
used as
ways th
the fish,
they form
Vol. I.

This supplied the place of spruce in making beer; which we did, with a decoction of its leaves fermented with sugar or treacle; and this liquor was acknowledged to be little inferior to American spruce-beer. The other sort of tree is like a maple; and often grows very large, but is fit only for fuel; the wood of that, and of the preceding, being too heavy for masts, or yards, &c.

A greater variety of trees grow on the flats behind the beaches: two of these bear a kind of plum, of the size of prunes; the one, which is yellow, is called karraca, and the other, which is black, called maitao; but neither of them had a pleasant taste, though eaten both by our people and the natives.

On the eminences which jut out into the sea, grows a specie of philadelphus, and a tree bearing flowers almost like myrtle. We used the leaves of the philadelphus as tea, and found them an excellent substitute for the oriental fort.

A kind of wild celery, which grows plentifully in almost every cove, may be reckoned among the plants that were useful to us; and another that we used to call scurvy-grass. Both sorts were boiled daily with wheat ground in a mill, for the people's breakfast, and with their pease-soup for dinner. Sometimes also they were used as salad, or dressed as greens. In all which ways they are excellent; and, together with the fish, with which we were amply supplied, they formed a most desirable refreshment.

The known kinds of plants to be found here are bind-weed, night-shade, nettles, a shrubby speedwell, sow-thistles, virgin's bower, vanelloe, French willow, euphorbia, crane's-bill, cud-weed, rushes, bulrushes, flax, all-heal, American night-shade, knot-grass, brambles, eye-bright, and groundsel; but the species of each are different from any we have in Europe.

There are a great number of other plants, but one in particular deserves to be noticed here, as the garments of the natives are made from it. A fine silky flax is produced from it, superior in appearance to any thing we have in this country, and, perhaps, as strong. It grows in all places near the sea, and sometimes a considerable way up the hills, in bunches or tufts, bearing yellowish flowers on a long stalk.

It is remarkable, that the greatest part of the trees and plants were of the berry-bearing kind; of which, and other seeds, Mr. Anderson brought away about thirty different sorts.

The birds, of which there is a tolerable good stock, are almost entirely peculiar to the place. It would be difficult and fatiguing to follow them, on account of the quantity of underwood, and the climbing plants; yet any person, by continuing in one place, may shoot as many in a day as would serve seven or eight persons. The principal kinds are large brown parrots, with grey heads, green parroquets, large wood-pigeons, and two sorts of cuckoos. A gros-beak, about the size of a thrush, is frequent; as is also a small green bird, which is almost the only mus-

fic

fit
sw
wo
dro
wa
stan
are
ame
red
Ab
fome
fand
fers
M
eleph
the n
large
weigh
a hood
led co
ly fro
also ge
and n
us wi
macka
which
dolphi
These,
small
rior to
muscle
which
are fou

ical one to be found here; but his melody is so sweet, and his notes so varied, that any one would imagine himself surrounded by a hundred different sorts of birds, when the little warbler is exerting himself. From this circumstance it was named the mocking-bird. There are also three or four sorts of smaller birds, and, among the rocks are found black sea-pies with red bills, and crested snags of a leaden colour. About the shore, there are a few sea-gulls, some blue herons, wild ducks, plovers, and some sand-larks. A snipe was shot here, which differs but little from that of Europe.

Most of the fish we caught by the seine were elephant-fish, mullets, soles, and flounders; but the natives supplied us with a sort of sea-beam, large conger-eels, and a fish of five or six pounds weight, called a mogge by the natives. With a hook and line we caught a blackish fish, called cole-fish by the seamen, but differing greatly from that of the same name in Europe. We also got a sort of small salmon, teal, gurnards, and nurres. The natives sometimes furnished us with hake, paracutas, parrot-fish, a sort of mackarel, and leather-jackets; besides another, which is extremely scarce, of the figure of a dolphin, a black colour, and strong bony jaws. These, in general, are excellent to eat; but the small salmon, cole-fish, and mogge, are superior to the others. Great quantities of excellent muscles inhabit among the rocks; one sort of which exceeds a foot in length. Many cockles are found buried in the sand of the small beach-

es; and, in some places, oysters, which, though very small, have an excellent flavour. There are also periwinkles, limpets, wilks, sea-eggs, star-fish, and some beautiful sea-ears, many of which are peculiar to the place. The natives also furnished us with some excellent cray-fish.

Insects here are not very numerous: we saw some butterflies, two sorts of dragon flies, some small grasshoppers, several sorts of spiders, some black ants, and scorpion-flies innumerable, with whose chirping the woods resounded. The sand-fly, which is the only noxious one, is very numerous here, and is almost as disagreeable as the musquitos. The only reptiles we saw here, were two or three sorts of inoffensive lizards.

In this extensive land, it is remarkable that there should not even be the traces of any quadruped, except a few rats, and a kind of fox-dog, which is kept by the natives as a domestic animal.

They have not any mineral deserving notice, but a green jasper or serpent-stone, of which the tools and ornaments of the inhabitants are made. This is held in high estimation among them; and they entertain some superstitious notions about the mode of its generation, which we could not comprehend: they say it is taken from a large river far to the south-ward; it is disposed in the earth in detached pieces like flints, and, like them, the edges are covered with a whitish crust.

The natives, in general are not so well formed, especially about the limbs, as the Europeans,

for

nor do they exceed them in stature. Their sitting so much on their haunches, and being deprived, by the mountainous disposition of the country, of using that kind of exercise, which would render the body straight and well proportioned, is probably the occasion of the want of due proportion. Many of them, indeed, are perfectly formed, and some are very large boned and muscular: but very few among them were corpulent. Their features are various, some resembling Europeans, and their colour is of different casts, from a deepish black to an olive or yellowish tinge. In general, however, their faces are round, their lips rather full, and their noses, (though not flat) large towards the point. An aquiline nose was not to be seen among them: their eyes are large, and their teeth are commonly broad, white, and regular. The hair, in general, is black, strong, and straight; it is commonly cut short on the hinder part, and the rest tied on the crown of the head. Some, indeed, have brown hair, and others a sort that is naturally disposed to curl. The countenance of the young is generally free and open; but, in many of the men, it has a serious or sullen cast. The men are larger than the women; and the latter are not distinguished by peculiar graces, either of form or features. Both sexes are clothed alike; they have a garment made of the silky flax already mentioned, about five feet in length, and four in breadth. This appears to be their principal manufacture, which is performed by knotting. Two corners

of this garment pass over the shoulders, and they fasten it on the breast with that which covers the body; it is again fastened about the belly with a girdle made of mat. Sometimes they cover it with dog-skin or large feathers. Many of them wear coats over this garment, extending from the shoulders to the heels. The most common covering, however, is a quantity of the fedy plant above-mentioned badly manufactured, fastened to a string, and thrown over the shoulders, whence it falls down on all sides to the middle of the thighs. When they sit down in this habit, they could hardly be distinguished from large grey stones, if their black heads did not project beyond their coverings.

They adorn their heads with feathers, combs of bone or wood, with pearl shell, and the inner skin of leaves. Both men and women have their ears slit, in which are hung beads, pieces of jasper, or bits of cloth. Some have the *scep-tum* of the nose bored in its lower part, but we never saw any ornament wore in that part; tho' a twig was passed through it by one of them, to shew that it was occasionally used for that purpose.

Many are stained in the face with curious figures, of a black or dark blue colour; but it is not certain whether this is intended to be ornamental, or as a mark of particular distinction: the women are marked only on their lips and chins; and both sexes besmear their heads and faces with a greasy reddish paint. The women also wear necklaces of shark's teeth, or bunches

bu
sm
or
wit
T
ed,
in c
huts
ging
The
of ou
height
length
fasten
red a
as a d
derabl
letting
to be d
ny of
feldom
The
small
their fi
down i
probabl
any oth
in the
Fish
they use
hooks p
traordin
how the

bunches of long beads; and a few of them have small triangular aprons, adorned with feathers or pieces of pearl shells, fastened about the waist with a double or treble set of cords.

They live in the small coves already mentioned, sometimes in single families, and sometimes in companies of perhaps forty or fifty. Their huts, which are in general most miserable lodging places, are built contiguous to each other. The best we saw was built in the manner of one of our country barns, and was about six feet in height, fifteen in breadth, and thirty-three in length. The inside was strong and regular, well fastened by means of withes, &c. and painted red and black. At one end it had a hole serving as a door to creep out at, and another considerably smaller, seemingly for the purpose of letting out the smoke. This, however, ought to be considered as one of their palaces, for many of their huts are not of half the size, and seldom are more than four feet in height.

They have no other furniture than a few small bags or baskets, in which they deposit their fishing-hooks and other trifles. They sit down in the middle round a small fire, and probably sleep in the same situation, without any other covering than what they have worn in the day.

Fishing is their principal support, in which they use different kinds of nets, or wooden fish-hooks pointed with bone; but made in so extraordinary a manner, that it appears astonishing how they can answer such a purpose.

Their

Their boats consist of planks raised upon each other, and fastened with strong withes. Many of them are fifty feet long. Sometimes they fasten two together with rafters, which we call a double canoe; they frequently carry upwards of thirty men, and have a large head ingeniously carved and painted, which seems intended to represent a man enraged. Their paddles are narrow, pointed, and about five feet long. Their sail, which is very little used, is a mat formed into a triangular shape.

They dress their fish by roasting, or rather baking them, being entirely ignorant of the art of boiling. It is thus they also dress the root of the large fern-tree, in a hole prepared for that purpose; when dressed, they split it, and find a gelatinous substance within, somewhat like sago powder. The smaller fern-root seems to be their substitute for bread, being dried and carried about with them, together with great quantities of dried fish, when they go far from their habitations.

When the weather will not suffer them to go to sea, mussels and sea-eags supply the place of other fish. Sometimes, but not often, they kill a few penguins, rails, and snags, which enable them to vary their diet. Considerable numbers of their dogs are also bred for food, but they depend principally on the sea for their subsistence, by which they are most bountifully supplied.

They are as filthy in their feeding as in their persons, which often emit a very offensive effluvia,

fl
an
th
wh
stin
cag
not
low
the
not
it w
rotte
In
any
stanc
tools,
procu
like v
venie
forme
of the
gouge
thoug
solid
piece,
things
canoes
cution
inferio
are eq
jasper,
shark's
wood,

fluvia, from the quantity of grease about them, and from their never washing their cloaths: their heads are plentifully stocked with vermin, which they sometimes eat. Large quantities of stinging train oil, and blubber of seals, they would eagerly devour. When on board the ships, they not only emptied the lamps, but actually swallowed the cotton with equal voracity. Though the inhabitants of Van Diemen's Land would not even taste our bread, these people devoured it with the greatest eagerness, even when it was rotten and mouldy.

In point of ingenuity they are not behind any uncivilized nations under similar circumstances: for, without the assistance of metal tools, they make every thing by which they procure their subsistence, clothing, and warlike weapons, with neatness, strength, and convenience. Their principal mechanical tool is formed in the manner of an adze, and is made of the serpent-stone or jasper; their chisel and gouge are furnished from the same material, though they are sometimes composed of black solid stone. Carving, however, is their masterpiece, which appears upon the most trifling things: the ornaments on the heads of their canoes, not only display much design, but execution. Their cordage for fishing lines is not inferior to that of this country, and their nets are equally good. A shell, a bit of flint, or jasper, is their substitute for a knife; and a shark's tooth, fixed in the end of a piece of wood, is their auger. They have a saw made

of

of some jagged fishes teeth, fixed on a piece of wood nicely carved; but this is used for no other purpose, than to cut up the bodies of those whom they kill in battle.

Though no people are more ready to resent an injury, yet they take every opportunity of being insolent, when they apprehend there is no danger of punishment; whence it may be concluded that their eagerness to resent injuries, is rather an effect of a furious disposition than genuine bravery. They are naturally distrustful and suspicious, for such as are strangers never venture immediately to visit our ships, but keep at a small distance in their boats, observing our motions, and hesitating whether they should risk their safety with us. They are to the last degree dishonest, and steal every thing within their reach, if they suppose they can escape detection; and in trading they seem inclined to take every possible advantage; for they never trust an article out of their hands for examination and seem highly pleased if they have overreached you in a bargain.

Such conduct indeed is not surprising, when it is considered that there appears to be but little subordination, and few, if any, laws for the punishment of transgressors. No man's authority extends beyond his own family; and when they join, at any time, for mutual defence or safety, those among them who are most eminent for valour and prudent conduct, are directors.

Their public contentions are almost perpetual, for war is their principal profession, as appears
from

from
teri
pat
fir
har
eigh
a ha
to be
halb
ing
or fl
Be
keepi
work
comp
their
ter the
stance
ful to
cutting
the bo
ing the
pleasur
It m
who co
must b
ing; an
in a ma
Both re
relations
miserabl
gashes in
or pieces

from their number of weapons, and their dexterity in using them. Their arms are spears, patoos and halberts, and sometimes stones. The first are from five to thirty feet long, made of hard wood and pointed. The patoo is about eighteen inches long, of an elliptical shape, with a handle made of wood, stone, &c. and appears to be their principal dependence in battle. The halbert is about five or six feet in length, tapering at one end with a carved head, and broad or flat, with sharp edges, at the other.

Before the onset, they join in a war-song, keeping the exactest time; and, by degrees, work themselves into a kind of frantic fury, accompanied with the most horrid, distortions of their tongues, eyes and mouths, in order to deter their enemies. To this succeeds a circumstance that is most horrid, cruel, and disgraceful to human nature, which is mangling and cutting to pieces (even when not perfectly dead) the bodies of their enemies; and, after roasting them, devouring their flesh with peculiar pleasure and satisfaction.

It might naturally be supposed, that those who could be capable of such excess of cruelty, must be totally destitute of every human feeling; and yet they lament the loss of their friends in a manner the most tender and affectionate. Both men and women, upon the death of their relations or friends, bewail them with the most miserable cries; at the same time cutting large gashes in their cheeks and foreheads, with shells, or pieces of flint, till the blood flows copiously, and

and mixes with their tears. They also carve a resemblance of an human figure, and hang it about their necks, as a memorial of those who were dear to them. They also perform the ceremony of lamenting and cutting for joy, at the return of a friend who has been some time absent.

The practices of the fathers, whether good or bad, their children are, at an early age, instructed in; so that you find a child of either sex, at the age of nine or ten years, able to imitate the frightful motions and gestures of the men. They also sing, and with some degree of melody, the traditions and actions of their forefathers, with which they are immoderately delighted, and pass much of their time in these amusements, accompanied sometimes with a kind of flute.

Their language is neither harsh nor disagreeable. Whatever qualities are requisite to make a language musical, obtain to a considerable degree in this, if we may judge from the melody of their songs. It is not, indeed, so comprehensive as our European languages, which owe their perfection to long and gradual improvement.

A VOYAGE

IN the
left
Straits. C
VOL.

The Voyage of Captain Cook

TO THE
PACIFIC OCEAN

BOOK II.

CONTENTS

Behaviour of the two New Zealand youths on the Island of Maitoga, with the Inhabitant described. — Visit and behaviour of Mouroon. — Disposition and Manners of the Maaseans. — Warecoo discovered. — Meneoore, Suraney, and Anderson, with Omai, sent on shore to visit and occupy their respective Islands respectively. — Omai's interesting and surprising adventure with his countrymen. — Remarks concerning Warecoo. — Departure from it. — Otakootais or Wendoos etc. visit. — Singularity in the natives of Heave's Island. — Scimitar Grove at Poulaho's Island. — Arrival at the Friendly Isles. — Amiable characters of the Natives. — Propensity to thieving. — Of their Persons. — Transactions with them. — Expedient to prevent their depredations. — Opinions of the Natives of a volcanic Island. — Entertainments exhibited by the English and Natives. — Mode of Shaving, &c. — Visit of Poulaho, the King. — Poulaho's inanimate Viceroy. — Offering to deprecate death. — Mourning Ceremonies. — Sentiments concerning the Sea. — Future State. — Their Language, &c. &c.

IN the morning of the 25th of February, we left the **F**riend, and made sail through Cook's Straits. On the 27th, Cape Palliser bearing west
VOL. I. M
about

to carve a
and hang it
those who
in the ce-
joy, at the
time ab-

either good
ly age, in-
of either
rs, able to
tures of the
e degree of
f their fore-
derately de-
me in these
with a kind

nor disagree-
sitive to make
nderable de-
the melody
comprehen-
ic. How their
movements

A VOYAGE

about seven leagues distant, we had a fine gale, and steered towards the north-east. As soon as we had lost sight of land, our two young New-Zealanders heartily repented of the adventurous step they had taken. Though we endeavoured, as far as lay in our power to sooth them, they wept, both in public and private; and gave vent to their sorrows in a kind of song, which seemed to express their praises of their country and people from which they were now, in all probability to be for ever separated. They continued in this state for several days, till, at length, the agitation of their minds began to subside, and their sea-sickness, which had aggravated their grief, wore off. Their lamentations then became less and less frequent; their native country, their kindred and friends, were gradually forgotten and they appeared to be firmly attached to us.

On the 28th at noon, being in the latitude of $41^{\circ} 17'$ south, and in the longitude of $177^{\circ} 17'$ east; we tacked about, and stood to the south-east, with a gentle breeze at east-north-east, which afterwards veered to north-east, in which point the wind remained two days, sometimes blowing a fresh gale with squalls and rains. On the 2d of March it shifted to north-west, and afterwards to south-west, between which point and the north it continued to blow, sometimes very moderately, and at other times a strong gale. With this wind we steered north-east by east and east, with all the sail we could carry, till Tuesday the 11th, when it veered to north-east

ea
an
till
we
ed
qu
oft
Th
sou
out
Con
nece
proc
cutic
entir
sage
W
for a
almo
this r
ns to
cept
of 34
of a t
dow
et, a
20th
the D
We
for it
tance
ing, a
of the
the re

east and south-east; we then stood to the north and the south-east, as the wind would permit, till the 16th, when having a gale from the north, we stood to the east. The next day we proceeded to the north-east; but, as the wind frequently veered to east and east-north-east, we often made no better than a northerly course. The hopes, however, of the wind coming more southerly, or from the westward, a little without the Tropic of Capricorn, encouraged the Commodore to keep this course. It was indeed necessary that we should run all hazards, as our proceeding to the north this summer, in prosecution of the principal object of the expedition, entirely depended on our having a quick passage to Otaheite, or the Society Isles.

We crossed the Tropic on the 27th, the wind, for a considerable time before, having remained almost invariably fixed at east-south-east. In all this run, we observed nothing that could induce us to suppose we had sailed near any land, except occasionally a tropic bird. In the latitude of $34^{\circ} 20'$, longitude 199° , we passed the trunk of a tree, which appeared much weather-beaten, and was covered with barnacles. On the 29th, as we were standing to the north-east, the Discovery made the signal of seeing land. We soon found it to be a small island, and stood for it till the evening, when it was at the distance of two or three leagues. The next morning, at day break, we bore up for the west side of the island, and saw several people wading to the reef, where, as they observed the ship leaving

ing them quickly they remained. But others, who soon appeared, followed her course; and some of them assembled in small bodies, making great shouts.

Upon our nearer approach to the shore, we saw many of the natives running along the beach, and, by the assistance of our glasses, could perceive that they were armed with long spears and clubs, which they brandished in the air with signs of threatening, or, as some of us supposed, with invitations to land. Most of them were naked, except having a kind of girdle, which was brought up between their thighs; but some of them wore about their shoulders pieces of cloth of various colours, white, striped, or checkered; and almost all of them had about their heads a white wrapper, in some degree resembling a turban. They were of a tawny complexion, robust, and about the middle size.

At the same time, a small canoe was launched from the farther end of the beach; and, a man getting into it, put off as with a view to reach the ship. On this, the Captain brought to, that he might receive the visit; but the man's resolution failing, he soon returned towards the beach, where, after some time, another man joined him in the canoe; and then they both paddled towards the ship. They stopp'd short, however, as if afraid to approach, until Omai, who addressed them in the Otaheite language, in some measure quieted their apprehensions. They then came near enough to take some beads and nails, which were tied to a piece of wood,

wo
ed
piec
Thi
Oma
pres
or g
ques
hum
gativ
horre
rooa,
foreh
of a
ple of
cast,
They
howev
but to
ven th
ting th
the nar
was cal
name o
or *Mai*
noo, na
Moun
tures w
ly no les
tions, w
a share
seemed
words.

wood, and thrown into the canoe. They seem-
 ed afraid to touch these things, and put the
 piece of wood aside, without untying them.
 This however might arise from superstition; for
 Omai said, that when they saw us offering them
 presents, they asked something for their *Eatooa*,
 or god. He also, perhaps improperly, put the
 question to them, whether they ever eat any
 human flesh? which they answered in the ne-
 gative, with a mixture of indignation and ab-
 horrence. One of them whose name was Mou-
 rooa, being asked how he came by a scar on his
 forehead, answered, that it was in consequence
 of a wound he had got in fighting with the peo-
 ple of an island, which lies towards the north-
 east, who sometimes came to invade them.
 They afterwards took hold of a rope. Still,
 however, they would not venture on board,
 but told Omai, that their countrymen had gi-
 ven them this caution, at the same time direc-
 ting them to enquire, whence the ship came, and
 the name of the Captain. Their chief, they said,
 was called Orooacéka. Upon our enquiring the
 name of the island, they told us it was *Mangya*,
 or *Mangéa*, to which they sometimes added,
noo, nai, naiwa.

Mourooa was lusty, but not very tall; his fea-
 tures were agreeable, and his disposition seeming-
 ly no less so; for he made several droll gesticula-
 tions, which indicated both good nature, and
 a share of humour. He also made others, which
 seemed of a serious kind, and repeated some
 words with a devout air, before he ventured to

lay hold of the ropes, which was probably to recommend himself to the protection of some divinity. His colour was nearly of the same cast with that common to the more southern Europeans. The other man was not so handsome. Both of them had strong, strait hair, of a jet colour, tied together on the crown of the head with a bit of cloth. They wore girdles, which were a substance made from the *morus papaveris*, in the same manner as at the other islands in this ocean. It was glazed like the sort used by the natives at the Friendly Islands, but the cloth on their heads was white, like that which was found at Otahiti. They had on a kind of sandals, made of a grassy substance interwoven, and probably intended to defend their feet against the rough coral rocks. Their beards were long, and the inside of their arms, from the shoulders to the elbow, and some other parts, were punctured or *tattooed*, after the manner of the natives of almost all the other islands in the south sea. The lobe of the ear was pierced, or rather slit, and to such a length, that one of them stuck there a knife and some beads, which had been given to them, and the same person had two polished pearl shells, and a bunch of human hair loosely twisted hanging about his neck. The canoe they came in was not above ten feet long, and very narrow, but both strong and neatly made. The fore part had a flat board fastened over it, and projecting out, to prevent the sea getting in or plunging. The lower part was of white wood; but the upper part was black,

blac
the
and
an u
nate
dled
ward
As
Capta
to fin
of the
put of
canoe
were
tation,
the Ga
er whe
ted us
with se
impraf
the misq
were wa
age, as
cable's l
with fro
sharp ro
Whilk
Mangee
near, m
in the be
haps, th
from land
many of

black, and their paddles were made of wood of the same colour; these were broad at one end, and filleted, and about three feet long. It had an upright stern, five feet high, which terminated at the top in a kind of fork. They paddled indifferently, either end of the canoe forward.

As soon as the ships were in a proper station, Captain Cook sent out two boats to endeavour to find a convenient place for landing. In one of them he went himself, and I had no sooner put off from the ship, than the two men in the canoe paddled towards his boat, and when they were come alongside, Mouroo, without hesitation, stepped into her. Omai, who was with the Captain, was desired to enquire of the islander where we could land; upon which he directed us to two places. But we soon observed, with regret, that the attempt at either place was impracticable, on account of the surf, unless at the risk of having our boats destroyed. Nor were we more successful in our search for a anchorage, as we could find no bottom till within a cable's length of the breakers, where we met with from forty to twenty fathoms depth, over sharp rocks of coral.

While we thus reconnoitred the shore of Mangee, the natives thronged down upon the reef, all armed. Mouroo, who still remained in the boat with Captain Cook, thinking, perhaps, that this warlike appearance deterred us from landing, commanded them to retire. As many of them complied, we imagined that he

was

was a person of some consequence: indeed, if we did not misunderstand him, he was brother to the king of the island. Several of them, instigated by curiosity, swam from the shore to the boats, and came on board them without reserve. We even found some difficulty in keeping them out, and could scarce prevent their pilfering whatever they could lay their hands upon. At length, when they observed us returning to the ships, they all left us except Mourroa, who, though not without manifest indications of fear, accompanied the Commodore on board the Resolution. The cattle and other new objects that he saw there did not strike him with much surprise, his mind, perhaps, being too much occupied about his own safety, to allow him to attend to other things. He seemed very uneasy, and gave us but little new intelligence; and therefore, after he had continued a short time on board, Captain Cook ordered a boat to carry him towards the land. In his way out of the cabin, happening to stumble over one of the goats, he stopped, looked at the animal, and asked Omai what bird it was; but not receiving an immediate answer from him, he put the same question to some of the people who were upon deck. The boat having conveyed him near the surf, he leaped into the water, and swam ashore. His countrymen, eager to learn from him what he had seen, flocked round him as soon as he had landed; in which situation they remained when we lost sight of them. We hoisted in the boat as soon as she returned, and made sail

to

to the
leave
pable
tuate
the l
Th
fall u
of con
tinual
league
derate
clear
In the
whenc
which
not ver
by the
fandy-
here ab
seem to
shore,
cies of
land.
minutes
land is
broad b
lows.
were of
some of
with coo
trees of
the hills
covered

to the northward. Thus were we obliged to leave this fine island unvisited, which seemed capable of supplying all our necessities. It is situate in the longitude of $201^{\circ} 53'$ east, and in the latitude of $21^{\circ} 57'$ south.

Those parts of the coast of Manglea which fall under our observation, are guarded by a reef of coral rock, against which a heavy surf is continually breaking. The island is about five leagues in circumference, and though of a moderate and pretty equal height, may be seen in clear weather at the distance of ten leagues. In the interior part, it rises into small hills, whence there is an easy descent to the shore, which, in the south-west part, is steep, though not very high, and has several excavations made by the dashing of the waves against a brownish sandy-stone, of which it consists. The descent here abounds with trees of a deep green, which seem to be all of one sort, except nearest the shore, where we observed numbers of that species of *dracena* found in the woods of New Zealand. The shore, on the north-west part, terminates in a sandy beach, beyond which the land is broken into small chasms, and has a broad border of trees which resemble tall willows. Farther up, on the ascent, the trees were of the deep green above-mentioned, which some of us imagined to be the rima, intermixed with cocoa-palms, and a few other sorts. Some trees of a higher sort were thinly scattered on the hills, the other parts of which were either covered with something like fern, or were bare, and

and of a reddish colour. The island, upon the whole, has a pleasing appearance, and might, by proper cultivation, be made a very beautiful spot.

The natives appearing to be both numerous and well fed, it is highly probable, that such articles of provision as the island produces are found in great abundance. Our friend Mourroa informed us, that they had no hogs, nor dogs, though they had heard of both these animals; but that they had plantains, taro, and bread fruit. The only birds we observed, were some terns, noddies, white egg-birds, and one white heron.

The language of the Mangeroans is a dialect of that of Otaheite, but their pronunciation is more guttural. They resemble the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Marquesas in the beauty of their persons; and their general disposition also seems to correspond with that of the first-mentioned people; for they are not only lively and cheerful, but are acquainted with all the lascivious gesticulations practised by the Otaheiteans in their dances. We had likewise reason to suppose, that they have similar methods of living; for, though we had not an opportunity of seeing many of their habitations, we observed one house near the beach, which, in its mode of construction, differed little from those of Otaheite. It appeared to be seven or eight feet high, and about thirty in length, with an open end, which represented an ellipse, or oval, transversely divided. It was pleasantly situated

in a
join
for
some
worth
laos,
thoug
Mang
We
30th
course
at the
morn
thin fo
to be
that w
much
Thoug
prefer
furnish
fall to
unfavo
to leew
ing.
three ar
Core,
ing-plac
we plied
our boat
noes con
to the I
Not lon
ducted b

in a grove. These people salute strangers by joining noses, and taking the hand of the person whom they accost, which they rub with some force upon their mouth and nose. It is worthy of remark, that the inhabitants of the Palaos, New-Philippine, or rather Caroline Islands, though at the distance of near 1500 leagues from Mangeca, have a similar method of salutation.

We quitted Mangeca in the afternoon of the 30th of March, and proceeding on a northerly course, we again discovered land, on the 31st, at the distance of nine or ten leagues. The next morning we were abreast of its north end, within four leagues of it. It now appeared to us to be an island nearly of the same extent with that which we had just left. Another island, much smaller, was also descried right a-head. Though we could soon have reached this, we preferred the larger one, as being most likely to furnish food for the cattle. We therefore made sail to it; but there being little wind, and that unfavourable, we were still about two leagues to leeward at eight o'clock the following morning. The Commodore, soon after, dispatched three armed boats, under the command of Mr Gore, his first Lieutenant, in search of a landing-place and anchoring-ground. Mean-while we plied up under the island with the ships. As our boats were putting off, we saw several canoes coming from the shore, which repaired first to the Discovery, as that ship was the nearest. Not long after, three of these canoes each conducted by one man, came along-side of the Resolution,

solution. They are long and narrow, and are supported by out-riggers: the head is flat above, but prow-like below; and the stern is about four feet high. We bestowed on our visitors some knives, beads, and other trifles; and they gave us some cocoa-nuts, in consequence of our having asked for them; but they did not part with them by way of exchange, as they seemed to have no idea of barter or traffic. One of them, after a little persuasion, came on board; and the other two soon followed his example. They appeared to be perfectly at ease, and free from all apprehension. After their departure, a man arrived in another canoe, bringing a bunch of plantains as a present to Captain Cook, who gave him, in return, a piece of red cloth and an axe. We were afterwards informed by Omo, that this present had been sent from the king of the island. Soon after, a double canoe, containing twelve of the islanders, came towards us. On approaching the ship, they recited some words in concert, by way of chorus, one of them first giving the word before each repetition. Having finished this solemn chaunt, they came along-side and asked for the chief. As soon as Captain Cook had made his appearance, a pig and some cocoa-nuts were conveyed into the ship; and the Captain was also presented with a piece of matting, by the principal person in the canoe, when he and his companions had got on board.

These new visitors were introduced into the cabin, and conducted to other parts of the ship. Though some objects seemed to surprise them, nothing

not
 afro
 who
 As
 derf
 is a
 rance
 as th
 any
 these
 istenc
 hogs
 our ge
 two fr
 must
 knew
 the C
 what b
 present
 The C
 eagerly
 of anim
 natives
 of the
 ceived
 from an
 ed in hi
 The
 noes we
 not unli
 flowed
 on the
 it was fr
 Vol.

nothing could fix their attention. They were afraid to venture near the cows and horses, of whose nature they could form no conception. As for the sheep and goats, they gave us to understand, that they knew them to be birds. It is a matter of astonishment, that human ignorance could ever make so ridiculous a mistake, as there is not the smallest resemblance between any winged animal and a sheep or goat. But these people seemed unacquainted with the existence of any other terrestrial animals, than hogs, dogs, and birds; and as they saw that our goats and sheep were very different from the two former, they absurdly inferred, that they must belong to the latter class, in which they knew there was a great variety of species. Tho' the Commodore bestowed on his new friend what he supposed would be the most acceptable present, yet he seemed somewhat disappointed. The Captain was afterwards informed that he eagerly wished to procure a dog, of which kind of animals this island was destitute, though the natives knew that the race existed in other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke had received a similar present, with the same view, from another man, who was equally disappointed in his expectations.

The islanders whom we had seen in those canoes were in general of the middle stature, and not unlike the Mangleans. Their hair either flowed loosely over their shoulders, or was tied on the crown of the head; and though in some it was frizzled, yet that, as well as the straight

fort; was long. Some of the young men were handsome. Like the inhabitants of Mangeca, they wore girdles of glazed cloth, or fine matting, the ends of which were brought between their thighs. Their ears were bored, and they wore about their necks, by way of ornament, a sort of broad grass, stained with red, and strung with berries of the nightshade. Many of them were curiously marked or *tattooed* from the middle downwards, particularly upon their legs; which made them appear as if they wore boots. Their beards were long, and they had a kind of sandals on their feet. They were frank and cheerful in their deportment, and very friendly and good natured.

Lieutenant Gore returned from his excursion in the afternoon, and informed Captain Cook, that he had examined the west side of the island, without being able to find a place where the ships could ride in safety, or a boat could land, the shore being bounded by a steep coral rock, against which a continual surf broke with extraordinary violence. But as the inhabitants seemed extremely friendly, and as desirous of our landing as we ourselves were, Mr Gore was of opinion, that they might be prevailed upon to bring off to the boats beyond the surf, such articles as we were most in need of. As we had little or no wind, the delay of a day or two was of small consideration; and therefore the Commodore resolved to try the experiment the next morning. We observed, soon after day-break, some canoes coming towards the ships; one of which

wh
ti
pla
ma
thir
one
a bi
and
of s
could
How
them
Britan
ly ple
Th
pri
boats
that b
who h
Onai
ing a s
put off
was tw
it. W
without
instantly
cluding
others o
patient
serving
them su
require,
as was e
loidy

which directed its course towards the Resolution. There were in it some cocoa-nuts and plantains, and a hog, for which the natives demanded a dog from us, refusing every other thing that we offered by way of exchange. Tho' one of our gentlemen on board had a dog and a bitch, which were great nuisances in the ship, and which might have served to propagate a race of so useful an animal in this island, yet he could not be prevailed upon to part with them. However, to gratify these people, Omai gave them a favourite dog he had brought from Great Britain; with which acquisition they were highly pleased.

The same morning, which was the 3d of April, Captain Cook detached Mr Gore with three boats, to make trial of the experiment which that officer had proposed. Two of the natives, who had been on board accompanied him; and Omai served as an interpreter. The ships being a full league from the island when the boats put off; and the wind being inconsiderable, it was twelve o'clock before we could work up to it. We then perceived our three boats just without the surf, and an amazing number of the islanders on the shore a-breast of them. Concluding from this, that Lieutenant Gore, and others of our people, had landed, we were impatient to know the event. With a view of observing their motions, and being ready to afford them such assistance as they might occasionally require, the Commodore kept as near the shore as was consistent with prudence. He was con-

N 2

vinced,

vinced, however, that the reef was a very effectual barrier between us and our friends who had landed, and put them completely out of the reach of our protection. But the natives, in all probability, were not so sensible of this circumstance as we were. Some of them, now and then, brought a few coconuts to the ships, and exchanged them for whatever was offered them. These occasional visits diminished the Captain's solicitude about our people who had landed; for, though we could procure no intelligence from our visitors, yet their venturing on board seemed to imply, that their countrymen on shore had made no improper use of the confidence reposed in them. At length, towards the evening, we had the satisfaction of seeing the boats return. When our people got on board, we found that Mr Gore, Mr Anderson, Mr Burney, and Omai, were the only persons who had landed. The occurrences of the day were now fully reported to the Commodore by Mr Gore. Mr Anderson's account of their transactions, which was very circumstantial, and included some observations on the island and its inhabitants, was to the following purport:

They rowed towards a sandy beach, where a great number of the natives had assembled, and came to an anchor at the distance of a hundred yards from the reef. Several of the islanders swam off, bringing coconuts with them; and Omai gave them to understand, that our people were desirous of landing. Soon after, two canoes came off; and to inspire the natives with a greater

gro
ons
nary
ing
Mr
canc
hold
to su
to th
us, b
ming
ing t
were
A
to loo
proce
author
mong
led up
to a n
armed
should
a muse
these,
sitting
self
leaf of
of blis
were
which
mark
the rest

greater confidence, Mr Gore and his companions resolved to go unarmed, and to run the hazard of being treated well or ill.

Our conductors, says Mr Anderson, watching attentively the motions of the surf, landed Mr Burney and myself, who were in the first canoe, safely upon the reef. An islander took hold of each of us, obviously with an intention to support us in walking over the rugged rock, to the beach, where several of the others met us, holding the green boughs of a species of *mimosa*, in their hands, and saluted us by joining their noses to ours. Mr Gore and Ormai were landed from the second canoe.

A great crowd stocked with eager curiosity to look at us; and would have prevented our proceeding, had not some, who seemed to have authority, dealt blows, with little distinction among them, to keep them off. We were then led up an avenue of cocoa-palms; and soon came to a number of men, arranged in two rows, and armed with clubs, which they hold on their shoulders, much in the same manner as we rest a musquet. After walking a little way among these, we found a person who seemed a chief, sitting on the ground cross-legged, cooling himself with a sort of triangular fan, made from a leaf of the cocoa-palm, with a polished handle of black wood, fixed to one corner. In his ears were large branches of beautiful red feathers, which pointed forward. But he had no other mark, or ornament, to distinguish him from the rest of the people; though they all obeyed

him with the greatest alacrity. He either naturally had, or at this time put on, a serious, but not severe countenance; and we were desired to salute him, as he sat, by some people, who seemed of consequence.

We proceeded still amongst the men armed with clubs, and came to a second chief, who sat fanning himself, and ornamented as the first. He was remarkable for his size, and uncommon corpulence, though to appearance not above thirty. In the same minute, we were conducted to a third chief, who seemed older than the two former, and though not so fat as the second, was of a large size. He also was sitting, and adorned with red feathers, and after saluting him as we had done the others, he desired us both to sit down, which we were very willing to do, being pretty well fatigued with walking up, and with the excessive heat we felt amongst the vast crowd that surrounded us.

In a few minutes, the people were ordered to separate; and we saw, at the distance of thirty yards, about twenty young women, ornamented as the chiefs, with red feathers, engaged in a dance, which they performed to a slow and serious air, sung by them all. We got up, and went forward to see them; they continued their dance, without paying the least attention to us. They seemed to be directed by a man who served as a prompter, and mentioned each motion they were to make. But they never changed the spot, as we do in dancing, and though their feet were not at rest, this exercise consisted more

in

in m
time
near
them
perfo
seem
proba
as few
led th
ther f
in rin
plexin
than
much
and ea
placem
very pe
spicuous
her pro
assed in
manner
elegantly
only of
the wait
knees, i
serving
ed, wha
had been
aside, wa
had been
with the
they now
led.

in moving their fingers very nimbly, at the same time holding their hands in a prone position near their face, and now and then also clapping them together. Their motions and song were performed in such exact concert, that it should seem they had been taught with great care; and probably they were selected for this ceremony, as few of those whom he saw in the crowd equalled them in beauty. In general, they were rather stout than slender, with black hair flowing in ringlets down the neck, and of an olive complexion. Their features were rather fuller, than what we allow to perfect beauties, and much alike; but their eyes were of a deep black, and each countenance expressed a degree of complacency and modesty, peculiar to the sex in every part of the world; but perhaps more conspicuous here, where nature presented us with her productions in the fullest perfection, unbiassed in sentiment by custom, or unrestrained in manner by art. Their shape and limbs were elegantly formed. For, as their dress consisted only of a piece of glazed cloth, fastened about the waist, and scarcely reaching so low as the knees, in many we had an opportunity of observing every part. This dance was not finished, when we heard a noise, as if some horses had been galloping towards us; and on looking aside, we saw the people armed with clubs, who had been desired, as we suppose, to entertain us with the sight of their manner of fighting. This they now did, one party pursuing another who fled.

As

As we supposed the ceremony of being introduced to the chiefs was now at an end, we began to look about for Mr Gore and Omai; and, tho' the crowd would hardly suffer us to move, we at length found them coming up, as much incommoded by the people as we had been, and introduced in the same manner to the three chiefs. Each of these expected a present; and Mr Gore gave them such things as he had brought with him from the ship, for that purpose. After this, making use of Omai as his interpreter, he informed the chiefs with what intention we had come on shore; but was given to understand, that he must wait till the next day, and then he should have what was wanted.

They now seemed to take some pains to separate us from each other; and every one of us had his respective circle, to surround and gaze at him. For my part, I was, at one time, above an hour apart from my friends; and when I told the chief, with whom I sat, that I wanted to speak to Omai, he peremptorily refused my request. At the same time, I found the people began to steal several trifling things which I had in my pocket; and when I complained to the chief of this treatment, he justified it. From these circumstances, I now entertained apprehensions, that they had a design to detain us amongst them. They did not, indeed, seem to be of a disposition so savage, as to make us anxious for the safety of our persons; but it was, nevertheless, vexing to think, we had hazarded being detained by their curiosity. In this situation,

ation
read
fruit
peffi
ing
the
gave
roun
P
wher
and
well
But
some
to the
found
sions.
al rea
ved, t
for an
he con
that/th
tified b
went
which
turn, v
Burney
be thur
been m
us, of
In
est part
and son

ation, I asked for something to eat; and they readily brought me some cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and a sort of souf pudding, which was presented by a woman. And on my complaining much of the heat occasioned by the crowd, the chief himself condescended to fan me; and gave me a small piece of cloth, which he had round his waist.

Mr Burney happening to come to the place where I was, I communicated my suspicions to him; and, to put it to the test, whether they were well founded, we attempted to get to the beach. But we were stop'd, when about half-way, by some men, who told us, that we must go back to the place we had left. On coming up, we found Omari entertaining the same apprehensions. But he had, as he fancied an additional reason for being afraid; for he had observed, that they had dug a hole in the ground for an oven, which they were now finishing; and he could assign no other reason for this, than that they meant to roast, and eat us, as is practised by the Natives of New-Zealand. Nay, he went so far as to ask them the question, at which they were greatly surpris'd, asking, in return, whether that was a custom with us. Mr Burney and I were rather angry, that they should be thus suspected by him; there having, as yet been no appearance, in their conduct towards us, of their being capable of such brutality.

In this manner we were detained the greatest part of the day, being sometimes together, and sometimes separated; but always in a crowd; who

who, not satisfied with gazing at us, frequently desired us to uncover parts of our skin; the sight of which commonly produced a general murmur of admiration. At the same time, they did not omit these opportunities of rifling our pockets; and, at last, one of them snatched a small bayonet from Mr Gore, which hung in a sheath by his side. This was represented to the chief, who pretended to send some persons in search of it. But, in all probability, he counteracted the theft; for, soon after, Omai had a dagger stolen from his side, in the same manner; though he did not miss it immediately.

Whether they observed any signs of uneasiness in us, or that they voluntarily repeated their compliments of friendship, when we expressed a desire to go, I cannot tell; but, at this time, they brought some green boughs, and, striking their ends in the ground, desired we would hold them as we sat. Upon my urging our bunnies again, they gave us to understand, that we must stay and eat with them; and a pig that we saw, soon after, lying near the oven, which they had prepared and heated, removed Omai's apprehensions of being put into it himself; and made us think it might be intended for our repast. The chief also promised to send some people to procure food for the cattle; but it was not till late in the afternoon, that we saw them return with a few plantain-trees, which they carried to our boats.

In the mean time, Mr Burney and I attempted again to go to the beach; but when we arrived,

arrived
seemed
pose:
reef, on
dragged
of coral
again; a
to take
ed some
be permi
Mr Burn
on comin
wrong in
the custon
to strang
naturalize
ing them

Findin
better trea
to their wi
had left;
should hav
after we ha
prepared fo
Accord
tioned, hav
stool of bla
and directi
large ring,
derable num
and, shortly
sufficient quant
a dozen perso

arrived, found ourselves watched by people, who seemed to have been planted there for that purpose: for, when I tried to wade in upon the reef, one of them took hold of my clothes, and dragged me back. I picked up some small pieces of coral, which they required me to throw down again; and, on my refusal, they made no scruple to take them forcibly from me. I had gathered some small plants; but these also I could not be permitted to retain; and they took a fan from Mr Burney, which he had received as a present on coming ashore. Omai said, we had done wrong in taking up any thing; for it was not the custom here to permit freedoms of that kind to strangers, till they had, in some measure, naturalized them to the country, by entertaining them with festivity two or three days.

‘ Finding that the only method of procuring better treatment was to yield implicit obedience to their will, we went up again to the place we had left; and they now promised, that we should have a canoe to carry us off to our boats, after we had eaten of a repast which had been prepared for us.

‘ Accordingly, the second chief before-mentioned, having seated himself upon a low broad stool of blackish hard wood, tolerably polished, and directing the multitude to make a pretty large ring, made us sit down by him. A considerable number of cocoa-nuts were now brought, and, shortly after, a long green basket, with a sufficient quantity of baked plantains to have served a dozen persons. A piece of the young hog that had

had been dressed, was then set before each of us, of which we were desired to eat. Our appetites however, had failed, from the fatigue of the day; and though we did eat a little to please them, it was without satisfaction to ourselves.

It being now near sun-set, we told them it was time to go on board. This they allowed; and sent down to the beach, the remainder of the victuals that had been dressed, to be carried with us to the ship. We found a canoe ready to put us off to our boats, which the natives did with the same caution as when we landed. They put us on board the boats, with the cocoa-nuts, plantains, and other provisions, which they had brought; and we rowed to the ships, very well pleased that we at last had got out of the hands of our troublesome masters.

The restrained situation of these gentlemen gave them very little opportunity of observing the country: for they were seldom a hundred yards from the place where they had been introduced to the chiefs, and consequently were confined to the surrounding objects. The first thing that attracted their notice was the number of people, which must have been at least two thousand. Except a few, those who had come on board the ships were all of an inferior class, for a great number of those that our gentlemen met with on shore, had a superior dignity of demeanour, and their complexion was much whiter. In general, they had their hair, which was long and black, tied, on the crown of the head.

Many

Many
in the
old n
they,
smoot
fisted
waist,
ouly v
into a
thers v
cocoa-
which
membr
some od
persons
mon ba
round t
thers ar
of disti
young w
of the m
and back
ornamen
legs. T
ped shor
the fore
wife of a
a piece o
to her h
after the
chief intro
be tiful,
n. yere
VOL. I

Many of the young men were perfect models in shape, and of a delicate complexion. The old men were, many of them corpulent; and they, as well as the young, had a remarkable smoothness of skin. Their general dress consisted of a piece of cloth wrapped about the waist, but some had pieces of mats, most curiously variegated with black and white, formed into a kind of jacket without sleeves; while others wore conical caps made of the core of a cocoa-nut, interwoven with beads. In their ears, which were pierced, they hung pieces of the membranous part of some plant, or stuck there some odoriferous flower. The chiefs, and other persons of rank, had two little balls, with a common base, made of bone, which they hung round their necks with small cord. Red feathers are here considered as a particular mark of distinction; for none but the chiefs, and the young women who danced, assumed them. Some of the men were punctured all over the sides and back, and some of the women had the same ornament (if it deserves that name) on their legs. The elderly women had their hair cropped short; and many of them were cut all over the fore part of the body in oblique lines. The wife of a chief appeared with her child, laid in a piece of red cloth, which had been presented to her husband; she suckled the infant much after the same manner of our women. Another chief introduced his daughter, who was young, beautiful, and modest. No personal deformities were observed in either sex, except a few

individuals, who had scars of broad ulcers remaining on the face and other parts.

Many of the natives were armed with spears and clubs, the latter of which were generally about six feet long, made of a hard black wood, neatly polished. The spears were formed of the same wood, simply pointed, and were in general twelve feet long; but some were so short as to seem intended for darts.

They preserved their canoes from the sun under the shade of various trees. Our gentlemen saw eight or ten of them, all double ones; that is, two single ones fastened together by rafters lashed across. They were about four feet deep, and in length about twenty feet, and the sides were rounded with a plank raised upon them. Two of these canoes were curiously stained all over with black, in innumerable small figures, as triangles, squares, &c. and were far superior to any thing of the kind Mr Anderson had ever seen at any other island in the South Sea. The paddles were almost elliptical, and about four feet long.

Most of the trees observed by Mr Anderson, were cocoa-palms, some species of *hibiscus*, a sort of *euphorbia*, and many of the same kind he had seen at Mangeea. The latter are tall and slender, resembling a cypress; and are called by the natives *etoo*. He also saw a species of *convolvulus*, and some treacle-mustard; besides which, there are doubtless other plants and fruit-trees which he had not an opportunity of seeing. The soil, towards the sea, is nothing more than a

bank

bank
thou
expo
chang
reef o
to diff
sembl
colour
water
it is ca
surf w
Tho
the me
voyage
cipal ob
we fear
from th
It wa
this ex
Gore's i
perform
tives a g
ple, our
arms we
he gave
a little u
told the
board w
ing our g
people m
them wa
one shot.
guns wer

bank of coral, generally steep and rugged, which though it has probably been for many centuries exposed to the weather, has suffered no further change than becoming black on its surface. The reef or rock, with which the shore is lined, runs to different breadths into the sea, where it resembles a high steep wall: it is of a brownish colour, and nearly even with the surface of the water; and though its texture is rather porous, it is capable of withstanding the washing of the surf which constantly breaks upon it.

Though the landing of our gentlemen was the means of enriching the narrative of the voyage with the preceding particulars, the principal object in view was partly unattained; for we scarce procured any thing worth mentioning from the island.

It was mentioned, that Omai was sent upon this expedition; and, perhaps, his being Mr Gore's interpreter, was not the only service he performed this day. He was asked by the natives a great many questions concerning our people, our ships, our country, and the sort of arms we used: and, according to the account he gave to Captain Cook, his answers were not a little upon the marvellous. Our country, he told them, had ships as large as their island; on board which were instruments of war (describing our guns) of such dimensions, that several people might sit within them; and that one of them was sufficient to crush the whole island at one shot. This led them to ask what sort of guns were on board Captain Cook's ships. He

said, that though they were but small in comparison with those he had described, yet, with such as they were, they could, with the greatest ease, and at the distance the ships were from the shore, destroy the island, and kill every soul in it. They then inquired by what means this could be done, and Omai explained it as well as he could. He happened luckily to have a few cartridges in his pocket. These he produced; the balls, and the gun-powder that was to set them in motion, were submitted to inspection; and, to supply the defects of his description, an appeal was made to the senses of the spectators. The multitude had been formed, as before mentioned, into a circle. This furnished Omai with a convenient stage for his exhibition. In the centre of this, the small quantity of gun-powder collected from his cartridges, was properly disposed upon the ground, and set on fire by a piece of burning wood from the oven. The sudden blast, and loud report, the mingled flame and smoke, that instantly succeeded, filled the whole assembly with astonishment. They no longer doubted the tremendous power of our weapons, and gave full credit to all that Omai had said.

If it had not been for the terrible idea they conceived of the ships guns, from the specimen of their mode of operation, it was thought they would have detained the gentlemen all night. For Omai assured them, that if he and his companions did not return on board the same day, they might expect that the Captain would fire upon

upon
near
done
ved to
that t
theref
in the
gain o
was to
to thin
This
Europe
in it.
found
country
the dif
islands,
ing, wit
bitants
for a pa
lost, su
dently
well be
situation
adventu
which w
deserve
It may
satisfacti
in conve
Twenty
board a d
neighbour

upon the island. And as the ships stood in nearer the land in the evening, than they had done any time before, of which they were observed to take great notice, they probably thought that this formidable attack was meditating; and therefore they suffered their guests to depart; in the expectation, however, of seeing them again on shore next morning. But Captain Cook was too sensible of the risk they had already run, to think of repeating the experiment.

This island, though never before visited by Europeans, had actually other strangers residing in it. Omai, when he landed with Mr Gore, found amongst the crowd, three of his own countrymen, natives of the Society Islands. At the distance of about 200 leagues from those islands, an immense unknown ocean intervening, with such wretched sea-boats as their inhabitants are known to make use of, and fit only for a passage where sight of land is scarcely ever lost, such a meeting, at such a place, so accidentally visited by Captain Cook's people, may well be looked upon as one of those unexpected situations, with which the writers of feigned adventures love to surprise their readers, and which when they really happen in common life, deserve to be recorded for their singularity.

It may be imagined, with what surprise and satisfaction Omai and his countrymen engaged in conversation. Their story is very affecting. Twenty persons of both sexes, had embarked on board a canoe at Otaheite, to cross over to the neighbouring island Ulietea. A violent con-

trary wind arising, they could neither reach the latter, nor get back to the former. Their intended passage being a very short one, their stock of provisions was scanty, and soon exhausted. The hardships they suffered, while driven by the storm they knew not whither, are not to be conceived. They passed many days without any thing to eat or drink. Worn out by famine and fatigue, their numbers gradually diminished. Four men only survived, when the canoe overfet; and then the perdition of these seemed inevitable. However, they kept hanging by its side, during some of the last days, till Providence brought them in sight of the people of this island, who immediately sent out canoes, and brought them ashore. Of the four thus saved, one was since dead. The other three, who lived to give this account of their almost miraculous transplantation, spoke highly of the kind treatment they here met with; and they were so well satisfied with their present situation, that they refused the offer made to them at Omai's request, of giving them a passage to their native islands. The similarity of manners and language had more than naturalized them to this spot; and the fresh connections they had here formed, and which it would have been painful to have broken off, after such a length of time, sufficiently account for this refusal. They had arrived upon this island at least twelve years ago.

The landing, says Captain Cook, of our gentlemen on this island, cannot but be considered

dered
proved
ledge
structiv
tive is
than a
soners,
and in
Sea, m
those th
nent or
-Acco
learned
men, the
thod of
bits of li
Otaheite
ligious co
the same
it is indu
sprang or
has sprea
mente ex
suppose,
to a more
that they
lation of
gods; este
and posses
wild enthu
approve o
ces of its
that it w

dered as a very fortunate circumstance. It has proved the means of thus bringing to our knowledge a fact, not only very curious, but very instructive. The application of the above narrative is obvious. It will serve to explain, better than a thousand conjectures of speculative reasoners, how the detached parts of the earth, and in particular, how the islands of the South Sea, may have been first peopled; especially those that lie remote from any inhabited continent or from each other.

According to Omai's account of what he learned in conversation with his three countrymen, the manners of those islands, their method of treating strangers, and their general habits of life, are much like those that prevail at Otaheite, and its neighbouring isles. Their religious ceremonies and opinions are also nearly the same. From every circumstance, indeed, it is indubitable, that the natives of Wateoo sprang originally, from the same stock, which has spread itself so wonderfully all over the immense extent of the South Sea. One would suppose, however, that they put in their claim to a more illustrious extraction: for Omai said, that they dignified their island with the appellation of *Wenooa no te Eatooa*, that is, a land of gods; esteeming themselves a sort of divinities, and possessed with the spirit of Eatooa. This wild enthusiastic notion Omai seemed much to approve of: observing, that there were instances of its being entertained at Otaheite; but that it was universally prevalent among the inhabitants

inhabitants of Mataia, or Osnaburgh island; Omai, and our two New-Zealanders perfectly understood their language, which was pretty much the same as at the other islands. Any peculiarities in it cannot be pointed out, as the Memorandum Book, in which Mr Anderson had put down a specimen of it was stolen by the natives.

Having failed in procuring any supplies of consequence in Wateoo, and the easterly swell having carried the ships to some distance from the island, on the night of the 3d of April; early next morning Captain Cook steered for the island which he had discovered three days before.

About ten o'clock next morning they got up to it, and Mr Gore was immediately dispatched with two boats, to look out a landing place, and procure provender for the cattle. Though a reef surrounded the land here, as at *Wateoo*, and a considerable surf broke against the rocks, our boats no sooner reached the west side of the island but they ventured in, and Mr Gore and his attendants arrived safe on shore. Captain Cook seeing they had so far succeeded, sent a small boat to know if further assistance was required. She waited to take in a lading of the produce of the island, and did not return till three o'clock in the afternoon: being cleared, she was sent again for another cargo; the Jolly boat was also dispatched upon the same business, with orders for Mr Gore to return with the boats before night, which orders were punctually observed.

The

The
dred
some
branch
This
from
Otakoo
and the
posed
This
Cocoa-p
there, a
great q
There w
a few o
treacle-m
rindi
eaten by
landed w
their din
A bea
riegated
mongst
a small fo
some egg
One o
up a tree
ding aspe
seen. In
legantly
frequent
other sort
seen.

The supply obtained here was about two hundred cocoa-nuts for ourselves, and for our cattle some grass, and a quantity of the leaves and branches of young cocoa-trees, and the pandanus.

This island lies about three or four leagues from *Watecoo*, the inhabitants of which call it *Otakeotai*. It is in the latitude of $19^{\circ} 15'$ south and the longitude of $201^{\circ} 37'$ east, and is supposed not to exceed three miles in circuit.

This island is entirely destitute of water. Cocoa-palms were the only common trees found there, of which there were several clusters, and great quantities of the *wharra*, or *pandanus*. There were also the *callophyllum*, *suriana*, with a few other shrubs; also a sort of *bind-weed*, *treacle-mustard*, a species of *spongo*, and the *marindi citrifolia*; the fruit of which is sometimes eaten by the natives of *Otakeite*. *Omai*, who landed with the party, dressed some of it for their dinner, but they thought it very indifferent.

A beautiful cuckoo, of a chestnut brown, variegated with black, was the only bird seen amongst the trees; but, upon the shore, were a small sort of curlew, blue and white herons, some egg-birds, and great numbers of noddies.

One of the company caught a lizard running up a tree; though small, it had a most forbidding aspect. Many of another sort were also seen. Infinite numbers of a kind of moth, elegantly speckled with black, white and red, frequented the bushes towards the sea. Some other sorts of moths and pretty butterflies were seen.

At this time there were no fixed inhabitants upon the island; but we discovered a few empty huts, which convinced us of its being, at least, occasionally visited. Monuments, consisting of several large stones, were also erected under the shade of some trees: there were also some smaller ones, with which several places were inclosed, where we supposed their dead had been buried. We found in one place a great many cockle-shells, of a particular sort, finely grooved, and larger than the fist; from which it was conjectured, that the island had been visited by persons who sometimes feed on shell fish. Mr Gore left some nails and a hatchet in one of the huts, for the use of those who might visit the island in future.

The boats being hoisted in, we made sail again to the northward, resolving to try our fortune at Hervey's Island, which was discovered by Captain Cook in 1773, during his last voyage. We got sight of it about day-break in the morning of the 6th, at the distance of about three leagues. We approached it about eight o'clock, and observed several canoes coming from the shore towards the ships. We were rather surprised at this circumstance, as no traces or signs of inhabitants were seen when the Island was first discovered: this, indeed, might be owing to a brisk wind that then blew, and prevented their canoes venturing out.

Advancing still towards the island, six or seven double canoes immediately came near us, with from three to six men in each of them.

At

At the
the sh
that O
side;
themse
behavio
us, or t
some oa
a man f
also cut
over the
restore h
to purch
bout the
ly and da
of a long
us of seve
longing t
they had
changed f
of which
called the
ther triffin
they caught
what was
diately plu
Though
and Watee
differ great
and disposi
Hervey's I
of them ha
tives of Nev

At the distance of about a stone's throw from the ship they stopped, and it was with difficulty that Omai prevailed on them to come alongside; but they could not be induced to trust themselves on board. Indeed, their disorderly behaviour did not indicate a disposition to trust us, or to treat us well. They attempted to steal some oars out of the *Discovery's* boat, and struck a man for endeavoring to prevent them. They also cut away a net containing meat, which hung over the stern of that ship, and at first would not restore it, though they afterwards permitted us to purchase it from them. Those who were about the *Resolution*, behaved equally disorderly and daring; for, with a sort of hooks made of a long stick, they openly endeavoured to rob us of several things, and actually got a frock belonging to one of our people. It appeared that they had a knowledge of bartering, for they exchanged some fish for some of our small nails, of which they were extravagantly fond, and called them *goore*. Pieces of paper or any other trifling article that was thrown to them, they caught with the greatest avidity; and if what was thrown fell into the sea, they immediately plunged in to swim after it.

Though the distance between Hervey's Island and Watecoo is not very great, the inhabitants differ greatly from each other, both in person and disposition. The colour of the natives of Hervey's Island is of a deeper cast, and several of them had a fierce savage aspect, like the natives of New-Zealand, though some were fairer.

Their

Their hair was long and black, either hanging loose about their shoulders, or tied in a bunch on the top of the head. Some few, indeed, had it cropped short, and, in two or three of them, it was of a red or brownish colour. Their cloathing was a narrow piece of mat, bound several times round the lower part of the body, and passing between the thighs. We saw a fine cap of red feathers lying in one of the canoes, and some among them were ornamented with the shell of a pearl-oyster, polished and hung about the neck.

The mode of ornament so prevalent among the natives of this ocean, of puncturing or tattooing their bodies, not one of them had adopted; but though they were singular in this respect, their being of the same common race is not to be doubted. Their language more resembled the dialect of Otahite, than that of Manglea or Wateoo. Like the natives of those islands they enquired from whence we came, whither bound, the ships name, the name of our chief, and the number of men on board. Such questions as we proposed to them, they very readily answered. They informed us, among other things, that they had before seen two large ships, like ours, but had not spoken to them as they passed. These were, doubtless, the *Resolution* and *Adventure*. They acquainted us that the name of their island was *Terouggemou Atooa*; and likewise, that they were subject to *Teervatoocahy*, King of *Wateoo*.

Their

TI
fish,
hogs,
or pla
appea
and w
those
We
island
the on
chorag
tain C
King,
connois
hoisted
their tr
as possi
The
King in
find no
boats co
edge of
a mile
the nati
clubs and
to oppo
time, the
requested
withstand
the wom
fresh supp
Captain
not bring
Vol. I.

Their food, they said, consisted of cocoa-nuts, fish, and turtle; being destitute of dogs and hogs, and the island not producing bread-fruit or plantains. Their canoes (near thirty of which appeared one time in sight) are tolerably large, and well built, and bear some resemblance to those of Watoo.

We drew near to the north-west part of the island about one o'clock. This seemed to be the only part where we could expect to find anchorage, or a landing-place for our boats. Captain Cook immediately dispatched Lieutenant King, with two armed boats, to sound and reconnoitre the coast. The boats were no sooner hoisted out, than our new visitors suspended their traffic with us, pushing for shore as fast as possible, and came no more near us.

The boats returned at three o'clock, and Mr King informed Captain Cook, that he could find no anchorage for the ships; and that the boats could advance no farther than the outer edge of the reef, which was almost a quarter of a mile from the dry land. That a number of the natives came upon the reef, armed with clubs and long pikes, meaning, as he supposed, to oppose his landing; though, at the same time, they threw cocoa-nuts to our people, and requested them to come on shore; and, notwithstanding this seeming friendly treatment, the women were very active in bringing down a fresh supply of darts and spears.

Captain Cook considered that, as we could not bring the ships to an anchor, the attempt

hanging
a bunch
indeed,
three of
r. Their
found
the body,
aw a fine
e canoes,
ited with
and hung
om among
ing or ta-
had adop-
n this re-
on race is
more re-
m that of
es of those
we came,
name of
on board.
hem, they
hed us, a-
before: seen
not spoken
re, doubt-
re. They
beir island
wise, that
King of
Their

to procure grass here, would be attended with
 a day and danger. Being thus disappointed in
 all the islands after our leaving New Zealand,
 and having, from variety of circumstances, been
 unavoidably retarded in our progress, it was in
 vain to think of doing any thing this year in
 the high latitudes of the northern hemisphere,
 from which we were then so far distant, tho' it
 was then the season for our operations there.
 Thus situated, it was necessary to pursue such
 measures as appeared best calculated to preserve
 our cattle, and save the stores and provisions of
 the ships; the better to enable us to prosecute
 our northern discoveries, which could not now
 commence till a year later than was intended.

If we could fortunately have procured a sup-
 ply of water and grass, at any of the islands we
 had lately visited, Captain Cook intended to
 have stood back to the south, till he had got a
 westerly wind. But, without such a supply, the
 certain consequence of doing this, would have
 been the loss of the cattle, before it was possible
 for us to reach Otaheite, without gaining a sin-
 gle point of advantage respecting the grand ob-
 ject of our voyage.

The Captain, therefore, determined to bear
 away for the Friendly Islands, where he knew
 he could be well supplied with every thing he
 wanted: and, it being necessary to run night
 and day, he ordered Captain Clerke to keep a
 league a-head of the Resolution; because his
 ship could best claw of the land, which we might
 possibly fall in with, in our passage.

We

We
 Capt
 dlobur
 haps,
 last till
 next d
 had so
 we fou
 Palmer
 Cook d
 cessity,
 In or
 deder d
 during
 gallons
 These
 the rot
 from the
 afterno
 with the
 rain-wat
 these squ
 unsettled
 the next
 west, at
 breeze
 We w
 teeth, I a
 find the
 to expect
 ver, on
 Island, b
 of about

We steered west by south, with a fine breeze. Captain Cook proposed to proceed first to Middleburgh, or Boon, thinking we might, perhaps, have provision enough for the cattle, to last till we should arrive at that island. But the next day, about noon, those faint breezes that had so long retarded us, again returned; and we found it necessary to get into the latitude of Palmerston's and Savage Islands, which Captain Cook discovered in 1774; that, in case of necessity, recourse might be had to them.

In order to save our water, Captain Cook ordered the still to be kept at work a whole day; during which time we procured about fifteen gallons of fresh water.

These light breezes continued till Thursday the 10th, when the wind blew some hours fresh from the north, and north-north-west. In the afternoon we had some very heavy rain, attended with thunder squalls. We collected as much rain-water as filled five of our puncheons. When these squalls had blown over, the wind was very unsettled, both in strength and in position, till the next day at noon, when it fixed at north-west, and north-north-west, and blew a fresh breeze.

We were thus persecuted with a wind in our teeth, and had the additional mortification to find those very winds here, which we had reason to expect farther south. At day break, however, on the 13th, we perceived Palmerston's Island, bearing west by south, at the distance of about five leagues; but did not get up with

it till the next morning, at eight. Captain Cook then dispatched three boats from the *Resolution*, and one from the *Discovery*, with a proper officer in each, to search for a convenient landing-place; we being now under an absolute necessity of procuring here some provender for our cattle, or we must certainly have lost them.

What is called *Palmerston's Island*, consists of a group of small islets, about nine or ten in number, connected together by a reef of coral rocks, and lying in a circular direction. The boats first examined the most south-easterly islet; and, not succeeding there, ran down to the second, where they immediately landed. Captain Cook then bore down with the ships, till we were abreast of the place, where we kept standing off and on, there being no bottom to be found to anchor upon. This, however, was of no material consequence, as there were no human beings upon the Island, except the party who had landed from our boats.

At one o'clock one of the boats returned, laden with scurvy-grass and young cocoa-trees, which was, at this time, a most excellent repast for our animals on board. A message was also brought from Mr Gore, who commanded the party upon this expedition, acquainting us that the island abounded with such produce, and also with the wharra-tree and cocoa-nuts. In consequence of this information, Captain Cook resolved to get a sufficient supply of these articles before he quitted this station, and accordingly went on shore in a small boat, accompanied

nied
 island
 and i
 level
 a cora
 moult
 rotten
 Th
 same l
 at Ot
 so gre
 ber of
 sorts o
 eggs,
 to take
 of a f
 tropic
 sort, b
 with re
 a deep
 derable
 not the
 ly accep
 confined
 crabs c
 caught
 treated,
 At on
 lake with
 was a lan
 enchanti
 ed to the
 not be se

nied by the Captain of the discovery: The island does not exceed a mile in circumference, and is not elevated above three feet beyond the level of the sea. It consisted almost entirely of a coral sand, with a small mixture of blackish mould, which appeared to be produced from rotten vegetables.

This poor soil, is, however, covered with the same kinds of shrubs and bushes as we had seen at Otakootaia or Wenoa-ette, though not in so great variety. We perceived a great number of man of war birds, tropic birds, and two sorts of boobies, which were then laying their eggs, and so exceedingly tame as to permit us to take them off their nests, which consist only of a few sticks loosely put together. These tropic birds differ essentially from the common sort, being of a beautiful white, slightly tinged with red, and having two long tail feathers of a deepish crimson. Our people killed a considerable number of each sort, which, though not the most delicate kind of food, were highly acceptable to us, who had been a long time confined to a salt diet. We saw plenty of red crabs creeping about among the trees; and caught several fish, which, when the sea retreated, had been left in holes upon the reef.

At one part of the reef, which bounds the lake within, almost even with the surface, there was a large bed of coral, which afforded a most enchanting prospect. Its base, which was fixed to the shore, extended so far that it could not be seen, so that it appeared to be suspended.

in the water. The sea was then untroubled, and the resplendence of the sun exposed the various sorts of coral, in the most beautiful order, some parts luxuriantly branching in the water, others appearing in various variety of figures, and the whole greatly heightened by spangles of the richest colours, glowing from a number of large gleams, interspersed in every part. Even this delightful scene was greatly improved by the multitude of fishes, that gently glided along, seemingly with the most perfect security. Their colours were the most beautiful that can be imagined; blue, yellow, black, red, &c. far exceeding any thing that can be produced by art. The richness of this submarine grotto was greatly increased by their various forms; and the whole could not possibly be surveyed without a pleasing transport, accompanied, at the same time, with regret, that a work so astonishingly elegant should be concealed in a place so seldom explored by the human eye.

Except a piece of a canoe that was found upon the beach, no traces were discoverable of inhabitants having ever been here; and probably that may have been drifted from some other island. We were surpris'd, however, at perceiving some small brown rats on this little island; a circumstance, perhaps, not easily accounted for, unless we admit the possibility of their being imported in the canoe, of which we saw the remains.

The boats being laden, Captain Cook returned on board, leaving Mr Gore and his party to

pass

pass the night on shore, to be ready for business early the next morning.

The 15th, like the preceding day, was spent in collecting subsistence for the cattle, consisting principally of tender branches of the wharratree, palm, cabbage, and young cocoa-nut trees. A sufficient supply of these having been procured by sun-set, Captain Cook ordered all the people on board; but, having very little wind, he determined to employ the next day, by endeavouring, from the next island to the leeward, to get some cocoa-nuts for our people: for this purpose, we kept standing off and on all night; and, about nine o'clock in the morning, we went to the west side of the islands, and landed from our boats, with little difficulty.

The people immediately employed themselves in gathering cocoa-nuts, which we found in the greatest plenty; but it was a tedious operation to convey them to our boats, being obliged to carry them half a mile over the reef, up to the middle in water. Omiai, who accompanied us, presently caught with a scoop-net, as many fish as supplied the party on shore for dinner, besides sending a quantity to each ship. Men of war, and tropic-birds, were found here in abundance; so that we fared most sumptuously. In these excursions to the uninhabited islands, Omiai was of the greatest service to us. He caught the fish, and dressed them, as well as the birds we killed, after the fashion of his country, with a dexterity and cheerfulness that did him honour. Before night, the boats made two trips, and were each time

pass

time heavy laden; with the last, Captain Cook returned on board, leaving his Third Lieutenant, Mr. Wallis, with a party, to prepare another lading for the boats against the next morning.

Accordingly, Captain Cook dispatched them about seven o'clock, and, by noon they returned laden. No delay was made in sending them back for another cargo, with orders for all to be on board by sun-set. These orders being punctually obeyed, we hoisted in the boats, and sailed to the westward, with a light air from the north.

The islet we last came from is somewhat larger than the other, and almost covered with cocoa-palms. The other productions were the same as at the first islet. On the beach were found two pieces of board, one of which was rudely carved, and an elliptical paddle. These were, perhaps, a part of the same canoc, the remains of which we had seen on the other beach, the two islets being within half a mile of each other. There were not so many crabs here as at the last place, but we found some scorpions and other insects, and a much greater number of fish upon the reefs. Among the rest were some beautiful large spotted eels, which would raise themselves out of the water, and endeavour to bite their pursuers. There were also snappers, parrot-fish, and a brown spotted rock-fish, not larger than a haddock, so tame, that it would remain fixed, and gaze at us. If we had been really in want, a sufficient supply might easily have

have
upon
three
of the
sharks
by our
at that
Mr
on the
musquin
and saw
two cuc
also seen
The i
Palmer
mits of
a thin co
and plan
islands o
Havin
west, in
had varia
and muc
ous, we
and, as v
hour, by
we laid t
more tro
The i
treme for
disagreeal
apprehen
is, howev

have been had, for thousands of the clams stuck upon the reef; many of which weighed two or three pounds. There were also some other sorts of shell fish; and, when the tide flowed, several sharks came with it, some of which were killed by our people; but their presence rendered it, at that time, unsafe to walk in the water.

Mr Williamson and his party, who were left on shore, were much pestered in the night with musquitoes. Some of them shot two curlews, and saw some plovers upon the shore; one or two cuckoos, like those at Wenooa-ette, were also seen.

The islets comprehended under the name of Palmerston's Island, may be said to be the summits of a reef of coral rock, covered only with a thin coat of sand; though clothed with trees and plants, like the low grounds of the high islands of this ocean.

Having left Palmerston's Island, we steered west, in order to proceed to Aniamooka. We had variable winds, with squalls, some thunder, and much rain. The showers being very copious, we saved a considerable quantity of water; and, as we could procure a greater supply in one hour, by the rain, than by distillation in a month, we laid the still aside, as being attended with more trouble than advantage.

The heat, which had continued in the extreme for about a month, became much more disagreeable in this close rainy weather, and we apprehended it would soon be noxious. It is, however, remarkable that there was not
then

then a single person sick on board either of the ships.

We passed Savage Island, which Captain Cook discovered in 1774, in the night between the 24th and 25th; and, on the 28th, about ten o'clock in the morning, we saw the islands to the eastward of Annamooka, bearing north by west about five leagues distant. We steered to the south, and then hauled up for Annamooka. At the approach of night, the weather being squally, with rain, we anchored in fifteen fathoms water.

We had scarcely anchored, when two canoes paddled towards us, and without hesitation came along-side. They bartered with us for nails, some coconuts, sugar cane, bread-fruit, and plantains, which they had brought along with them. Towards evening we had a short visit from another canoe; so eager were they to get possession of a few of our most useful articles, that they considered the trouble and danger of paddling from Komango, at that time five miles distant, as a matter of no moment.

At five o'clock, Lieutenant King was dispatched by Captain Cook, with two boats, in order to procure refreshments, and made the signal to weigh at five, to proceed to Annamooka.

At day-break, we had a visit from six or seven canoes, which brought with them, some fowls, two pigs, several large wood-pigeons, small rails, some violet-coloured coots, besides fruits and roots of various kinds, for which we

gave

gave
&c.

mercy,
orders,
till the
cept by

Me
been

The ch
nother,

King,

and pro

procure

ty of fr

animals

vations

not num

and alm

The t

mooka;

to go bet

ers at th

met with

us to reli

ward. It

it necessi

was dark

every din

light we

preceding

in our te

ob. We co

gave

gave them in exchange, beads, hatchets, nails, &c. They had various other articles of commerce, but Captain Cook had given particular orders, that we should purchase no curiosities, till the ships were supplied with provisions, except by his permission.

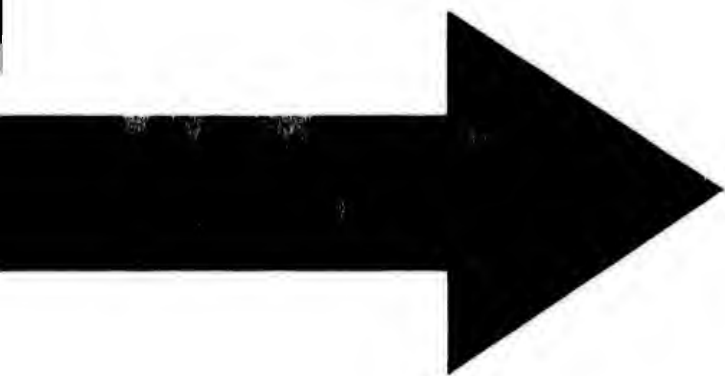
Mr King's party returned about noon, having been treated with great civility at Komango. The chief of the island, Tooboulangee, and another, named Teipa, came on board with Mr King. They presented a hog to the Captain, and promised him more next day. Mr King procured seven hogs, some fowls, and a quantity of fruits and roots, with some grass for our animals. They reported, that from any observations they could make, the inhabitants were not numerous; their huts were very indifferent, and almost joined to one another.

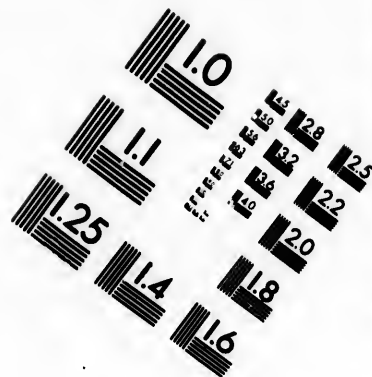
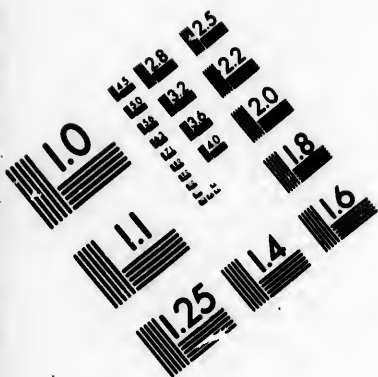
The boats being aboard, we stood for Annamooka; and, having little wind, we intended to go between Annamooka-ette*, and the breakers at the south-east; but, on drawing near, we met with very irregular soundings, which obliged us to relinquish the design, and go to the southward. This carried us to leeward, and we found it necessary to spend the night under sail. It was dark and rainy, and we had the wind from every direction. The next morning, at daylight we were farther off than we had been the preceding evening; and the wind was now right in our teeth.

We continued to ply, to very little purpose,

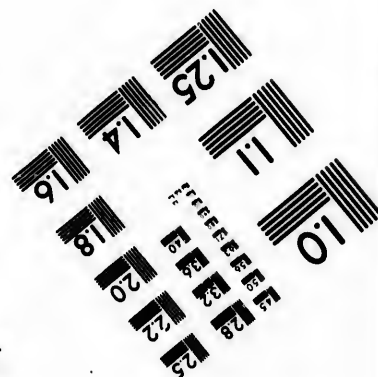
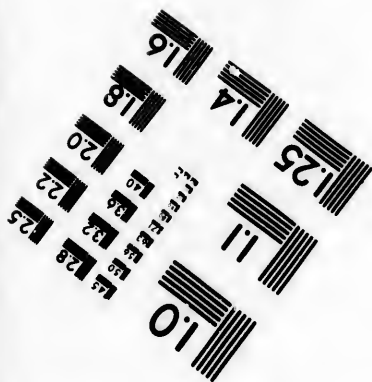
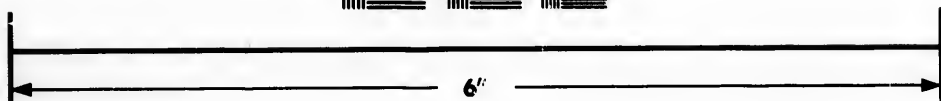
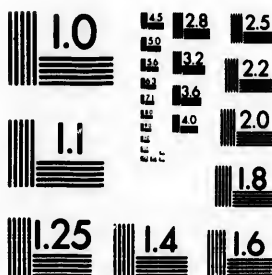
* Little Annamooka.







**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.5
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5
5.0
5.6
6.3
7.1
8.0
9.0
10.0

10
11
12
15
20
25
31.5
40
50
63
80
100

the whole day; and, in the evening, anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water; the west side of Annamooka bearing east north-east, four miles distant. Tooboulangee and Taipa, agreeable to their promise, brought off some hogs for Captain Cook; we obtained others, by bartering, from the different canoes that followed us, and a large quantity of fruit. It is remarkable, that those who visited us from the islands, so that day, would hardly part with any of their commodities to any one but Captain Cook.

At four the next morning, Captain Cook ordered a boat to be hoisted out, and the master to sound the west side of Annamooka. When he returned, he reported, that he had sounded between Great and Little Annamooka, where the sea was twelve fathoms depth of water; that the place was very well sheltered from winds; but that no fresh water was to be had but at a considerable distance inland, and that, even there, it was neither plentiful nor good. For this very sufficient reason, Captain Cook resolved to anchor on the north side of the island, where, in his last voyage, he had found a convenient place for watering and landing.

Though not above a league distant, we did not reach it till about five o'clock in the afternoon, being attended by the quantity of canoes that crowded round the ships, laden with abundant supplies of the produce of the island. Several of these canoes, which were double, had a large sail, and carried between forty and fifty men each. Several women too appeared in the canoes,

anchored
of
to
for Cap-
battering,
ed us, and
kable, that
ds, so that
their com-

Cook ar-
the water
When
d sounded
ka, where
pth of wa-
tered from
be had but
t that, even
quad. For
Cook refel-
the island,
vants con-

we did not
afternoon,
moes that
abundant
Seve-
had a
y and fifty
ared in the
canoes,



THE
WAT
KAROKA

THE
WAT
KAROKA

... though they were ...
... and into the ...
... We came to an anchor ...
... the land extending ...
... will to ...
... our distant ...
... station which he had ...
... and ...
... where ...

The next day, during the preparation for
... Captain Cook went ...
... accompanied by Captain ...
... for ...
... the natives having readily ...
... they lived as ...
... and accommodated us with a ...
... which answered the purpose of a ...
... the chief of the island, ...
... and ...
... in the course of ...
... was ...
... for the purpose of ...
... they ...
... to ...
... wherever we had ...
... though we ...
... this ...
... which ...

canoe
us;
the
and
teen
cast
mile
station
Annan
where
anchors
The
waterin
forenoon
others,
servatori
us permit
civility,
which an
the chief
Cook and
fant spot
was surre
was for t
fore they
tention to
fore, wher
though we
mon at the
English dra
the mats w
house.
While
Vol. I.

canoes, incited, perhaps, by curiosity to visit us; though they were as earnest in bartering as the men, and used the paddle with equal skill and dexterity. We came to an anchor in eighteen fathoms water, the island extending from east to south-west, about three quarters of a mile distant. Thus Captain Cook resumed the station, which he had occupied when he visited Annamooka three years before; and probably where Tasman, who first discovered this island, anchored in 1643.

The next day, during the preparations for watering, Captain Cook went ashore, in the forenoon, accompanied by Captain Clerke, and others, to fix on a place for setting up the observatories, the natives having readily granted us permission. They shewed us every mark of civility, and accommodated us with a boat-house, which answered the purpose of a tent. Toobou, the chief of the island, conducted Captain Cook and Omai to his house, situated on a pleasant spot in the centre of his plantation. It was surrounded with a grass plot, which he said was for the purpose of cleaning their feet, before they entered his habitation. Such an attention to cleanliness we had never observed before, wherever we had visited in this ocean; though we afterwards found it to be very common at the Friendly islands. No carpet in an English drawing-room could be kept neater, than the mats which covered the floor of Toobou's house.

While we were on shore, we bartered for
Vol. I. Q some

some hogs and fruits; and, when we arrived on board, the ships were crowded with the natives. As very few of them came empty handed, we were speedily supplied with every refreshment.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook landed again, with a party of marines; and such of the cattle as were in a weakly state, were sent on shore with him. Having settled every thing to his satisfaction, he returned to the ship in the evening, leaving Mr King in command upon the island. Taipa was now become our trusty friend, and, in order to be near our party, had a house carried a quarter of a mile, on men's shoulders, and placed by the side of the shed which our party occupied.

Our various operations on shore began the next day. Some were busied in making hay, others in filling our water-casks, and a third party in cutting wood. On the same day, Messrs King and Bailey began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to get the rate of our time-keepers. In the evening, Taipa harangued the natives for some time; but we could only guess at the subject, and supposed he was instructing them how to treat us, and advising them to bring the produce of the island to market. His eloquence had the desired effect, and occasioned us to receive a plentiful supply of provisions the next day.

On the 4th of May, the *Discovery* lost her small bower anchor, the cable being cut in two by the rocks.

On the 6th, a chief whose name was *Reenou*, visited

visited
him
were
media
news
ed his
shore
order
arrival
at low
ed wh
with th
fine har
told we
be any
ceived
Captain
two
attendant
went to
as he
peared to
remark
of the
the Frier
he was n
have seen
racter of
questione
great ease
of no less
In a short
us on

visited us from Tongataboo: Taipa introduced him to us as King of all the Friendly Isles. We were now informed that a canoe had been immediately dispatched to Tongataboo with this news so soon as we arrived; and this occasioned his coming to Annamooka. The officers on shore also informed us, that all the natives were ordered out to meet him, immediately upon his arrival, who saluted him by bowing their heads as low as his feet, the soles of which they touched with the palm of each hand; and afterwards with the back part. He had also seven or eight fine handsome women with him, which we were told were his wives. We could not suppose to be any thing less than a king, a personage received with such extraordinary marks of respect. Captain Cook received a present from him of two fish which he sent on board; and in the afternoon, the Captain went to pay a visit to this great man. So soon as he landed, Feenou came up to him. He appeared to be about thirty years of age, and was remarkably tall and thin; his features were more of the European cast than any we had seen in the Friendly Isles. As Captain Cook perceived he was not the man whom he remembered to have seen during the former voyage in the character of the King, after the first salutation, he questioned him on that point; when Taipa, with great eagerness replied, that he was the sovereign of no less than *One hundred and Fifty-three Islands*. In a short time, our grand visitor, accompanied us on board, attended by five or six servants.

Captain Cook made them a few acceptable presents, and entertained them in such a manner, as he thought would be most agreeable. The Captain accompanied them ashore in his own boat, towards evening, when Feenou ordered three hogs to be conveyed into the boat, as a return for the presents he had received. At this time we were told of an accident, which may tend to convey some idea of the unbounded authority which the chiefs exercise over the inferior rank of people. While Feenou was on board the *Resolution*, all the natives were ordered, by an inferior chief, to retire from the post we occupied. Some of them however, having ventured to return, he beat them most unmercifully with a large stick. One of them, in particular, received so violent a blow on the side of the face, that the blood gushed from his mouth and nostrils, and, after lying motionless for some time, he was removed from the place in convulsions. The person who gave the blow, on being told that he certainly had killed the man, only laughed at the circumstance, and, indeed, it was very evident that he did not grieve for what had happened. We had afterwards the satisfaction of hearing, that the poor sufferer was out of danger.

The bottom where the *Discovery* lay, being very rocky and uneven, Captain Clarke determined to shift it farther to the westward. The next day (May the 7th) he gave orders to weigh the stream anchor, and heave short upon the best bower, but the united forces of the whole

ship's

Ship
cub
till
the
ven
ble,
got
ly
but
they
and
Cook,
other
permi
presen
Cook,
monly
frequ
For th
privile
the cal
We
dexteri
the ver
ving, b
junk ax
impute
complai
his auth
gave or
was fini
was the
On the
(over)

Ship's company was not able to purchase it, the cable having got foul of a rock; they would till slack water, when the ships would tend to the ebb tide, and probably clear it, but at eleven the cable parted. The recovery of this cable, caused an infinite deal of trouble, as it had got in a hole between the rocks, and could only be seen when the water was perfectly smooth; but at last, after a number of unsuccessful trials, they were lucky enough to weigh it. This day and the next also, Feenou dined with Captain Cook, attended by Taipa, Toobou, and some other chiefs. None but Taipa, however, was permitted to sit at table or even to eat in his presence. This etiquette greatly pleased Captain Cook; for before Feenou arrived, he had commonly more visitors than he inclined; as his table frequently overflowed with people of both sexes. For the women of the Friendly isles have the privilege of eating with the men, which is not the case at Otaheite.

We had frequent occasions to observe the dexterity which these people possess at pilfering: the very chiefs at times practised a little. Having, before the arrival of Feenou, had a large junk axe stolen out of the ship, which we could impute to none but the natives, the Captain complained to him, and required he would use his authority to get it restored; he immediately gave orders for that purpose, and before dinner was finished, it was brought us aboard: such was the explicit obedience paid to his commands. On the 9th of May, one of them was detected carrying

carrying out of the ship, the bolt belonging to the flint-gun which, which he had carefully concealed under his clothes. For this offence Captain Cook sentenced him to receive a dozen lashes, and to be confined till he paid a hog for his liberty. (Though, after this circumstance, we were troubled with no more thieves of rank, their servants or slaves were constantly employed in this dirty business, and they received a flogging with as much seeming indifference, as if it had been upon the main-mast. When any of them were caught in the act of thieving, instead of interceding in their behalf, their masters would often advise us to kill them. (This being a punishment we were not fond of inflicting, they usually escaped without any kind of punishment as they were alike insensible of the shame and terour of corporal chastisement. At length, however, Captain Clarke contrived a mode of punishment, which we supposed had some effect. Immediately upon detection, he ordered their heads to be completely shaved, and thus pointed out as objects of ridicule to their countrymen, and put our people upon their guard, so deprive them of future opportunities for a repetition of their crimes.

Keen was so fond of our company, that he dined on board every day, though he did not always partake of our fare. On the 10th, his servants brought him a mess, which had been dressed on shore, consisting of salt, soup, and yams; cocoa-nut liquor had been used instead of water, in which the fish had been boiled or stewed,

stewe
stone
leaf)
so we
dered
but, t
it was
imitate
Have
island
day th
shore t
that we
the Dis
anchor
to pro
him to
sion to
willed
his own
islands,
where,
plentifu
even off
In confe
choice o
Europea
ject to C
On T
ohor was
ing of it
Annimo
Thou
by w

stewed, (perhaps in a wooden vessel with hot stones) and it was carried on board on a plantain leaf. Captain Cook tasted of the mess, and was so well pleased with it, that he afterwards ordered some fish to be dressed in the same way; but, though his cook succeeded tolerably well, it was much inferior to the dish he attempted to imitate.

Having, in a great measure, exhausted the island of almost every article of food, on Sunday the 4th of May, we removed from the shore the observatory, horses, and other things that we had landed, intending to sail as soon as the *Discovery* should have found her best bower anchor. Eeoonou, hearing that the Captain meant to proceed to Tongataboo, earnestly entreated him to alter his plan, expressing as much aversion to it, as if, by diverting him from it, he wished to promote some particular interest of his own. He warmly recommended a group of islands, called Hapae, lying to the north-east; where, he assured us, we could be easily and plentifully supplied with every refreshment; and even offered to accompany us thither in person. In consequence of his advice, Hapae was made choice of; and as it had not been visited by any European ships, the surveying it became an object to Captain Cook.

On Tuesday the 13th, Captain Clarke's anchor was happily recovered; and on the morning of the 14th, we got under sail, and left Annamooka.

Though this island is somewhat higher than

the

the other small islets that surround it, yet it is lower than Mangeca and Wateroo, and even these are but of a moderate height. The shore, where our ships lay, consists of a steep, rugged, coral rock, about nine or ten feet high, except two sandy beaches, which are defended from the sea, by a reef of the same sort of rock. In the centre of the island there is a salt-water lake, about a mile and a half in breadth, round which the ground rises with a gradual ascent, and we could not trace its having any communication with the sea. On the rising parts of the island, and especially towards the sea, the soil is either of a blackish loose mould, or a reddish clay; but there is not a stream of fresh water to be found in any part of the island.

The land here is well cultivated, except in a few places; and, though some parts appear to lie waste, they are only left to recover the strength exhausted by constant culture; for we often saw the natives at work upon these spots, in order to plant them again. Yams and plantains form their principal plantations; many of which are very extensive, and inclosed with fences of reed about six feet high. Fences of less compass were often seen within these, surrounding the houses of the principal people. The bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees are interspersed without any regular order, but principally near the habitations of the natives. The other parts of the island, especially towards the sea, and round the lake, are covered with luxuriant trees and bushes; among which there are a great ma-

ny.

ny
and
in-
one
where
in
low
are
to
which
We
up
the
blin
the
proc
cur
ed
the
with
stran
party
circu
the
beach
cult
the
sitor
ble
thou
be
twi
In
wore
Ann
seen
this
gre

yet it is
and even
the shore,
rugged,
except
ded from
rock. In
water lake,
and which
t, and we
unication
the island,
oil is either
dish clay;
water to be

except in a
s appear to
recover the
are; for we
these spots,
s and plan-
s, many of
ed with ten-
ences of leis
e, surround-
ople. The
interpersed
ncipally near
e other parts
the sea, and
variant trees
e a great ma-
ny.

ny mangroves and fatimoo-trees. All the rocks and stones about the island are of coral, except in one place, to the right of the sandy beach, where there is a rock of about twenty-five feet in height, of a calcareous stone, and of a yellowish colour; but, even here, some large pieces are to be seen of the same coral rock as that which composes the shore.

We sometimes amused ourselves in walking up the country and shooting wild ducks, resembling our wiggon, which are very numerous on the salt lake, as well as on the pool where we procured our water. We found, in these excursions, that the inhabitants frequently deserted their houses to repair to the trading place, without entertaining the least suspicion that strangers would take away or destroy any property that belonged to them. From this circumstance it might be supposed, that most of the natives were sometimes collected on the beach, and that there would be no great difficulty in forming an accurate computation of their number; but the continual resort of visitors, from other islands, rendered it impossible. However, as we never saw more than a thousand persons collected at one time, it may be reasonably supposed, that there are about twice that number upon the island.

In the direct tract to Hapace, whither we were now bound, to the north and north-east of Annamooka, a great number of small isles are seen. Amidst the rocks and shoals adjoining to this group, we were doubtful whether there was

a free passage for ships of such magnitude as ours; though the natives sailed through the intervals in their canoes; therefore, when we weighed anchor from Annamooka, we steered to go to the west-ward of the above islands, and north-north-west towards Kao, and Toofoa, two islands remarkable for their great height, and the most westerly of those in sight. Fection, with his attendants, remained in the Resolution till about noon, and then entered the large sailing canoe, which had brought him from Tongataboo, and stood in amongst the clefts of islands, of which we were now abreast.

They are scattered, at unequal distances, and most of them are as high as Annamooka. Some of them are two or three miles in length, and others only half a mile. Many of them have steep rocky shores, like Annamooka; some have reddish cliffs, and others have sandy beaches, extending almost their whole length. In general, they are entirely clothed with trees, among which are many cocoa-palms, each having the appearance of a beautiful garden placed in the sea. The serene weather we now had, contributed greatly to heighten the scene; and the whole might convey an idea of the realization of some fairy land. It appears, that some of these islands have been formed as Palmerston's Island was supposed to have been; for one of them is now entirely sand, and another has but a single bush or tree upon it.

In the afternoon, about four o'clock, we steered to the north, leaving Toofoa and Kao on our larboard.

larboard
the ni
place, i
rather
come to
In th
leagues
it sever
upon it,
tain som
feca, say
were in
ry large
the size
smoking
have the
sometime
island, e
least ten
was but t
pon it wa
At day
from Koa
gure; we
tooha auc
south-east
on board,
brought w
hogs; and
canoes cam
article, wh
stock bega
was 19° 49

larboard. We intended to have anchored for the night, but it arrived before we could find a place in less than fifty fathoms water; and we rather chose to spend the night under sail, than come to in such a depth.

In the afternoon, we had been within two leagues of Toofoa, and observed the smoke of it several times in the day. There is a volcano upon it, of which the Friendly Islanders entertain some superstitious notions, and call it *Kallifeca*, saying, it is an Otooa, or divinity. We were informed, that it sometimes throws up very large stones, and the crater is compared to the size of a small islet, which has not ceased smoking in the memory of the inhabitants; nor have they any tradition that it ever did. We sometimes saw the smoke from the centre of the island, even at Annomooka, the distance of at least ten leagues. We were told that Toofoa was but thinly inhabited, but that the water upon it was excellent.

At day-break, on the 15th, we were not far from Koa, which is a large rock of a conic figure; we steered to the passage between Footooha and Hafaiva, with a gentle breeze at south-east. About ten o'clock, Feenou came on board, and continued with us all day. He brought with him a quantity of fruit and twigs; and, in the course of the day, several canoes came to barter quantities of the former article, which was very acceptable to us, as our stock began to be low. At noon, our latitude was $19^{\circ} 49' 45''$ south, and we had made seven miles

miles of longitude from Annamooka. After having passed Footooha, we met with a reef of rocks, and there being but little wind, it was attended with some difficulty to keep clear of them. Having passed this reef, we hauled up for Neeneva, a small low isle in the direction of east-north-east from Footooha, in hopes of finding an anchorage, but were again disappointed; for, notwithstanding we had land in every direction, the sea was unathomable. We plainly saw, in the course of this night, flames issuing from the volcano upon Toofoa.

At day-break on the 10th, we steered, with a gentle breeze at south-east, for Hapae, which was now in sight, and perceived it to be low land, from the trees only appearing above the water. At nine o'clock we saw it plainly forming three islands, nearly equal in size; and, soon after, a fourth appeared to the southward of these, as large as any of the others. Each of the islands, appeared to be of a similar height, and appearance, and about six or seven miles in length. The most northern of them is called Haanno, the next Foa, the third Teooga; and the fourth Hoolava; but they are all four included under the general name of Hapae.

By sun-set, we got up with the northernmost of these isles, where we experienced the same distress for want of anchorage, that we did the two preceding evenings; having another night to spend under sail with land and breakers in every direction. Teenou, who had been on board all day, went forward to Hapae in the evening, and

and t
not u
kept
a land
At
ing th
joined
island
sea. C
for anc
breast
ving tw
this stat
north
ters of a
before a
landing
As you
rounded
ships we
They bro
and roots
knives; be
Omahav
ing, in or
people of
on shore
The ch
situated cl
brought to
reception.
Cook, we
multitude

and took Omai with him in the canoe. He was not unmindful of our disagreeable situation, and kept up a good fire the whole night, by way of a land-mark.

At the return of day-light, on the 17th, being then close in with Foa, we perceived it was joined to Haanno, by a reef running from one island to the other, even with the surface of the sea. Captain Cook dispatched a boat to look for anchorage; and a proper place was found, a breast of a reef which joins Lefooga to Foa, having twenty-four fathoms depth of water. In this station, the northern point of Hapace bore north 16° east. We were not above three quarters of a mile from the shore; and, as we lay before a creek in the reef, it was convenient landing at all times.

As soon as we had anchored, we were surrounded by a multitude of canoes, and our ships were presently filled with the natives. They brought with them hogs, fowls, fruit, and roots, which they exchanged for cloth, knives, beads, nails, and hatchets. Teenou and Omai having come on board, early in the morning, in order to introduce Captain Cook to the people of the island, he soon accompanied them on shore for that purpose.

The chief conducted the Captain to a hut situated close to the sea-beach, which was brought thither but a few minutes before for his reception. In this, Teenou, Omai, and Captain Cook, were seated. The other chiefs, and the multitude, appeared fronting them on the out-

R

side;

sides, and they also seated themselves. Captain Cook being asked how long he intended to stay, answered five days. Taipa was, therefore, ordered to sit by him, and declare this to the people. He then harangued them in words nearly to the following purport, as we afterwards were informed by Omai. He exhorted both old and young, to look upon Captain Cook as a friend who meant to continue with them a few days; and that, during his stay among them, they would not steal any thing from him, nor offend him in any other manner. He informed them, that it was expected they should bring hogs, fowls, fruit, &c. to the ships, for which they would receive in exchange, such articles as he enumerated. Soon after Taipa had delivered his address to the assembly, Feenou left them; on which Captain Cook was informed by Taipa, that it was necessary he should make a present to Baroupa, the chief of the island. The Captain being not unprepared for this, gave him such articles as far exceeded his expectation. This liberality created similar demands from two chiefs of other isles who were present, and even from Taipa himself. Soon after he had made the last of these presents, Feenou returned, and expressed his displeasure with Taipa for suffering me to be so lavish of my favours. But this was, doubtless, a finesse, as he certainly acted in concert with the others.

Feenou now resumed his seat, ordering Baroupa to sit by him, and harangue the people as Taipa had done, which he did nearly to the

same

fact
at the
stage
one
and t
On h
bake
to be
vited
repa
none
Dian
on the
as a pr
and a
supply
day, we
bout tw
quantity
On S
Feenou
the chief
Cook's
paniel
ted to the
precedin
gonesur
he imagin
in agitat
nor could
Boga
of the n
with yan
ams

same purpose. These ceremonies over, the chief, at the Captain's request, conducted him to three stagnant pools of what he called fresh water; in one of which the water was indeed tolerable, and the situation convenient for filling out casks. On his return to his former station, he found a baked hog and some yams, smoking hot, ready to be conveyed on board for his dinner. He invited Feenou, and his friends to partake of the repast, and they embarked for the ship, although none but himself sat down with us at table. Dinner being over, the Captain conducted them on shore; and, before he returned, received, as a present from the chief, a fine large turtle, and a quantity of yams. We had a plentiful supply of provisions; for, in the course of the day, we got, by bartering with the natives, about twenty small hogs, together with a large quantity of fruit and roots.

On Sunday the 18th, early in the morning, Feenou and Omai, who now slept on shore with the chief, came on board, to request Captain Cook's presence upon the island. He accompanied them, and, upon landing, was conducted to the place where he had been seated the preceding day, and where he beheld a large concourse of people already assembled. Though he imagined that something extraordinary was in agitation, yet he could not conjecture what, nor could Omai give him any information.

Soon after he was seated, about an hundred of the natives appeared, and advanced, laden with yams, plantains, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts,

and sugar canes; their burdens were deposited on our left. A number of others arrived soon after, bearing the same kind of articles, which were collected into two piles on the right side. To these were fastened two pigs, and half a dozen fowls; and to those upon the left, six pigs and two turtles. Earoupa seated himself before the articles on the left side, and another chief before those on the right; they being it was supposed, the two chiefs who had procured them by order of Feenou, who was as implicitly obeyed here, as he had been at Annamooka, and who had probably laid this tax upon the chiefs of Hapaet for the present occasion.

When this munificent collection of provisions was placed in order, and advantageously disposed, the bearers of it joined the multitude, who formed a circle round the whole. Immediately after, a number of men, armed with clubs, entered this circle, or area; where they paraded about for a few minutes, and then one half of them retired to one side, and the other half to the other side, seating themselves before the spectators. Presently after, they successively entertained us with single combats; one champion from one side challenging those of the other side, partly by words, but more by expressive gestures, to send one of their party to oppose him. The challenge was, in general, accepted; the two combatants placed themselves in proper attitudes, and the engagement began, which continued till one of them yielded, or till their weapons were broken. At the conclusion
of

Cook's Reception.



Delivered by

THE RECEPTION OF CAPTAIN COOK, IN HAWAII.

five gestures, to
pose him. The
cepted; the two com
in proper attitudes, and the
which continued till one of them
their weapons were broken. At the

of
dow
up
to p
ry f
thofe
the g
huzz
Th
for a
filled
Thefi
at Ota
from t
wench
remorr
as the
of thoo
minute
ous her
the sam
the othe
approba
it did no
ing the
and, if t
part the
ther a go
fpectator
were cab
with the
though fo
received t

of each combat, the victor squatted himself down before the chief, then immediately rose up and retired. Some old men, who seemed to preside as judges, gave their plaudit in a very few words; and the multitude, especially those on the side of the conqueror, celebrated the glory he had acquired in two or three loud huzzas.

This entertainment was sometimes suspended for a short space, and the intervals of time were filled up with wrestling and boxing-matches. The first were performed in the method practised at Otahite, and the second differed very little from the English manner. A couple of stout wenches next stepped forth, and, without ceremony, began boxing with as much dexterity as the men. This contest, however, was but of short duration, for, in the space of half a minute, one of them gave it up. The victorious heroine was applauded by the spectators, in the same manner as the successful combatants of the other sex. Though we expressed some disapprobation at this part of the entertainment, it did not hinder two other females from entering the lists; who seemed to be spirited girls, and, if two old women had not interposed to part them, would probably have given each other a good drubbing. At least three thousand spectators were present when these combats were exhibited, and every thing was conducted with the most perfect good humour on all sides; though some of the champions, of both sexes, received blows which they must have felt the effect.

effect of for some time after. The diversions being finished, the chief informed Captain Cook, that the provisions on our right hand were a present to Omal, and that those on our left (making about two thirds of the whole quantity) were intended for him, and that he might suit his own convenience in taking them on board.

Four boats were loaded with the munificence of Feenou, whose favours far exceeded any that Captain Cook had ever received from the sovereigns of any of the islands which he had visited in the Pacific Ocean. He, therefore, embraced the first opportunity of convincing Feenou, that he was not insensible of his liberality, by bestowing upon him such commodities as he supposed were most valuable in his estimation. Feenou was so highly pleased with the result that was made him, that he left the Captain indebted to him, by sending him two large dogs, some yams, and a considerable quantity of cloths.

Feenou having expressed a desire, that the marines perform their exercise, Captain Cook ordered them all ashore on the morning of the 20th of May. After they had gone through various evolutions, and fired several salutes, which seemed to give pleasure to our most respectable spectators, the chief, in his turn, entertained us with an exhibition, which was performed with an exactness and dexterity, far surpassing what they had seen of combattant manœuvres. It was a kind of dance, performed by men, in which one hundred and five persons alternately

gaged
resemb
with a
these i
each of
movem
At first
lines, a
evolutio
came in
formanc
afterwar
circle; a
ring the
ward, a
Captain
ended, m
The m
produced
of wood,
noted by
dancers,
assisted
chorus of
ers joined
and their
fully exte
appeared
formance
an Europe
tempt that
fomacheth
on theirse
begins

gaged; each having an instrument in his hands, resembling a paddle, two feet and a half long, with a thin blade, and a small handle. With these instruments various flourishes were made, each of which was accompanied with a different movement, or a different attitude of the body. At first, the dancers ranged themselves in three lines, and so changed their stations by different evolutions, that those who had been in the rear came into the front. At one part of the performance, they extended themselves in one line; afterwards they formed themselves into a semicircle; and then into two square. During the last movement, one of them came forward, and performed an athletic dance before Captain Cook, with which the entertainment ended.

The music that accompanied the dance was produced by two drums, or rather hollow logs of wood, from which they forced some varied notes by beating on them with two sticks. The dancers, however, did not appear to be much assisted or directed by these sounds; but by a chorus of vocal music, in which all the performers joined. Their song was rather melodious, and their corresponding motions were so skillfully executed, that the whole body of dancers appeared as one regular machine. Such a performance would have been applauded even on any European theatre; but far exceeded any attempt that we had made to entertain them; in so much that they seemed to place themselves on their superiority over us. They attended

logg

none

noise of our musical instruments, except the drum, and were thought that inferior to their own. They held out French-horns in the highest contempt, and would not pay the smallest attention to them, either here or at any other of the islands.

We give them a more favourable opinion of the amusements and surprising attainments of the English. Captain Cook ordered some fire-works to be prepared, and, after it was dark, exhibited them in the presence of Peonou, and a vast multitude of people. They were highly entertained with the performance in general; but our water and sky-rockets, in particular, astonished them beyond all conception. They manifested that the scale was turned in our favour.

This, however, served only as an additional stimulus to urge them to proceed to fresh exertions of their singular dexterity. As soon as our fire-works were ended, a succession of dances, which Peonou had prepared for our entertainment, began. A band of music, or chorus consisting of eighteen men, seated themselves before us, in the centre of a circle formed by the tremendous spectators. About four or five of the performers had each pieces of large bamboo, from three to six feet in length, each played on by one man, who held it almost vertically; the upper end of which was open, but the other closed by one of the joints. They kept constantly striking the ground, though slowly, with the closed end, and thus produced variety of notes,

note
into
kind
struc
split,
a ton
solem
those
a flow
harsh
most
found
power
noisy.
The
ter of a
Most of
the tri
and ma
sons wr
of mict
round
k, and
sponse
sone
this wh
with sev
towards
same sin
and then
other wa
to the an
slowly in

notes, according to the different lengths of the instruments, but all were of the tub or hollow kind; which was corroborated by a person who struck manly a piece of the same substance, split, and lying upon the ground; furnishing a tone as acute, as the others were grave and solemn. The whole of the band (including those who performed upon the bambos) sung a slow soft air, which so finely tempered the harsher notes of the instruments, that the most perfect judge of the modulation of sweet sounds could not avoid confessing the vast power, and pleasing effect, of this simple harmony.

The concert having continued about a quarter of an hour, twenty women entered the circle. Most of them had upon their heads, garlands of the trifoliar flowers of the China rose, or others; and many of them had ornamented their person with leaves of trees, and with a great deal of nicety about the edges. They made a circle round the chorus, turning their faces towards it, and began by singing a soft air, to which responses were made by the chorus in the same tone; and they were repeated alternately; to all this while, the women accompanied their song with several very graceful motions of their hands towards their faces, and in other directions at the same time, making constantly a step forward, and then back again, with one foot, while the other was fixed. They then turned their faces to the attention, sung some stave, and descended slowly in a body, to that part of the circle which

was

cept the
to their
be high-
smallest
y other
pinion of
ns of the
re-works
rk, exhibi-
on, and a
re highly
general;
particular,
on. They
ned in our
additional
fresh exer-
As soon as
ion of dan-
our enter-
t, or chorus
themselves
formed by
ur or five of
bamboo,
played on
orally; the
at the other
y kept con-
slowly, with
a variety of
notes,

notes, according to the different lengths of the instruments, but all were of the tub or hollow kind; which was conducted by a person who struck mainly a piece of the same substance, split, and lying upon the ground; furnishing a tone as acute, as the others were grave and solemn. The whole of the band (including those who performed upon the bamboo) sung a slow soft air, which so finely tempered the harsher notes of the instruments, that the most perfect judge of the modulation of sweet sounds could not avoid expressing their vast power, and pleasing effect, of this simple harmony.

The concert having continued about a quarter of an hour, twenty women entered the circle. Most of them had upon their heads, garlands of the fragrant flowers of the China rose, or others; and many of them had ornamented their persons with leaves of trees, and with a great deal of mica about the edges. They made a circle round the chorus, turning their faces towards it, and began by singing a soft air, to which responses were made by the chorus in the same tone; and they were repeated alternately to all this while, the women accompanied their song

was opposite the but where the principal spectators sat. After this, one of them advanced from each side, meeting and passing each other in the front, and continuing their progress round, till they came to the rest. On which, two advanced from each side, two of whom also passed each other, and returned as the former; but the other two remained, and to these came one, from each side, by intervals, till the whole number had again formed a circle about the chorus.

Their manner of dancing was now changed to a quicker measure, in which they made a kind of half turn by leaping, and clapping their hands, and tapped their fingers, repeating some words in conjunction with the chorus. Toward the end, as the quickness of the music increased, their gestures and attitudes were varied with wonderful vigour and dexterity; and some of their motions, perhaps, would, with us, be reckoned rather indecent. Though this part of the performance, most probably, was not meant to convey any wanton ideas, but merely to display the astonishing variety of their movements.

To this grand female ballet, succeeded a variety of other dances, in which the men bore a principal part. In some of these, the dancers increased their motions to a prodigious quickness, shaking their heads from shoulder to shoulder, with such force, that a spectator, unaccustomed to the sight, would suppose they ran a risk of dislocating their necks. Their discipline was admirable; and, in no instance, was more remarkable, than in the sudden transitions they

they
tion
most
dances
mong
small
circle.

This
interval
themselves
On one
who re
sponses
chorus.

gradually
had succ
The m

women,
the chief
ately rose
blow on t
treated th
ner; but
her upon
son instan

The Ed
extract from
the near refe
Caroline Man
cific Ocean, a
inhabitants o
idea of their
shall here, on
from these. Le
formity in lan

they so dexterously made, from the ruder exertions and harsh sounds, to the softest airs, and most gentle movements. The place where these dances were performed, was an open space among the trees, just by the sea, with lights, at small intervals, placed round the inside of the circle.

This dance being ended, after a considerable interval, twelve other men advanced, placing themselves in double rows, fronting each other. On one side was stationed a kind of prompter, who repeated several sentences, to which responses were made by the performers and the chorus. They sung and danced slowly; and gradually grew quicker, like those whom they had succeeded.

The next who exhibited themselves were nine women, who sat down opposite the hut where the chief had placed himself. A man immediately rose, and gave the first of these women a blow on the back with both his fists joined. He treated the second and third in the same manner; but when he came to the fourth, he struck her upon the breast. Upon seeing this, a person instantly rising up from among the crowd, knocked

The Editor here inserts a note, in which he gives an extract from the 'Lettres Edifiantes & Curieuses,' to shew the near resemblance between the songs and dances of the Caroline Islanders, at an immense distance in the North Pacific Ocean, and those of the Friendly Islanders, and other inhabitants of the Southern Pacific; whence he deduces the idea of their being all derived from one common stock. We shall here, once for all, observe, that various other extracts from these Letters are interspersed, to shew the same conformity in language, religion, manners, &c. &c.

knocked him down with a blow on the head, and he was quietly carried away. But this did not excuse the other five women from so extraordinary a discipline; for they were treated in the same manner by a person who succeeded him. When these nine women danced, their performance was twice disapproved of, and they were obliged to repeat it again. There was no great difference between this dance and that of the first women, except that these sometimes raised the body upon one leg, and then upon the other, alternately, by a sort of double motion.

Soon after, a person unexpectedly entered, making some ludicrous remarks on the fire-works that had been exhibited, which extorted a burst of laughter from the crowd. We had then a dance by the attendants of Feenou; they formed a double circle of twenty-four each round the chorus, and joined in a gentle soothing song, accompanied with the motions of the head and hands. They also began with slow movements, which gradually became more and more rapid, and finally closed with several very ingenious transpositions of the two circles.

The two last dances were universally approved by all the spectators. They were perfectly in time, and some of their gestures were so expressive, that it might justly be said, they spoke the language that accompanied them. Though the concourse of people was pretty large, their number was much inferior to that assembled in the forenoon, when the marines performed their exercise.

exerc
supp
perfor
les' thi
The
Captai
of Lef
some r
tations
more
near th
the sun
parts of
marks
improves
enous
such a
let to
Large sp
trees, we
generally
plants an
To there
by fowling
dian corn
bout four
with an
which the
he occasio
served a m
food four
ties of some
tered. T
Vol. I.

exercise. At this time many of our gentlemen supposed there might be present five thousand persons, or upwards; but Captain Cook supposes that to be rather an exaggerated account. The next day, which was the 21st of May, Captain Cook made an excursion into the island of Lefooga, on foot, which he found to be, in some respects, superior to Annamooka, the plantations being not only more numerous, but also more extensive. Many parts of the country, near the sea, are still waste, owing perhaps to the sandiness of the soil. But, in the internal parts of the island, the soil is better; and the marks of considerable population, and of an improved state of cultivation, are very conspicuous. Many of the plantations are inclosed in such a manner, that the fences, running parallel to each other, form spacious public roads. Large spots, covered with the paper Mulberry-trees, were observed; and the plantations in general, were abundantly stocked with such plants and fruit-trees as the island produces. To these the Commodore made some addition, by sowing the seeds of melons, pumpkins, Indian corn, &c. At one place was a house, about four times as large as the ordinary ones, with an extensive area of grass before it, to which the people probably resort on some public occasions. Near the landing-place we observed a mound two or three feet high, on which stood four or five little huts, wherein the bodies of some persons of distinction had been interred. The island is but seven miles in length;

and its breadth, in some places, is not above three miles. The east side has a reef, projecting considerably, against which the sea breaks with great violence. It is a continuation of this reef that joins Lefooga to Foa, which is but half a mile distant; and, at low-water, the natives can walk upon this reef from one island to the other. The shore is either a sandy-beach, or a coral rock.

When the Captain returned from his excursion, and went on board, he found a large sailing canoe fastened to the stern of the Resolution. In this canoe was Latooliboula, whom the Commodore had seen, during his last voyage, at Tongataboo, and who was then supposed by him to be the king of that island*. He could not be prevailed upon to come on board, but continued sitting in his canoe with an air of uncommon gravity. The islanders called him *Areekee*, which signifies King; a title which we had not heard any of them give to Feenou, however extensive his authority over them had appeared to be. Latooliboula remained under the stern till the evening, and then departed. Feenou was on board the Resolution at that time; but neither of these chiefs took the smallest notice of the other.

The next day, some of the natives stealing a tarpaulin and other things, Captain Cook applied

* In Captain Cook's narrative of that voyage, the name of this chief is said to be *Koba-gee-too Fallangou*, which is totally different from *Latooliboula*. This may perhaps be accounted for by supposing one to be the name of the person, and the other the description of his rank or title.

plied to
thority,
red; but
the 23d,
Feenou a
long-side
were goin
said, abou
Hapacc.
their voya
supply of
for Omai
desired us
would be i
nou would
tain Cook
chief, who
the 24th, a
bout by so
sembled ou
we left it,
was also re
that island,
these new v
appeared, t
foundation.
purpose the
unless we st
of getting u
other.

On Sund
to a house w
of a child, w

plied to Feenou, desiring him to exert his authority, for the purpose of getting them restored; but this application was of no effect. On the 23d, as we were preparing to leave the island, Feenou and his prime-minister Taipa, came along-side in a canoe, and informed us that they were going to Vavaoo, an island situate, as they said, about two days sailing to the northward of Hapae. They assured us, that the object of their voyage was to procure for us an additional supply of hogs, besides some red-feathered caps for Omai to carry with him to Otaheite; and desired us not to sail till their return, which would be in four or five days; after which Feenou would accompany us to Tongataboo. Captain Cook consented to wait the return of this chief, who immediately set out for Vavaoo. On the 24th, a report was industriously spread about by some of the islanders, that a ship resembling ours had arrived at Annamooka since we left it, and was now at anchor there. It was also reported, that Toobou, the chief of that island, was hastening thither to receive these new visitors. After enquiry, however, it appeared, that this report was totally void of foundation. It is difficult to conjecture, what purpose the invention of this tale could answer; unless we suppose it was contrived with a view of getting us removed from one island to the other.

On Sunday the 25th, Captain Cook went into a house where a woman was dressing the eyes of a child, who seemed blind. The instruments

used by this female oculist were two slender wooden probes, with which she brushed the eyes so as to make them bleed. In the same house he found another woman shaving a child's head with a shark's tooth, stuck into the end of a stick: she first wetted the hair with a rag dipped in water, and then making use of her instrument, took off the hair as close as if a razor had been employed. Captain Cook soon after tried upon himself one of these remarkable instruments, which he found to be an excellent substitute. The natives of these islands, however, have a different method of shaving their beards, which operation they perform with two shells; one of which they place under a part of the beard, and with the other, applied above, they scrape off that part: in this manner they can shave very close, though the process is rather tedious. There are among them some men who seem to profess this trade: for it was as common for our sailors to go ashore to have their beards scraped off after the mode of Hapace, as it was for their chiefs to come on board to be shaved by our barbers.

Captain Cook finding little or nothing of what the island produced was now brought to the ships, determined to change his station, and to wait Feenou's return in some other anchoring-place, where we might still meet with refreshments. We accordingly, on the 26th, made sail to the southward along the reef of the island, and having passed several shoals, hauled into a bay, that lies between the north end of Hoolaiwa, and the

A

the south
had no f
ster of t
bay wher
Cook, ac
ed on the
fresh wat
west side
cial moun
ty feet hig
the diamet
this moun
and a half
coral rock
islanders,
was seen ab
ta Areekee*
the mount
kings. On
and Mr Go
came back
found from
with a botto
Lefooga a
other by a r
ter. Some
the last men
est mark of
except a sing
to catch fish
ble that it sh

* *Taipata*, in
ter, king.

the south of Lefooga, and there anchored. We had no sooner cast anchor, than Mr Bligh, Master of the Resolution, was sent to sound the bay where we were now stationed; and Captain Cook, accompanied by Lieutenant Gore, landed on the southern part of Lefooga, to look for fresh water, and examine the country. On the west side of the Island, they observed an artificial mount of considerable antiquity, about forty feet high, and measuring about fifty feet in the diameter of its summit. At the bottom of this mount was a stone fourteen feet high, two and a half thick, and four broad, hewn out of coral rock; and they were informed by the islanders, that not more than half its length was seen above ground. They called it *Tangata Areeke**; and he said it had been set up, and the mount raised, in memory of one of their kings. On the approach of night, the Captain and Mr Gore returned on board, and Mr Bligh came back from sounding the bay, in which he found from fourteen to twenty fathoms water, with a bottom principally of sand.

Lefooga and Hoolaiva are separated from each other by a reef of coral rocks, dry at low water. Some of our gentlemen, who landed in the last mentioned island, found not the smallest mark of cultivation, or habitation, upon it, except a single hut, in which a man employed to catch fish and turtle resided. It is remarkable that it should remain in this desolate condition,

S 3

* *Tangata*, in the language of these people is man; *Areeke*, king.

tion, since it communicates so immediately with Lefooga, which is so well cultivated. The west side of it has a bending, where there seems to be good anchorage; and the east side has a reef, as well as Lefooga. Uninhabited as Hoolaiva is, an artificial mount has been raised upon it, equal in height to some of the surrounding trees.

On Tuesday the 27th, at break of day, the Commodore made the signal to weigh; and as he intended to attempt, in his way to Tongataboo, a passage to Annamooka, by the south-west, among the intermediate isles, he sent Mr Bligh in a boat to sound before the ships. But before we got under sail, the wind became so variable and unsettled, as to render it unsafe to attempt a passage with which we were so little acquainted; we therefore lay fast and made the signal for the Master to return.

Captain Cook had now an opportunity of discovering that Feenou was not the King of the Friendly Islands, but only a subordinate chief*:

for
* By a prudent regulation in their government, says Captain Cook, the natives have an officer over the police, or something like it. This department, when we were amongst them, was administered by Feenou; whose business, we were told, it was, to punish all offenders, whether against the state, or against individuals. He was also Generalissimo, and commanded the warriors, when called out upon service; but, by all accounts this is very seldom. The King, frequently, took some pains to inform us of Feenou's office; and, among other things, told us that if he himself should become a bad man, Feenou would kill him. What I understood, by this expression of being a bad man, was, that if he did not govern according to law or custom, Feenou would be ordered, by the other great men, or by the people at large to put him to death. There should seem to be

for that
faiie, or
gataboo, a
the Resolu
ing my in
my inclina
without in
suming titl
understood
could not be
with him as
though not
could give w
tainly the m
had seen; fo
unweildy, an
He seemed t
straight hair
deal from the
Poulaho ap
After he had
ed many per
fired him to
this some of
ing, that if h
that people w
could not be
Captain gave
should presum
deck which w
no doubt, that a S
and punished for
despotic monarch.

for that title, it appeared, belonged to Futta-faihe, or Poulaho, whose residence was at Tongataboo, and who now came under the stern of the Resolution, in a large sailing canoe, 'It being my interest,' says the Captain, 'as well as my inclination, to pay court to all the great men, without inquiring into the validity of their assuming titles, I invited Poulaho on board, as I understood he was very desirous to come. He could not be an unwelcome guest; for he brought with him as a present to me, two good fat hogs; though not so fat as himself. If weight of body could give weight in rank or power, he was certainly the most eminent man in that respect, we had seen; for, though not very tall he was very unweildy, and almost shapeless with corpulence. He seemed to be about forty years of age, had straight hair, and his features differed a good deal from those of the bulk of the people.'

Poulaho appeared to be a sedate sensible man. After he had seen every object on deck, and asked many pertinent questions; the Captain desired him to walk down into the cabin. To this some of his attendants objected, observing, that if he were to do so, it must happen, that people would walk over his head, which could not be permitted. To obviate this, the Captain gave them to understand, that no one should presume to walk on that part of the deck which was over the cabin. Whether this would

no doubt, that a Sovereign, thus liable to be controuled, and punished for an abuse of power, cannot be called a despotic monarch.

would have satisfied them was far from appearing; but the King himself, less scrupulous, waved all ceremony, and walked down without any stipulation. He sat down with them to dinner; but eat little, and drank less. When he arose from the table, he desired the Captain to accompany him ashore. Omai was asked to be of the party; but he had formed the closest connection with Feenou, with whom (as the strongest proof of it) he had exchanged names, and he was too faithfully attached to him, to shew any attention to his competitor. He, therefore, excused himself. The Captain, in his own boat, attended the King ashore; having first made him presents that surpassed his expectations; in return for which, Poulaho ordered two more hogs to be sent on board. The chief was then carried out of the boat, by his own subjects, on a board resembling a hand-barrow; and immediately seated himself in a small house near the shore. He placed the Captain at his side; and his attendants formed a semicircle before them, on the outside of the house. An old woman sat close to the chief, with a kind of fan in her hand, to prevent his being incommoded by the flies. The various articles which his people had procured by trading on board the ships, being now displayed before him, he attentively looked over them all, enquired what they had given in exchange, and, at length, ordered every thing to be returned to the respective owners, except a glass-bowl, which he reserved for himself. Those who brought

brought themselves their purchase. They obliged them away speak to him before they leaving their hands and touching of the fingers charmed with ed on this any where. When the Master informed him there was a anchorage; south-east, h ers and small port, we retired that way; and namooka by lately experienced have sailed the 28th, if the vlaho came early ed cap as a price caps were great they would be not one was ev large prices were in either ship

brought these things to him first squatted themselves down before him, then deposited their purchases, and instantly rose and retired. They observed the same ceremony in taking them away; and not one of them presumed to speak to him standing. His attendants, just before they left him, paid him obeisance, by bowing their heads down to the sole of his foot, and touching it with the upper and under side of the fingers of each hand. Captain Cook was charmed with the decorum that was maintained on this occasion, having scarce seen the like any where even among more civilized nations.

When the Captain arrived on board, he found the Master returned from his expedition, who informed him, that, as far as he had proceeded there was a passage for the ships, and tolerable anchorage; but that, towards the south and south-east, he observed numerous shoals, breakers and small isles. In consequence of this report, we relinquished all thoughts of a passage that way; and being resolved to return to Annamooka by the same route which we had so lately experienced to be a safe one, we should have sailed the next morning, which was the 28th, if the wind had not been unsettled. Poulaho came early on board, bringing a red-feathered cap as a present to Captain Cook. These caps were greatly sought after by us, as we knew they would be highly valued at Otaheite: but not one was ever brought for sale, though very large prices were offered; nor could a person in either ship make himself the proprietor of
one

one, except the two Captains and Omai. They are composed of the tail feathers of the tropic bird, intermixed with the red feathers of the parroquet; and are made in such a manner, as to tie on the forehead without any crown, and have the form of a semi-circle, whose radius is eighteen or twenty inches. But the best idea of them will be conveyed by Mr Webber's representation of Poulaho, ornamented with one of these caps or bonnets. The chief left the ship in the evening; but his brother, whose name also was Futafaihe, and some of his attendants, remained all night on board.

On the 29th, at day-break, we weighed with a fine breeze at east-north-east, and made sail to the westward followed by several sailing canoes, in one of which was Poulaho the king, who, getting on board the Resolution, enquired for his brother, and the others who had continued with us all night. We now found that they had staid without his permission, for he gave them such a reprimand as brought tears from their eyes: however, he was soon reconciled to their making a longer stay; for, on his departure from the ship, he left his brother, and five attendants, on board. We were also honoured with the company of a chief named Tooboucto, just then arrived from Tongataboo; who, as soon as he came, sent away his canoe, declaring, that he, and five others, who came with him, would sleep on board; so that Captain Cook now had his cabin filled with visitors. This inconvenience he the more willingly endured,

dured,
provision
met with
In the
ceeded by
Our cour
were oblig
fetched th
o'clock in
up to Lofa
lee or north
but the be
breakers ly
Kotoo, exp
It was dark
finding no
passed the n
the 31st, at
nel which is
rocks lying t
approach, w
us through.
side of the re
till near twel
we made no
apprehensive
so many of
and stood bac
Footooha and
fresh, with so
night, the Re
wind, fetching
near running

dured, as they brought with them plenty of provisions as presents to him, for which they met with suitable returns.

In the afternoon the easterly wind was succeeded by a fresh breeze at south-south-east. Our course being now south-south-west, we were obliged to ply to wind-ward, and barely fetched the northern side of Footooha by eight o'clock in the evening. The next day we plied up to Lofanga, and got soundings, under the lee or north-west side, in forty fathoms water; but the bottom being rocky, and a chain of breakers lying to leeward, we stretched away for Kotoo, expecting to find better anchorage there. It was dark before we reached that island, where finding no convenient place to anchor in, we passed the night in making short boards. On the 31st, at day-break, we stood for the channel which is between Kotoo, and the reef of rocks lying to the westward of it; but on our approach, we found the wind insufficient to lead us through. We therefore, bore up on the outside of the reef, and stretched to the south-west till near twelve o'clock, when, perceiving that we made no progress to windward, and being apprehensive of losing the islands while we had so many of the natives on board, we tacked and stood back, and spent the night between Footooha and Kotoo. The wind now blew fresh, with squalls and rain; and, during the night, the Resolution, by a small change of the wind, fetching too far to the windward, was very near running full upon a low sandy isle, named Pootoo

Pootoo Pootooa, encompassed with breakers. Our people having fortunately been just ordered upon deck, to put the ship about, and most of them being at their respective stations, the necessary movements were performed with judgment and alertness; and this alone preserved us from destruction. The Discovery, being astern, incurred no danger.

This narrow escape so alarmed the natives who were on board, that they were eagerly desirous of getting ashore: accordingly, on the return of day-light, a boat was hoisted out, and the officer who commanded her was ordered, after landing them at Kotoo, to sound for anchorage along the reef that projects from that island. During the absence of the boat, we endeavoured to turn the ships through the channel between the reef of Kotoo and the sandy isle; but meeting with a strong current against us, we were obliged to desist, and cast anchor in fifty fathoms water, the sandy isle bearing east by north, about the distance of one mile. Here we remained till the 4th of June, being frequently visited by the king, by Tooboueitoa, and by people who came from the neighbouring islands to traffic with us. Mr Bligh was, in the mean time, dispatched to sound the channels between the islands situate to the eastward; and Captain Cook himself landed on Kotoo, to take a survey of it. This island, on account of the coral reefs that environ it, is scarcely accessible by boats. Its north-west end is low; but it rises suddenly in the middle, and terminates at the south-

south-east
duces the
cent island
thinly in
While the
our people
cattle; an
return to
ty brackish
was confid
We were
with a fre
towards A
next morn
we had so
after went
ry busy in
for traffic.
two hundre
and traded
that they b
absence, in
several large
our late visit
yams were n
we obtained
change for ir
on board, he
he had sown
found, to his
had been de
pine-apple pla
in a thriving
Vol. I.

south-east end in reddish clayey cliffs. It produces the same fruits and roots with the adjacent islands, and is tolerably cultivated, though thinly inhabited. It is about two miles in length. While the Commodore was walking all over it, our people were occupied in cutting grass for the cattle; and we planted some melon seeds. On our return to the boat, we passed by some ponds of dirty brackish water, and saw a burying place, which was considerably neater than those of Hapae.

We weighed in the morning of the 4th, and with a fresh gale at east-south-east, made sail towards Annamooka, where we anchored the next morning, nearly in the same station which we had so lately occupied. Captain Cook soon after went on shore, and found the islanders very busy in their plantations, digging up yams for traffic. In the course of the day, about two hundred of them assembled on the beach, and traded with great eagerness. It appeared, that they had been very diligent, during our absence, in cultivating; for we now observed several large plantain fields, in places which, in our late visit, we had seen lying waste. The yams were now in the highest perfection; and we obtained a good quantity of them, in exchange for iron. Before the Captain returned on board, he visited the several places where he had sown melon and cucumber seeds; but found, to his great regret, that most of them had been destroyed by vermin; though some pine-apple plants, which he had also left, were in a thriving condition.

On Friday the 6th, about noon, Feenou arrived from Vavaoo, and informed us, that several canoes, laden with hogs and other provisions, had sailed with him from that island, but had been lost in the late tempestuous weather and every person on board of them had perished. This melancholy tale did not gain much credit with us, as we were by this time sufficiently acquainted with the character of the relater. The truth perhaps was, that he had been unable to procure at Vavaoo the expected supplies; or, if he had obtained any there, that he had left them at Hapace, which lay in his way back, and where he must have heard that Poulaho had come to visit us; who therefore, he knew, would, as his superior, reap all the merit and reward of procuring these supplies, without having had any participation of the trouble. The invention, however, of this loss at sea was not ill imagined; for we had lately had very stormy weather. On the succeeding morning, Poulaho, and some other chiefs arrived; at which time Captain Cook happened to be ashore with Feenou, who now appeared to be sensible of the impropriety of his conduct, in arrogating a character which he had no just claim to; for he not only acknowledged Poulaho as sovereign of Tongataboo and the adjacent isles, but affected to insist much on it. The Captain left him, and went to pay a visit to the king, whom he found sitting with a few of the natives before him, but great numbers hastening to pay their respects to him, the circle increased very fast. When Feenou

nou appr
rest that
Majesty.
confused
his agitati
these two
Captain to
ble. Feen
in the usu
sovereign
the cabin;
neither eat
On the
for Tongat
east. We
teen sailing
very one of
canoe was d
bundle of g
end of a pol
noe in the
At five in th
islands, at th
westward;
and the othe
ated in the l
leagues from
According to
who had been
only five men
Hoonga Ton
proceeded on
9th saw seve

nou approached, he placed himself among the rest that sat before Poulaho, as attendants on his Majesty. He at first seemed to be somewhat confused and abashed; but soon recovered from his agitation. Some conversation passed between these two chiefs, who went on board with the Captain to dinner; but only Poulaho sat at table. Feenou, after having made his obeisance in the usual mode, by saluting the foot of his sovereign with his head and hands, retired from the cabin; and it now appeared, that he could neither eat nor drink in the king's presence.

On the 8th, we weighed anchor, and steered for Tongataboo, with a gentle breeze at north-east. We were accompanied by fourteen or fifteen sailing vessels belonging to the islanders, every one of which outran the ships. The royal canoe was distinguished from the rest by a small bundle of grass, of a red colour, fastened to the end of a pole, and fixed in the stern of the canoe in the same manner as our ensign staffs. At five in the afternoon we descried two small islands, at the distance of four leagues to the westward; one was called Hoonga Hapaee, and the other Hoonga Tonga. They are situated in the latitude of $20^{\circ} 36'$ south, about ten leagues from the western point of Annamooka. According to the information of two islanders who had been sent on board by Feenou as pilots, only five men resided on Hoonga Hapaee, and Hoonga Tonga had no inhabitants. We still proceeded on a south-west course, and on the 9th saw several little islands, beyond which

Eooa and Tongataboo appeared. We had at this time twenty-five fathoms water, the bottom consisted of broken coral and sand, and the depth gradually decreased, as we approached the above-mentioned small isles. Steering by the direction of our pilots, for the widest space between those isles, we were insensibly drawn upon a large flat, on which lay innumerable rocks of coral, below the surface of the sea. Notwithstanding our utmost care and attention to avoid these rocks, we were unable to prevent the ship from striking on one of them: nor did the Discovery, though behind us, keep clear of them. It fortunately happened, that neither of the ships stuck fast, nor sustained any damage. We still continued our course, and the moment we found a place where we could anchor with any degree of safety, we came to; and the Masters were dispatched, with the boats, to sound. Soon after we had cast anchor, several of the natives of Tongataboo came to us in their canoes; and they, as well as our pilots, assured us, that we should meet with deep water further in, free from rocks. Their intelligence was true; for, about four o'clock, the boats made a signal of having found good anchoring ground. We therefore weighed, and stood in till dark, when we anchored in nine fathoms water, with a clear sandy bottom. During the night, we had some rain; but early in the morning, the wind becoming southerly, and bringing on fair weather, we weighed again, and worked towards the shore of Tongataboo.

While

While we
king con
and at th
of small c
not gettin
he ran qu
cern. An
Resolution
ful to Cap
boo in his
had, at th
Furieux.
and a hog,
they receiv
We arri
o'clock in
It was a ve
short of T
little isles o
our ships an
the depth o
stance from
mile.
We had
boo, when
accompanied
They found
beach, who
near, the we
it, and told
vice during
fore they ha
circle of the

While we were plying up to the harbour, the king continued sailing round us in his canoe; and at the same time there was a great number of small canoes about the ships. Two of these not getting out of the way of his royal vessel, he ran quite over them with the greatest unconcern. Among those who came on board the Resolution, was Otago, who had been so useful to Captain Cook when he visited Tongataboo in his last voyage; and one Toobou, who had, at that time, attached himself to Captain Furneaux. Each of them brought some yams and a hog, in testimony of friendship; for which they received a suitable return.

We arrived at our intended station about two o'clock in the afternoon of the 10th of June. It was a very convenient place, formed by the shore of Tongataboo on the south-east, and two little isles on the east and north-east. Here both our ships anchored over a sandy bottom, where the depth of water was ten fathoms. Our distance from the shore exceeded a quarter of a mile.

We had not been long at anchor off Tongataboo, when Captain Cook landed on the island accompanied by some of the officers and Omai. They found the king waiting for them on the beach, who conducted them to a small neat house near the woods, with an extensive area before it, and told the Captain, that it was at his service during his continuance on the island. Before they had been long in the house, a large circle of the natives assembled before them, and

seated themselves upon the area. A root of the *kava* plant being brought to the king, he commanded it to be split in pieces, and distributed to several people, of both sexes, who began to chew it, and soon prepared a bowl of their favourite liquor. Mean while, a baked hog, and a quantity of baked yams, were produced, and divided into ten portions. These shares were given to some of those who were present, except one, which remained undisposed of, and which was probably reserved for the king himself. The liquor was next served out; and the first cup being brought to his majesty, he ordered it to be given to a person who sat near him: the second was also brought to him, which he kept: the third was given to Captain Cook; but their mode of preparing the liquor having given him a distaste for it, it was brought to Omai. The remainder of it was distributed to different people; and one of the cups being carried to Poulaho's brother, he retired with this, and with his share of the provisions. Some others also withdrew from the circle with their portions, because they could neither eat nor drink in his majesty's presence: but there were others of an inferior rank, of both sexes, who both eat and drank before him. Soon afterwards, the greater part of them went away, carrying with them what they had not ate of their share of the feast. It is worthy of remark, that the servants, who distributed the meat and the *kava*, delivered it sitting, not only to the king, but to the others.

Captain

Captain
went in
conducted
water was
inland.
of Pangian
tioned, co
ticle: he we
found there
any he had
pool being
cleaned; an
ter-casks.
ed near the
for our use.
then landed
there as a g
at an incor
tent; and I
shore, to di
tend all oth
occupied in
for the ships
to conduct th
flocked from
yams, cocoa-
that our land
ships were re
Feeuous residi
daily proofs o
continuan
laho was equa
as scarcely a d

Captain Cook, before he returned on board, went in search of a watering-place, and was conducted to some ponds, in one of which the water was tolerable, but it was at some distance inland. Being informed that the small island of Pangimodoo, near which the ships were stationed, could better supply this important article he went over to it the next morning, and found there a pool containing fresher water than any he had met with among these islands. This pool being extremely dirty, he caused it to be cleaned; and here it was that we filled our water-casks. The same morning, a tent was pitched near the house which the king had assigned for our use. The horses, cattle, and sheep, were then landed, and a party of marines stationed there as a guard. The observatory was set up at an inconsiderable distance from the other tent; and Mr King took up his residence on shore, to direct the observations, and superintend all other necessary business. A party was occupied in cutting wood for fuel, and planks for the ships; and the gunners were appointed to conduct the traffic with the inhabitants, who flocked from all parts of the island with hogs, yams, cocoa-nuts, and other articles, insomuch, that our land station resembled a fair, and our ships were remarkably crowded with visitants. Feenou residing in our neighbourhood, we had daily proofs of his opulence and generosity, by the continuance of his valuable donations. Poulaho was equally attentive to us in this respect, as scarcely a day passed without his favouring us with

with considerable presents. We were now informed, that a person of the name of Mareewagee was of very high rank in the island, and was treated with great reverence; nay, if our interpreter Omai did not misunderstand his informers, that he was superior to Poulaho himself; but that, being advanced in years, he lived in retirement, and therefore was not inclined to pay us a visit. This intelligence exciting the curiosity of Captain Cook, he signified to Poulaho his intention of waiting upon Mareewagee; and the king having agreed to accompany him, they set out the next morning in the pinnace, Captain Clerke joining them in one of his own boats. They proceeded to the eastward of the little isles which form the harbour, and then turning towards the south, entered a spacious bay, up which they rowed about three miles and landed amidst a great concourse of people, who received them with shouts and acclamations. The crowd instantly separated, that Poulaho might pass, who took our gentlemen into a small enclosure, and changed the piece of cloth he wore, for a new piece, very neatly folded: an old woman assisted in dressing him, and put a large mat over his cloth. Being now asked where Mareewagee was, he said, to the great surprise of the gentlemen, that he was gone down to the sniis. However, he requested them to accompany him to a *malae*, or house of public resort; and when they came to a large area before it, he seated himself in the path, while they, at his desire, walked up to the house,

house, and
ing a little
by the med
be introduc
no satisfacto
pect that th
ed from ther
pique at th
appeared, th
and that, in
been made, t
ed, or havin
concerning t
The place
pleasant villa
banks of the
principal per
these has his
tation, with a
servants. Th
round, and, in
which is by a
a prop of woo
are public road
able part of so
in grass-plots,
seem less adopt
such other plan
of persons of
vegetable prod
plenty. Near
houses, with sp
which were said

house, and sat down in the front. After waiting a little while, they repeated their enquiries, by the medium of Omai, whether they were to be introduced to Mareewagee? But receiving no satisfactory answer, and being inclined to suspect that the aged chief was purposely concealed from them, they returned to their boats much piqued at their disappointment. It afterwards appeared, that Mareewagee had not been there, and that, in this affair, some gross mistakes had been made, Omai either having been misinformed, or having misunderstood what was told him concerning the old chief.

The place our gentlemen went to was a very pleasant village, delightfully situated on the banks of the bay or inlet, where most of the principal persons of the island reside. Each of these has his house in the midst of a small plantation, with a kind of out-houses, and offices for servants. These plantations are neatly fenced round, and, in general, have only one entrance, which is by a door fastened on the inside with a prop of wood. Between each plantation there are public roads and narrow lanes. A considerable part of some of these enclosures is laid out in grass-plots, and planted with such things as seem less adopted for use than for ornament. In such other plantations as were not the residence of persons of high rank, every article of the vegetable produce of the island was in great plenty. Near the public roads are some large houses, with spacious grass-plots before them, which were said to belong to the king and, are probably

probably the places where their public meetings are held.

On Friday the 13th, about twelve o'clock, Mareewagee came within a small distance of our post on shore, attended by a great number of people of all ranks. In the course of the afternoon, the two captains, and others of our gentlemen, accompanied by Feenou, went ashore to visit him. They found a person sitting under a tree, with a piece of cloth about forty yards long, spread before him, round which numbers of people were seated. They imagined that this was the great personage, but were undeceived by Feenou, who informed them, that another, who was sitting on a piece of mat, was Mareewagee. To him they were introduced by Feenou; and he received them very graciously, and desired them to sit down by him. The chief, who sat under the tree, was named Toobou, whom we shall for the future call Old Toobou, to distinguish him from his namesake, who has been already mentioned as Captain Furneaux's friend. Both he and Mareewagee were venerable in their appearance. The latter was slender in his person, and seemed to be near seventy years of age. Old Toobou was somewhat corpulent, and almost blind from a disorder in his eyes: he was younger than Mareewagee. Captain Cook not expecting on this occasion to meet with two chiefs, had brought on shore a present for one only: this therefore he was obliged to divide between them; but, as it happened to be considerable, both of them appeared to be satisfied.

fatisfied. C
 about an ho
 French hor
 of a pistol th
 ket, seemed
 gentlemen to
 the large pie
 sented to Ca
 cocoa-nuts.
 came on boar
 also visited C
 present was n
 deficiency was r
 Mareewagee v
 stationed on s
 whatever we l
 admiration at
 cross-cut saw
 noon, Poulah
 him his son,
 age. He dinc
 son, though p
 down with hi
 convenient to h
 ever he was pr
 case) every oth
 table, and few
 cabin: whereas
 on board, the c
 unfortunate to h
 admitted at that
 some consequen
 ing was soon r

satisfied. Our party now entertained them about an hour with the performance of two French horns and a drum: but the firing off of a pistol that Captain Clerke had in his pocket, seemed to please them most. Before our gentlemen took their leave of the two chiefs, the large piece of cloth was rolled up, and presented to Captain Cook, together with a few cocoa-nuts. The next morning, Old Toobou came on board to return the Captain's visit: he also visited Captain Clerke; and if our former present was not sufficiently considerable, the deficiency was now supplied. In the mean time, Mareew-gée went to see our people who were stationed on shore; and Mr King shewed him whatever we had there. He was struck with admiration at the sight of the cattle; and the cross-cut saw rivetted his attention. Towards noon, Poulaho came on board, bringing with him his son, who was about twelve years of age. He dined with Captain Cook; but the son, though present, was not permitted to sit down with him. The Captain found it very convenient to have him for his guest; for, whenever he was present, (which was frequently the case) every other native was excluded from the table, and few of them would continue in the cabin: whereas, if neither he nor Feenou were on board, the chiefs of inferior rank were very importunate to be of the dining party, or to be admitted at that time into the cabin, which became consequently very much crowded. The King was soon reconciled to our cookery, and

was

was fond of our wine. He now resided at the *malice* near our tent, where he this evening entertained our people with a dance, in which he himself, though so corpulent and unweildy, engaged.

On the 15th, Captain Cook received a message from Old Toobou, importing, that he was desirous of seeing him on shore. He and Omai accordingly waited on that chief, whom they found sitting, like one of the ancient patriarchs, under the shade of a tree, with a large piece of cloth, the manufacture of the islands, spread out before him. He desired them to place themselves by him; after which he told Omai, that the cloth, with some cocoa-nuts, and red feathers, constituted his present to Captain Cook. The latter thanked him for the donation, and asked him to go on board with him. Omai, being sent for by Poulaha, now left the Captain, who was informed by Feenou, that young Fatatafaihe, the king's son, desired to see him. He immediately obeyed the summons, and found the young prince and Omai seated under a canopy of fine cloth, with a piece of a coarser kind, seventy-six yards long, and seven and a half broad, spread before them and under them. On one side was a quantity of cocoa-nuts; and, on the other, a large boar. A multitude of people sat round the cloth; and among them was Mareewagee, with other persons of rank. The Captain was requested to seat himself by the prince; and then Omai informed him that he had been instructed by Poulaho, to tell him, that

as his Majesty hoped that he intended in as a testimony the prince agreed to dine with the young prince or four subjects of high rank, ship. Many of cloth, and the skirts of on purpose rived on board to Captain Cook not one of the morsel of an said; which five meanings prohibited. present, was presents to the ty by showing Captain Cook's boat had reached others immediately prince followed Mareewagee, who same obedience to receive; and the old ladies, marks of respect

VOL. I.

as his Majesty and the Captain were friends, he hoped that his son Fattafaihe might be comprehended in this friendship; and that the Captain, as a testimony of his consent, would accept of the prince's present. Captain Cook readily agreed to this proposal, and invited them all to dine with him on board. Accordingly, the young prince, Old Toobou, Mareewagee, three or four subordinate chiefs, and two old ladies of high rank, accompanied the Commodore to the ship. Mareewagee was dressed in a new piece of cloth, with six patches of red feathers on the skirts of it. This dress was probably made on purpose for this visit; for, as soon as he arrived on board, he put it off, and presented it to Captain Cook. When dinner was served up, not one of them would even sit down, or eat a morsel of any thing, as they were all *taboo*, they said; which word, though it has a comprehensive meaning, generally signifies that a thing is prohibited. Why they were thus restrained at present, was not accounted for. Having made presents to them all, and gratified their curiosity by showing them every part of the ship, the Captain conducted them ashore. When the boat had reached the land, Feenou and several others immediately stepped out; and the young prince followed them, was called back by Mareewagee, who now paid them their apparent the same obeisance which the king was accustomed to receive; and when old Toobou, and one of the old ladies, had honoured him with the same marks of respect, he was suffered to land. Af-

ter this ceremony, the old people stepped out of the boat into a canoe, which was waiting to convey them to their place of residence. Captain Cook was pleased at being present on this occasion, as he was thus furnished with the most convincing proofs of the supreme dignity of Poulaho and his son. By this time, indeed, he had gained some certain information with regard to the relative situation of several of the chiefs. He now knew, that old Toobou and Mareewagee were brothers. Both of them were men of very considerable property, and in high estimation with the people: Mareewagee, in particular, had obtained the honourable appellation of *Motooa Tonga*, which implies, father of Tonga, or of his country. We also now understood, that he was the king's father-in-law, Poulaho having espoused one of his daughters, by whom he had young Fattafaihe; so that Mareewagee was grandfather to the prince. As for Feenou, he was one of the sons of Mareewagee, and Tooboucitoa was another.

Captain Cook, on his landing, found Poulaho in the house adjoining to our tent, who immediately made him a present of a quantity of yams and a hog. Towards evening, a number of the islanders came, and having seated themselves in a circle, sung in concert with the music of bamboo-drums, which were placed in the centre. Three of them were long ones, and two were short. With these they struck the ground endwise. There were two others that lay side by side on the ground, one

of

of which
tinued b
songs w
tainmen
e'clock.

ra palm

In the
ral other
which fu
following
country
vated, th
growing
yond this
which are
tions. N
tent, the
flowed ev
retires, t
rock, inte
and near
are vast n
innumera
spot, but
proached,
baffle all
deavour to
of art, w
and perfev
way, whic
ses with a
where its b
being abo

of which was partly split; on these a person continued beating with two sticks. They sung three songs while the Captain staid; and the entertainment lasted, after he left them, till ten o'clock. They burned the leaves of the *whar-rá* palm for a light.

In the mean time, Mr Anderson, with several others, made an excursion into the country, which furnished him with observations to the following effect: Westward of the tent, the country for about two miles is entirely uncultivated, though covered with trees and bushes growing naturally with the greatest vigour. Beyond this a pretty large plain extends itself, on which are cocoa-trees, and some small plantations. Near the creek, which runs west of the tent, the land is perfectly flat, and partly overflowed every tide by the sea. When the water retires, the surface is seen to consist of coral rock, interspersed with holes of yellowish mud; and near the edges, where it is rather more firm, are vast numbers of little openings, whence issue innumerable small crabs, which swarm upon the spot, but are so very nimble, that, when approached, they instantaneously disappear, and baffle all the dexterity of the natives who endeavour to catch them. At this place is a work of art, which testifies some degree of ingenuity and perseverance: on one side is a narrow causeway, which, gradually increasing in breadth, rises with a gentle ascent to the height of ten feet, where its breadth is five paces, the whole length being about seventy-four paces. Adjacent to

this is kind of a circus, thirty paces in diameter, about one or two feet higher than the causeway that joins it; and in the middle of this circus some trees are planted. On the opposite side, another causeway descends, which is partly in ruins, and not above forty paces in length. The whole is built of large coral stones, with earth on the surface, which is overgrown with shrubs and low trees. From its decaying in several places, it is probably of some antiquity. It seems to be of no service at present, whatever may have been its use in former times. All the intelligence concerning it, that Mr Anderson could procure from the natives, was, that it was called *Etchee*, and belonged to the king.

In the morning of the 16th, Captain Cook and Mr Gore took a walk into the country; in the course of which they met with an opportunity of seeing the whole process of making cloth, the principal manufacture of these islands, as well as of many others in the South-Sea. An account of this operation, as performed here, may not improperly be subjoined. The manufacturers, who are of the female sex, take the slender stalks or trunks of the paper-mulberry, which rarely grows more than seven feet in height, and about the thickness of four fingers. From these stalks they strip the bark, and scrape off the exterior rind; after which the bark is rolled up, and macerated for some time in water; it is then beaten with a square instrument of wood, full of coarse grooves, but sometimes with a plain one. The operation is often re-

peated
several
bably in
texture.
pieces be
length, a
are joine
glutinous
being the
large piec
posed of
the man
having di
bark of a
the piece
surface a
and the st
impression
staining b
the requir
They gene
broad, at
ends, unst
pieces have
spare bits
that of the
of produc
of the *kobbe*
nut called
cloth, whic
cold dress;
The Com
Renou on

peated by another person; or the bark is folded several times, and beat longer, which is probably intended to close rather than divide its texture. It is then spread out to dry; the pieces being from four, to six or seven feet in length, and about half as broad. These pieces are joined by smearing part of them with the glutinous juice of a berry called *too*; and, after being thus lengthened, they are placed over a large piece of wood, with a sort of stamp, composed of a fibrous substance, laid beneath them.

The manufacturers then take a bit of cloth, and having dipped it in a juice expressed from the bark of a tree called *kokka*, rub it briskly over the piece that is making. This leaves upon the surface a dry gloss, and a dull brown colour; and the stamp makes, at the same time, a slight impression. Thus they proceed, joining and staining by degrees, till a piece of cloth, of the requisite length and breadth, is produced. They generally leave a border, about a foot broad, at the sides, and rather longer at the ends, unstained. If any parts of the original pieces have holes, or are too thin, they glue spare bits upon them, till their thickness equals that of the rest. Whenever they are desirous of producing a black colour, they mix the juice of the *kokka* with the foot procured from an oily nut called *sloedoe*. They assert, that the black cloth, which is usually most glazed, makes a cold dress; but the other, a warm one.

The Commodore and Mr Gore, meeting with Keenou on their return from their excursion,

took him, and another chief, on board to dinner; which being served up, neither of them would eat a morsel, alledging that they were *taboo avy*; but when they found, that, in dressing a pig and some yams, no *avy* (water) had been made use of, they both sat down, and eat very heartily, and drank some wine, on being assured that there was no water in it. From this circumstance we inferred, that they were at this time, for some particular reason, forbidden to use water; or that, perhaps they did not like the water we then used; it being taken out of one of the places where the islanders bathed.

The following day, which was the 17th, was fixed upon by *Mareewagee* for giving a grand *haiwa*, or entertainment, at which we were all invited to attend. Before the temporary hut of this chief, near our land station, a large space had been cleared for that purpose. In the morning, vast numbers of the natives came in from the country, every one of whom bore on his shoulder a long pole, at each end of which a yam was suspended. These poles and yams being deposited on each side of the open space, or area, formed two large heaps, decorated with small fish of different kinds. They were *Mareewagee's* present to the Captains Cook and Clerke. The necessary preparations being made, the islanders began, about eleven o'clock, to exhibit various dances, which they call *mai*. The band of music at first consisted of seventy men as a chorus, amidst whom were placed three instruments that we called drums, though they

they d'd r
cylindrical
feet in len
a man of
They are e
and open c
three inche
of the drum
wood is ho
of some dif
the natives
towards the
it, with two
as the wrist
which mean
found, is p
the strengt
likewise cha
the end, or
There we
each, in the
hands a sma
two feet in l
oblong padd
are called *pa*
tions; such as
on one side,
at the same i
opposite side
with great qu
and twirling
terity; with
motions, whi

they d'd not much resemble them. They are cylindrical pieces of wood from three to four feet in length, some of them twice as thick as a man of ordinary size, and some not so large. They are entirely hollow, but close at each end, and open only by a chink, about the breadth of three inches, running nearly the whole length of the drums. By this opening, the rest of the wood is hollowed; which must be an operation of some difficulty. This instrument is called by the natives *nassa*; and, having the chink turned towards them, they sit and beat vigorously upon it, with two cylindrical pieces of wood, as thick as the wrist, and about a foot in length; by which means a rude, but loud and powerful sound, is produced. They occasionally vary the strength and rate of their beating; and likewise change the tones, by beating towards the end, or in the middle of the instrument.

There were four ranks, of twenty-four men each, in the first dance. These held in their hands a small thin wooden instrument, above two feet in length, resembling in its shape an oblong paddle. With these instruments, which are called *pagge*, they made many different motions; such as pointing them towards the ground on one side, and inclining their bodies that way at the same instant; then shifting them to the opposite side in the same manner; passing them with great quickness from one hand to the other, and twirling them about with remarkable dexterity; with various other manœuvres. Their motions, which were slow at first, quickened

as the drums beat faster; and they repeated sentences the whole time in a musical tone, which were answered by the chorus; but, in a short time, they all joined, and ended with a shout. After a cessation of a few minutes, they began as before, and continued with short intervals, upwards of a quarter of an hour; and then the rear-rank dividing, moved slowly round each end, met in the front, and formed the first rank; during which time the whole number continued to recite sentences. The other ranks successively did the same, till that which was foremost became the rear; and this evolution did not cease till the last rank regained its former situation. A much quicker dance, though slow at first, was then begun, and they sung for ten minutes, when the whole body, in a two-fold division, retreated, and then advanced, forming a kind of circular figure, which concluded the dance; the chorus retiring, and the drums being removed, at the same time.

In the second dance there were forty men as a chorus, with only two drums; and the dancers, or rather actors, consisted of two ranks, the foremost of which had seventeen persons, and the other fifteen. Feenou was in the middle of the first rank, which is considered, on these occasions, as the principle place. They danced and repeated sentences, with very short intervals for half an hour, sometimes slowly, and at other times quickly, with the highest degree of exactness and regularity. Towards the close, the rear-rank divided, came round, and occupied

occupied
wards re
being fin
the chor
Three
in, and
third dan
sixteen m
head, wh
kind of
These, pe
page, so a
of the spe
with a mo
as if asha
hindermos
soon after
second dan
ed a triple
of the area,
sure clear.
began to ex
use of in b
their hands
them with g
skill, that, th
they never in
with uncom
other; and,
made various
the air, and
then retired
They had pie

occupied the place of the front, which afterwards resumed its pristine situation. This dance being finished, the drums were taken away, and the chorus retired, as in the preceding dance.

Three very large drums were now brought in, and seventy men served as a chorus to the third dance. This consisted of two ranks, of sixteen men each having young Toobou at their head, who was splendidly ornamented with a kind of garment covered with red feathers; These persons danced, sung, and twirled the *pagge*, so as to meet with the continual applause of the spectators, who were particularly pleased with a motion in which they held the face aside, as if ashamed, with the *pagge*, before it. The hindermost rank closed before the front one, which soon after resumed its place, as in the first and second dances: then beginning again, they formed a triple row, divided, retreated to each side of the area, and left the ground in a great measure clear. Two men rushing in at that instant, began to exercise the clubs which they make use of in battle. They first twirled them in their hands, and made circular strokes before them with great quickness, managing with such skill, that, though they stood close to each other, they never interfered. They shifted the clubs, with uncommon dexterity, from one hand to the other; and, after some time, kneeled down, and made various motions, tossing up their clubs in the air, and catching them as they fell. They then retired as hastily as they had entered. They had pieces of white cloth about their heads, fastened

fastened at the crown with a wreath of foliage round their foreheads: and, that they might be free from all incumbrance, they had only a very small piece of cloth tied round the waist. A man, armed with a spear, then rushed in, and put himself in a menacing attitude, as if he intended to strike with his weapon at one of the people in the crowd; at the same time bending the knee a little, and trembling as it were with fury. He continued in this position near a minute, and then moved to the other side, where, having stood in the same posture, he hastily retreated from the area. During all this time, the dancers who had divided themselves into two parties, continued to repeat something slowly; and they now came forward, and joined again, concluding the dance with general applause. This dance was probably considered as a capital performance, as some of the principal people were engaged in it; one of the drums being beat by Futtasaihe, the king's brother, another by Feenou, and the third by Marewagee himself.

In the fourth and last dance, there were forty men as a chorus, with two drums. The performers were sixty men, arranged in three rows, having twenty-four in front. Before they commenced, we were entertained with a preliminary harangue, in which the whole number made responses to an individual speaker. They recited sentences alternately with the chorus, and made with the *pagge* many quick motions. They divided into two parties, with their backs to each other;

other; for
the prece
being suc
clubs, as
the dance
turns with
terminate

These
o'clock till
who atten
who were
or straggli
thousand,
a mile. In
in this ente
gained muc
nius and cu
spectators e
tions, when
the pleasure
the sentime
cited. How
served our
ness of the
and the ex
with which

In the ev
bomai, or ni
the tempora
continued th
twelve of th
same manne
them, which

other; formed again, shifted their ranks (as in the preceding dances) divided, and retreated, being succeeded by two men who exercised their clubs, as before, after whom came two others; the dancers in the mean time repeating in their turns with the chorus: they then advanced, and terminated the dance.

These amusements continued from eleven o'clock till near three. The number of islanders who attended as spectators, together with those who were round the trading-place at the tent, or straggling about, amounted to at least ten thousand, all within the compass of a quarter of a mile. If we had understood what was spoken in this entertainment, we might probably have gained much information with regard to the genius and customs of these people. Though the spectators constantly applauded the different motions, when well made, a considerable share of the pleasure they received, seemed to arise from the sentimental part, or what the performers recited. However, the mere acting part well deserved our notice, on account of the extensiveness of the plan, the variety of the motions, and the exact unity, ease, and gracefulness, with which they were performed.

In the evening we were entertained with the *bomai*, or night-dances, on a large area before the temporary dwelling-place of Feenou. They continued three hours; during which time about twelve of them were performed, nearly in the same manner as those at Hapae. In two of them, which were performed by women, a par-

ty

ty of men came and formed a circle within theirs. In another, which consisted of twenty-four men, many motions that we had not before seen, were made with the hands, and met with great applause. The music was once changed in the course of the evening; and, in one of the dances, Feenou himself appeared at the head of fifty men: he was well dressed in linen, and some small pictures were hung round his neck.

Though the whole entertainment was conducted with better order than could reasonably have been expected, yet our utmost care and attention could not prevent our being plundered by the natives, in the most daring and insolent manner. There was scarcely any thing which they did not endeavour to steal. They once, in the middle of the day, attempted to take an anchor from off the *Discovery's* bow; but without effect. The only violence of which they were guilty, was, the breaking the shoulder-bone of one of our goats; in consequence of which he died soon after. On Wednesday the 18th, an islander got out of a canoe into the *Resolution*, and stole a pewter-bason; but being detected, he was pursued, and brought alongside the ship. Upon this occasion, three old women in the canoe made loud lamentations over the prisoner, beating their faces and breasts with the palms of their hands in a very violent manner, but without shedding a tear. This mode of expressing sorrow occasions the mark which most of these people bear on the face,

over

over their
inflicted
and cause
wound is
been made
they cut t
ment.

The far
presents c
which had
preceding
exhibited
tion in ret
through th
late dance
evening, fo
at the sam
chiefs, and
present.
them; but,
they were f
tion. The
drum, or F
ring the in
one, no pe
him; and,
struction, n
but a lane,
tors from h
for playing
While th
evening exh
est part of t
VOL. I.

over their check-bones; for the repeated blows inflicted by them on this part, abrade the skin, and cause some blood to flow out; and when the wound is recent, it looks as if a hollow circle had been made by burning. On some occasions, they cut this part of the face with an instrument.

The same day Captain Cook bestowed some presents on Marcewagee, in return for those which had been received from that chief the preceding day; and as the entertainments then exhibited called upon us to make some exhibition in return, he ordered all the marines to go through their exercise, on the spot where the late dances had been performed; and, in the evening, some fire-works were also played off at the same place. The king, the principal chiefs, and a vast multitude of people, were present. The platoon firing seemed to please them; but, when they beheld our water-rockets, they were filled with astonishment and admiration. They did not much regard the fife and drum, or French-horns, that were playing during the intervals. Poulaho sat behind every one, no person being permitted to sit behind him; and, that his view might receive no obstruction, none sat immediately before him; but a lane, as it were, was made by the spectators from him, quite down to the space allotted for playing off the fire-works.

While the natives were in expectation of this evening exhibition, they engaged for the greatest part of the afternoon, in wrestling and boxing

ing. When a person is desirous of wrestling, he gives a challenge by crossing the ground in a kind of measured pace, and clapping smartly on the elbow joint of one arm, which is bent, and sends forth a hollow sound. If no opponent steps forth, he returns and sits down; but if an antagonist appears, they meet with marks of the greatest good nature, generally smiling, and deliberately adjusting the piece of cloth that is fastened round the waist. They then lay hold of each other by this cloth, and he who succeeds in drawing his opponent to him, instantly endeavours to lift him upon his breast, and throw him on his back; and if he can turn round with him in that position two or three times, before he throws him, he meets with great applause for his dexterity. If they are more equally matched, they quickly close, and attempt to throw each other by entwining their legs, or raising each other from the ground; in which struggles they display an extraordinary exertion of strength. When one of them is thrown, he immediately retires; while the conqueror sits down for near a minute, then rises and goes to the side from which he came, where the victory is proclaimed aloud. After sitting for a short time, he rises again, and challenges; and if several antagonists appear, he has the privilege of choosing which of them he pleases to engage with: he may also, if he should throw his competitor, challenge again, till he himself is vanquished; and then the people on the opposite side chant the song of victory in favour of their champion.

It

It
 each
 it is
 on
 great
 with
 ces.
 ly m
 if it
 had
 tory,
 who
 gage.
 Th
 chang
 stretc
 holdin
 wrap
 oppon
 vent a
 blows
 tivity,
 They
 of the
 on the
 versary
 blow w
 matche
 to the
 tory;
 approv
 ly boys
 not unf

It frequently happens, that five or six rise from each side, and give challenges together; so that it is not uncommon to see several sets engaged on the field at the same time. They preserve great temper in this exercise, and leave the spot without the least displeasure in their countenances. When they find that they are too equally matched, they desist by mutual consent, and if it does not clearly appear which of them has had the advantage, both sides proclaim the victory, and then they engage again. But no one, who has been vanquished, is permitted to engage a second time with his conqueror.

Those who intend to box, advance side-ways, changing the side at every pace, having one arm stretched out before, the other behind; and holding in one hand a piece of cord, which they wrap closely about it, when they meet with an opponent. This is probably intended to prevent a dislocation of the hand or fingers. Their blows are dealt out with great quickness and activity, and are aimed principally at the head. They box equally well with either hand. One of their most dexterous blows is, to turn round on the heel, just after they have struck their adversary, and to give him another pretty violent blow with the other hand backward. In boxing-matches, unless a person strikes his antagonist to the ground, they never sing the song of victory; which shews, that this diversion is less approved among them than wrestling. Not only boys engage in both these exercises; but it not unfrequently happens, that little girls box

with great obstinacy. On all these occasions; they do not consider it as any disgrace to be overcome; and the vanquished person sits down with as much indifference as if he had never engaged. Some of our people contended with them in both exercises, but were generally worsted.

Captain Cook intending to leave behind him some of the animals he had brought, thought proper to make a distribution of them before his departure. He therefore, on the 19th, assembled the chiefs before our house, and marked out his intended presents to them. To the king he gave a bull and a cow; to Mareaagee, a cape ram and two ewes; and to Feenou a horse and a mare. He instructed Omai to tell them, that no such animals existed within several months sail of their island; that we had brought them, with a great degree of trouble and expence, for their use; that, therefore, they ought not to kill any of them till they had multiplied considerably; and, finally, that they and their posterity ought to remember, that they had received them from the natives of Britain. Omai also explained to them their respective uses, as far as his limited knowledge in such points would permit him. The Captain had intended to give old Toobou two or three goats; but finding that chief indifferent about them, he added them to the share of Poulaho. It soon appeared, that some of the natives were dissatisfied with the allotment of our animals; for the next morning, two of our turkey-cocks, and

an
be
on
th
je
ch
a g
the
the
wh
we
the
and
pear
axe,
Som
to a
sed v
them
Com
appe
him
of th
ho's
clard
ingly,
Cook,
e'clock
not lo
were r
the ot
next r
canoes

and one kid, were missing. Our Commodore being determined to get them restored, seized on three canoes that were alongside the ships; then went on shore, and having found his majesty, his brother, Feenou, and some other chiefs, in our house, he immediately appointed a guard over them, and intimated to them, that they must continue under restraint, till not only the turkeys and the kid, but the other things of which we had been plundered at various times, were restored to us. They assured him, that the things in question should all be returned; and then sat down to drink *kava*, with an appearance of unconcern. Soon afterwards, an axe, and an iron wedge, were brought to us. Some armed natives, in the mean time, began to assemble behind the house; but they dispersed when a part of our guard marched against them; and the chiefs at the instigation of the Commodore, gave orders that no more should appear. When he invited them to dine with him on board, they readily consented. Some of them having, afterwards objected to Poulaho's going, he rose up immediately, and declared that he would be the first man. Accordingly, the chiefs went on board with Captain Cook, and remained in the ship till near four o'clock. He then conducted them ashore; and, not long after, the kid and one of the turkeys were restored to him. On their promising that the other turkey should be brought back the next morning, he released both them and the canoes.

Captain Cook now walked out with Omai, with a view of observing how the natives in our neighbourhood fared; for this was the usual time of their meals. He found that they were, in general, ill supplied; a circumstance not to be wondered at, since most of the yams, and other provisions that they brought with them, were disposed of to us; and they were unwilling to return to their own habitations, while they could procure any sustenance near our post. That particular part of the island, where our station was, being uncultivated, there were none of the natives who had a fixed residence within half a mile of us. Those therefore who were at our post, were obliged to live under trees and bushes, or in temporary sheds; and the cocoa-trees were stripped of their branches, for the purpose of erecting huts for the chiefs.

Omai and the Captain, in the course of their walk, found six or seven women at supper together, two of whom were fed by the others. On their asking the reason of this circumstance, the women replied, *taboo mattee*. Upon further enquiry it appeared, that one of them, about two months before, had washed the corpse of a chief, on which account she was not allowed to handle any food for five months; and that the other had performed the same office to the dead body of a person of inferior rank, and was therefore under a similar restriction, though not for so long a space.

On Saturday the 21st, early in the morning, Poulaho came on board, to invite Captain Cook.

to

to a
ed
his
to c
was
after
foun
ing,
ry lo
from
yams
sticks
distan
from
yams,
yams
they
each
They
two ba
a livin
half-w
which
able.
accumu
so of b
which
fish, w
some re
compos
About
begun.
the fir

to a *haiva* or entertainment, which he designed to give the same day. He had already had his head besmeared with red pigment, in order to communicate a red colour to his hair, which was naturally of a dark brown. The Captain, after breakfast, attended him to the shore, and found the islanders very busy in two places, fixing, in a square and upright position, four very long posts, at the distance of near two feet from each other. They afterwards filled up with yams the space between the posts; and fastened sticks across, from one post to another, at the distance of every four feet, to prevent the posts from separating, by the weight of the inclosed yams, and also to ascend by. As soon as the yams had reached the summit of the first posts, they continued to fasten others to them, till each pile was thirty feet or more in height. They placed, on the top of one of the piles, two baked hogs; and, on the top of the other, a living one; and they tied another by the legs half-way up. The facility and dispatch with which these two piles were raised, was remarkable. After they had completed them, they accumulated some other heaps of yams, and also of bread-fruit, on each side of the area; to which a turtle, and a great quantity of excellent fish, were added. The whole of this, with some red feathers, a mat, and a piece of cloth, composed the king's present to Captain Cook. About one o'clock the *mai*, or dances, were begun. The first of these very nearly resembled the first that was performed at Marcewagee's entertainment.

entertainment. The second was conducted by young Toobou; and in this, four or five women were introduced, who equalled the men in the exactness, and regularity of their motions. Near the end the performers divided, in order to leave room for two champions who exercised their clubs. In the third dance, which was the last, two other men, with clubs, exhibited their skill and activity. The dances were succeeded by boxing and wrestling; and one man entered the lists with a kind of heavy club, made from the stem of a cocoa-leaf, but could meet with no opponent to engage him in so rough a diversion. Towards the evening, the *bemai*, or night-dances, began, in which the king himself, apparelled in English manufacture, was a performer: but neither these, nor the dances in the day-time, were so capital as those of Feenou, or Mareewagee.

The Commodore, in order to be present the whole time, dined on shore. Poulaho sat down with him, but neither eat nor drank, which was owing to the presence of a female, who had been admitted, at his request, to the dining party, and who, as we were informed in the sequel, was of superior rank to himself. This lady had no sooner dined, than she walked up to Poulaho, who applied his hands to her feet; after which she retired. He immediately dipped his fingers into a glass of wine, and then all her attendants paid him obeisance. At his desire some of our fire-works were played off in the evening; but being damaged, they did not answer the expectations of the spectators.

No

cit.
be
def
hov
con
S
mac
illan
afte
thei
them
rite
tives
the
ent
this
retur
sultin
of th
know
affair
lay hi
morn
that n
us.
ness,
fumed
duced
Feeno
by aff
be pur
they h

No more entertainments being expected on either side, and the curiosity of the populace being in a great degree satisfied; most of them deserted us the day after Poulaho's *hava*. Still, however, we had thieves among us, and had continual instances of their depredations.

Some of the officers of both ships, who had made an excursion into the interior parts of the island, returned the 22d of June in the evening, after an absence of two days. They had taken their muskets and necessary ammunition with them, besides several small articles of the favourite commodities; the whole of which the natives had the dexterity to steal from them, in the course of their short journey. Inconvenient consequences were likely to have attended this affair; for, when our plundered travellers returned, they employed Omai, without consulting Captain Cook, to complain to the king of the treatment they had received. He, not knowing how the Captain would proceed in this affair, and apprehending that he might again lay him under restraint, set off early the next morning, and Feenou followed his example; so that not a chief of authority now remained near us. The Captain was offended at this business, and reprimanded Omai for having presumed to interfere in it. This reprimand induced him to endeavour to bring back his friend Feenou, and he succeeded in his negotiation, by assuring him that no violent measures would be pursued to oblige the natives to return what they had stolen. Trusting to this declaration,

Feenou.

Feenou came back in the evening, and was favourably received. Poulaho also favoured us with his company next day.

Upon this occasion the two chiefs very justly observed to Captain Cook, that, whenever any of his people wanted to take an excursion into the country, they ought to be made acquainted with it, that they might order proper people to attend them, to prevent such outrages. And, had this precaution been taken, it is not to be doubted but that a man and his property would have been as safe here, as in other parts of the more civilized world. Though the Captain did not afterwards endeavour to recover the articles taken upon this occasion, the whole of them were returned, through the interposition of Feenou, except one musket, and a few other insignificant articles. By this time also, we recovered the tools and other matters, that had been stolen from our workmen.

On Wednesday the 25th of June, two boats, which Captain Cook had sent in search of a commodious channel to sea, returned. The commanders of them reported, that the channel to the north, through which he came in, was imminently dangerous, being full of coral rocks; that there was a good channel to the eastward, though contracted, in one place, by the small islands; consequently a westerly wind would be necessary to get through it. We had now recruited our ships, and repaired our sails, and had little more to expect of the produce of the island; but, as an eclipse of the sun was to hap-
pen

pen
to fi
servi
H
Cook
laho,
Moo
ther
ing u
in cor
They
a doz
shewe
appear
Tak
party,
and la
we we
on sho
ho's ho
ed to b
situated
himself
came t
the oth
prepare
bake f
ready,
king's a
went to
place, a
It belon
largish

pen on the 5th of July, the Captain determined to stay till that time, to have a chance of observing it.

Having now some leisure before us, Captain Cook, and a party of us, accompanied by Poulaho, set out the next morning, in a boat, for Mooa, a kind of village, where he, and the other men of consequence usually reside. Rowing up the inlet, we saw fourteen canoes fishing in company; in one of which was Poulaho's son. They had then taken some fine mullets, about a dozen of which they put into our boat. They shewed us their whole method of fishing, which appeared to be an effectual one.

Taking leave of the prince and his fishing party, we were rowed to the bottom of the bay, and landed where we had done before, when we went to see Mareewagee. As soon as we got on shore, we were conducted to one of Poulaho's houses; which though tolerably large, seemed to be his private place of residence, and situated within a plantation. The king seated himself at one end of the house, and those who came to visit him, sat down in a semi-circle at the other end. A bowl of *kava* was immediately prepared for us, and directions were given to bake some yams. While these were getting ready, some of us, together with a few of the king's attendants, and Omai as our interpreter, went to take a view of a *fiatooka*, or burying-place, at a small distance from the habitation. It belonged to the king, and consisted of three largish houses, situated on a rising ground, with

a small one not far off, all ranged longitudinally. The largest of the three first was the middle house, which was placed in a square, twenty-four paces by twenty-eight, raised about three feet. The other houses were placed on little mounts. On the floors of these houses, as also on the tops of the mounts, were fine loose pebbles; and the whole was enclosed by large flat stones of coral rock. One of the houses was open on one side, and two wooden busts of men, rudely carved, were within it. We enquired of the natives who followed us (but durst not enter here) what these images were; who informed us, that they were memorials of some chiefs who had been buried there, and not meant as the representatives of any deity. Such monuments, it is presumed, are seldom raised; for these appeared to have been erected many ages.

We were informed that dead bodies had been buried in each of these houses, but no marks of them were to be distinguished. The carved head of an Otaheite canoe, which had been driven ashore on their coast, was deposited in one of them. On the rising ground was a grass-plot, on which different large trees were planted; among which were several of those called *etoea*. They greatly resemble the cypress, and had a very solemn effect. A row of low palms was also planted near one of the houses.

After refreshing ourselves with some provisions, which we had brought from our ships, we took a pretty large circuit into the country, attended by one of the king's ministers, who would not

not suffer any of the rabble to follow us, and obliged those whom we met upon our progress, to sit down while we were passing; a mark of respect due only to their sovereigns. The greatest part of the country was cultivated, and most of their plantations fenced round. Some parts, indeed, lay fallow, and others in a state of nature; the latter afforded large quantities of timber.

We found many public and well beaten paths leading to different parts of the island. Travelling here was, indeed, very commodious, the roads being excellent, and the country level. We were conducted to several pools and springs of water, but they were, in general, either brackish or stinking.

In the dusk of the evening, we returned from our walk, and found our supper in readiness. It consisted of some fish and yams, and a baked hog, in which all the culinary arts of the island had been displayed. There being nothing to amuse us after supper, we lay down to sleep, according to the custom of the country, on mats spread upon the floor, and had a covering of cloth. The king, who became happy with wine and brandy which we had brought, also slept in the house, as did several others of the natives. Before day-break, they all rose, and entered into conversation by moon-light. As soon as it was day, they dispersed different ways, but it was not long before they all returned, accompanied by several of their countrymen.

While they were preparing a bowl of *kava*,

Captain Cook went to pay a visit to Toobou, Captain Furneaux's friend, who had a house not far distant, which for size and neatness was hardly exceeded in the place. Here also we found a company preparing a morning draught. The chief made a present to the Captain of a living hog, and one that was baked; also a quantity of yams, and a large piece of cloth. Returning to the king, we found him and his attendants drinking the second bowl of *kava*. That business being performed, he informed Omai that he was going to perform a mourning ceremony, called *tooge*, in memory of a son who had been some time dead, and desired us to accompany him. Naturally expecting to see somewhat new or curious, we readily complied with the request.

The king stepped out of the house, attended by two old women, and put on a new cloath-
 ing over which were placed an old ragged mat, which might probably have served his grandfather upon a similar solemn occasion. His attendants were habited in the same manner, excepting that, in point of antiquity, none of their mats could vie with that of their master. Thus equipped, we marched off, preceded by eight or ten persons in the same uniform, each of them having likewise a green bough about his neck. Poulaho, who held his bough in his hand till he approached the place of rendezvous, then also put it about his neck. We now entered a small inclosure, wherein was a neat house, and a man sitting before it. As the company entered

ed they took the branches from their necks, and threw them away. The king seated himself, and the others sat before him in the usual manner. By the arrival of other persons, the circle increased to upwards of an hundred, principally old men, all dressed in the manner above described. The company being assembled, a large root of *kava* was produced by one of the king's servants, and a capacious bowl that would contain five or six gallons. Many persons now began to chew the root, and the bowl was filled with liquor up to the brim. Others were employed in making drinking-cups of plaintain leaves. The first cup that was filled, being presented to the king, he ordered it to be given to another person; the second was also presented to him, and he drank it; the third was offered to Captain Cook. Afterwards a cup was given to several others, till the liquor was exhausted; and, though not half the company partook of it, no one appeared in the least satisfied. Each cup, as it was emptied, was thrown upon the ground whence it was taken up, and carried to be filled again. All this time the chief, and his whole circle, sat with a great deal of gravity, hardly speaking a syllable to each other.

All this while we were in expectation of seeing the mourning ceremony begin, when to our great surprize, as soon as the *kava* was drank out, they all rose up, and dispersed; and Poulaho informed us, he was now ready to attend us to the ships.

We had sometimes seen the drinking of *kava*

at other islands, but no where so frequent as here. The *kava* is a species of pepper, which they esteem a valuable article, and cultivate for this purpose, carefully defending the young plants from any injury; and it is usually planted about their houses. It does not often exceed the height of a man, though they are sometimes seen much higher. It has large heart-shaped leaves, and jointed stalks.

Only the root of the *kava* is used at the Friendly Islands: after being dug up, it is given to the servants, who, breaking it in pieces, scrape the dirt off, and each chews his portion, which he afterwards spits into a piece of plantain leaf. Those, who are to prepare the liquor, collect these mouthfuls together, and deposit them in a large wooden bowl, adding a sufficient quantity of water to make it of a proper strength. It is then well mixed up with the hands, and wrung hard, in order to make it productive of as much liquid as possible.

About a quarter of a pint of this beverage is usually put into each cup. It has no perceptible effect upon these people, who use it so frequently; but, on some of ours, it operated like our spirits occasioning intoxication, or rather stupefaction.

The mourning ceremony being over, we left *Mooa*, and set out on our return to the ships. Rowing down the inlet, we met with two canoes returning from fishing. *Poulaho* ordered them to approach him, and took from them every fish and shell. He afterwards stopped two other canoes,

ca
ga
by
do
no
till
tho
but
H
that
islan
let;
foun
is qu
as a
ducti
W
was i
durin
been
tafaih
ken th
Capra
ces wh
Incline
expect
genera
The
faulted
planks
fired on
posed t
The lat

canoes, searched them, and found nothing. He gave us some of the fish, and the rest were sold by his servants on board the ship. Proceeding down the inlet, we overtook a large sailing canoe, when every person on board her sat down till we had passed; even the man who steered, though he could not possibly manage the helm, but in a standing posture.

Having been informed, by Poulahou and others, that there was some good water at Onevy, a small island, about a league off the mouth of the inlet; we landed there, in order to taste it, and found it to be extremely brackish. This island is quite in a natural state, and only frequented as a fishing-place; having nearly the same productions as Palmerston's Island.

When we returned to the ship, Captain Cook was informed that every thing had been quiet during his absence; not a single theft having been committed; of which, Teenou and Futafaihe, the King's brother, who had undertaken the management of his countrymen in the Captain's absence, boasted not a little. This evinces what power the chiefs have when they are inclined to execute it; which is not often to be expected; for whatever was stolen from us, was generally conveyed to them.

The next day, six or eight of the natives assaulted some of our people who were sawing planks; in consequence of which they were fired on by the sentry; one of them was supposed to be wounded, and three were taken. The latter were confined, till night, when they

were punished, and set at liberty. After this, their behaviour was very decent and circum-spect; occasioned, as we imagined, by the man being wounded: for, till this time, they had only *heard* of the effect of fire-arms, but now they had *felt* it. We were not mistaken in our conjecture, for Mr King, and Mr Anderson, in an excursion they took into the country, met with the very man, and found indubitable marks of his having been wounded with a musket-ball.

Nothing worthy of notice happened at the ships for two days; we shall therefore fill up that interval with an account of Mr Anderson's excursion, above-mentioned. On Monday the 30th of June, Mr King, and he, accompanied Futtafaihe as visitors to his house, which is not far from that of his brother Poulaho, at Mooa. Soon after they arrived, a largish hog was killed, which was effected by repeated strokes upon the head. The hair was then curiously scraped off, with the sharp edge of pieces of split bamboo, and the entrails taken out by the same simple instrument. Previous to this, an oven had been prepared, which is a large hole dug in the earth, the bottom of which is covered with stones, about the size of a man's fist, which are made red hot by kindling a fire over them; then they wrapt up some of these stones in leaves of the bread-fruit tree, with which they filled the hog's belly; stuffing in a quantity of leaves to prevent their falling out, and thrusting a plug of the same kind in the anus. This being done, the carcase was placed upon some sticks laid a-
cross

cro
lea
rou
fed
the
T
ing
able
At a
toa-
nate
havin
not l
mool
were
On
baked
some
yams.
the m
mann
Tho'
the w
took a
partak
tafaihe
morsel
Din
and hi
Poulah
They f
of the f
Upon o

cross the stones, and covered with plantain-leaves. The earth was afterwards dug up all round; and the oven being thus effectually closed, the operation of baking required no further aid.

They afterwards amused themselves by walking about the country, but saw nothing remarkable, except a fiatooka of about thirty feet high. At a small distance, there was a number of cotoa-trees, on which were vast quantities of *Ternate* bats, making a most horrible noise. Not having their muskets at that time, they could not kill any of them, but some, taken at Annamooka, measured almost a yard, when the wings were extended.

On their return to Futtasaihe's house, the baked hog was produced, accompanied with some cocoa-nuts, and several baskets of baked yams. The person who prepared the hog in the morning, now cut it up in a very masterly manner, with a knife made of split bamboo. Tho' the weight of it was at least fifty pounds, the whole was placed before them; when they took a small part, and desired the rest might be partaken of by the people sitting round. Futtasaihe could hardly be prevailed upon to eat a morsel.

Dinner being ended, they went, with him, and his attendants, towards the spot where Poulaho's mourning ceremony was performed. They saw nothing but a kind of continuation of the same solemn rites, by way of condolence. Upon enquiring upon whose account it was now transacted,

transacted, they were informed, that it was in memory of a chief who had long since died at Vavaoo; that they had practised it ever since, and should continue to do so for a considerable length of time to come.

They were entertained, in the evening, with a pig for supper, dressed like the hog; and, like that, accompanied with yams and cocoa-nuts. When the supper was over, a large quantity of cloth was brought for them to sleep in; but they were disturbed in their repose, by a singular instance of luxury, in which their men of consequence indulge themselves; that of being thumped or beat while they are asleep. Two women, who sat by Futtafaihe, performed this operation, which they call *tooge, tooge*, by striking his body and legs, with both fists, till he fell asleep, and, with some intervals, continued it the whole night. The person being fast asleep, they abate a little of the strength and briskness of the beating; but, if they observe any appearance of his awakening, they resume it. In the morning they were informed that Futtafaihe's women relieved each other, and went alternately to sleep. Such a practice as this, in any other country, would be supposed to be destructive of all rest; but here, it operates like an opiate, and strongly shews what habit may effect.

They set out with Futtafaihe the next morning, and walked to the point, down the east-side of the bay. The country all along this side appeared to be well cultivated, but not so much

inclosed.

inc
vel
she
are
fish
wer
lute
T
stati
exer
that
place
of cl
jecte
the n
count
Cap
island
but, d
of Jul
to it,
paired
time j
got or
animal
main,
key-co
ed by
to Ota
for tha
We
moved
ready

inclosed as at Mooa. They found, that in travelling, Futtafaihe exercised a power, which shewed the great authority the principal men are invested with. To one place he sent for fish; and to another, for yams; and his orders were as readily obeyed, as if he had been absolute master of all the people's property.

They crossed the bay, in the evening, to their station, in a canoe procured by Futtafaihe, by exercising his authority in calling to the first that appeared; he had also a large hog at this place, and wanted them to accept of a bundle of cloath; but, the boat being small, they objected; and he ordered it to be taken to them the next day. Thus ends Mr Anderson's account of his excursion.

Captain Cook had prolonged his stay at this island, on account of the approaching eclipse; but, on looking at the micrometer, (on the 2d of July) he found some accident had happened to it, and that it was rendered useles, till repaired; which could not be done before the time it was intended to be used. We therefore got on board, this day, all the cattle and other animals, except those that were destined to remain. The Captain designed to have left a turkey-cock and hen, but two hens being destroyed by accident, and wishing to carry the breed to Otaheite, he reserved the only remaining pair for that purpose.

We took up our anchor the next day, and moved the ships behind Pangimodoo, to be ready for the first favourable wind to take us through.

was in-
died at
r since,
derable
g, with-
nd, like
oa-nuts.
antity of
but they
gular in-
of con-
of being
p. Two
rmed this
y, by strik-
till he fell
ntinued it
fast asleep,
d briskness
ve any ap-
me it. In
at Futtafai-
nd went al-
as this, in
ed to be de-
perates like
habit may
next morn-
the east-side
this side ap-
ot so much
inclosed

through the narrows. The king, who was of our company one day at dinner, I observed took particular notice of the plates. This occasioned me to make him an offer of one, either of pewter or of earthen ware. He chose the first; and then began to tell us the several uses to which he intended to apply it. Two of them are so extraordinary, that I cannot omit mentioning them. He said, that whenever he should have occasion to visit any of the other islands, he would leave this plate behind him at Tongataboo, as a sort of representative, in his absence, that the people might pay it the same obeisance they do to himself in person. He was asked what had been usually employed for this purpose before he got this plate; and we had the satisfaction of learning from him, that this singular honour had been conferred on a wooden bowl in which he washed his hands. The other extraordinary use to which he meant to apply it in the room of his wooden bowl, was to discover a thief. He said, that when any thing was stolen, and the thief could not be found out, the people were all assembled together before him, when he washes his hands in water in this vessel; after which it was cleaned, and then the whole multitude advanced, one after another, and touched it in the same manner that they touch his foot, when they pay him obeisance. If the guilty person touched it, he died immediately upon the spot; not by violence, but by the hand of Providence; and if any one refused to touch it, his refusal

was

was
 mo
 of t
 some
 the
 half
 fore
 gain
 of th
 remai
 serve
 less to
 ciently
 The
 instrum
 board.
 care of
 the Cor
 to the
 had be
 stroyed
 upon th
 first visi
 partly f
 from so
 At pres
 any of t
 Mr A
 scription
 taboo, c
 the nati
 ference,
 east end

was a clear proof that he was the man. In the morning of Saturday the 5th of July, the day of the eclipse, the weather was cloudy, with some showers of rain. About nine o'clock, the sun broke out at small intervals for about half an hour, but was totally obscured just before the beginning of the eclipse. The sun again appeared at intervals till about the middle of the eclipse; but was seen no more during the remainder of the day, so that we could not observe the end. This disappointment was the less to be lamented, as the longitude was sufficiently determined by lunar observations.

The eclipse being over, we packed up the instruments and every thing was conveyed on board. None of the natives having taken any care of the three sheep allotted to Mareewagee, the Commodore ordered them to be carried back to the ships. He was apprehensive, that if they had been left there, they would probably be destroyed by dogs. These animals did not exist upon the island in 1773, when the Commodore first visited it; but there is now a plenty of them; partly from the breed left by him, and partly from some imported from an island, called *Feejee*. At present, however, the dogs have not got into any of the Friendly Islands, except Tongataboo.

Mr Anderson has given us the following description of this island. Amsterdam, Tongataboo, or Tonga (as it is sometimes called by the natives) is about twenty-leagues in circumference, rather oblong, though broadest at the east end, and its greatest length is from east to west.

west. The south shore is straight, consisting of coral rocks of about eight or ten feet high, terminating perpendicularly, except in some few places, where there are sandy beaches. The west end is about five or six miles broad and has a shore like that of the south side; but the north side is environed with shoals and islands; and the east side is, most probably like the south.

This island may, with propriety, be called a low one; the only eminent part, to be observed from a ship, is the south-east point, though many gently rising and declining grounds are perceivable by those who are on shore. Though the general appearance of the country does not exhibit that beautiful kind of landscape, produced by a variety of hills and vallies, rivulets, and lawns, yet it conveys an idea of the most exuberant fertility. The surface, at a distance, seems entirely clothed with trees of various sizes: but the tall cocoa-palms raise their tufted heads high above the rest, and are a noble ornament to any country that produces them. The boogoo, which is a species of the fig, is the largest sized tree upon the island; and the most common bushes and small trees, on the uncultivated spots, are the pandanus, the faitanoc, several sorts of hibiscus, and a few others.

The climate of Tongataboo, from the situation towards the tropic is more variable than in countries far within that line; though that might, perhaps, be occasioned by the season of the year, which was now the winter solstice. The winds, are generally from some point be-

tween

tw
tin
we
fro
he
aff
at
by
niv
A
islan
self
ance
pebb
stone
and
ther
in ma
face,
depth
loose
rotter
Th
island
variet
being
shadd
plante
Of
and fo
pound
ceedin
Vor

tween south and east. The wind, indeed, sometimes veers to the north-east, or even north-west, but never continues long, nor blows strong from thence, though often accompanied with heavy rain, and close sultry weather.

The vegetable productions are never so much affected, respecting the foliage, as to shed it all at once; but every leaf, as it falls, is succeeded by another, which causes the appearance of universal spring.

A coral rock appears to be the basis of the island, that being the only sort that presents itself on the shore. There was not the appearance of any other stone, except some small blue pebbles about the *fiatookas*, and the smooth black stone, of which the natives make their hatchets; and these have, perhaps, been brought from other islands in the neighbourhood. Though, in many places, the coral projects above the surface, the soil is, in most parts, of a considerable depth. In cultivated places, it is generally of a loose black colour, seemingly produced by the rotten vegetables.

The principal of the cultivated fruits in this island, are plantains, of which they have fifteen varieties; the Jambu, and the eeevee; the latter being a kind of plum; and vast quantities of shaddocks, as often found in a natural state as planted.

Of yams there are two sorts; one black, and so large as to weigh from twenty to thirty pounds; the other white and long, seldom exceeding a pound in weight. There is a large

root, called kappe; another like our white potatoes, called mawhaha; the taloo, and the jeejee.

They have vast numbers of cocoa-nut-trees, and three other sorts of palms. One is called becco, growing almost as high as the cocoa-tree, and having very large leaves, plaited like a fan. The other is a kind of cabbage-tree, much resembling the cocoa, but rather thicker. A third sort is called ongo-ongo; it seldom grows higher than five or six feet. Plenty of excellent sugar-cane is cultivated here; also gourds, bamboo, turmeric, and a species of fig, called matte; but the catalogue of uncultivated plants is too large to be enumerated.

There are no quadrupeds in this island, but hogs, dogs, and a few rats. Fowls of a large breed are domesticated here.

Among the birds, are parrots, and parroquets, tuckoos, king-fishers, and a bird of the thrush kind, of a dull green colour, which is the only singing bird we could find here; but it compensates in a great degree, for the want of others, by the force and melody of its voice.

Among the other land birds, are rails about the size of a pigeon, of a variegated grey colour; a black sort with reddish eyes; large violet coots, with red bald crowns; two sorts of fly-catchers; a small swallow; and three sorts of pigeons.

Of water-fowl, are the ducks seen at Annamooka; tropic birds; blue and white herons; noddies; white terns; a new species of a leaden colour: a small bluish curlew: and a large spotted plover.

Among

tri
ab
wh
also
and
ful
spid
who
T
risty
the
wive
cores
ston's
devil
Th
the re
mer
other
tic co
Et.
rious
veral
Th
not si
rows
and t
fore u
days
have
Th
sent a

Among the animals of the reptile, or insect tribe, are sea-snakes, (tho' often seen on shore), about three foot long, with alternate black and white circles: some scorpions, and centipedes: also green guanoes, about eighteen inches long, and two smaller sorts. Here are some beautiful moths and butterflies, and some very large spiders; together with others, making, in the whole, about fifty different sorts of insects.

Though the sea abounds with fish, the variety is less than might be imagined: those in the greatest plenty are mullets, silver-fish, old wives, parrot-fish, soles, leather-jackets, albicores, bonnetos, cele like those about Palmerston's Island, rays, a sort of pike, and some devil-fish.

There are an endless variety of shell fish about the reefs and shoals; among which are the hammer oyster; a large indented oyster, and many others; but none of the common sort; a gigantic cockle; panamas; cones; pearl-shell oysters, &c. Also several sorts of sea-eggs; many curious star-fish; crabs; cray-fish: &c. and several sorts of sponge.

Though we were now ready to sail, we had not sufficient day-light to turn through the narrows; the morning flood falling out too early, and the evening flood too late. We were therefore under a necessity of waiting two or three days, unless we should be fortunate enough to have a leading wind.

This delay gave us an opportunity to be present at a public solemnity, to which the king had

had invited us, and which was to be performed on the 8th. He and all the people of consequence repaired to Mooa on the 7th, where the solemnity was to be exhibited. Several of us followed them the next morning. Youlaho had informed us, that his son was now to be initiated into certain privileges; one of which was, that of eating with his father; an honour he had not hitherto enjoyed.

About eight o'clock in the morning we arrived at Mooa, where we found the king, with a number of attendants sitting before him, within a small dirty enclosure. They were, as usual, busied in preparing a bowl of *kava*. As this was not liquor for us, we went to pay a visit to some of our friends, and to observe what preparations were making for the ceremony, which was soon expected to begin.

About ten o'clock, the people assembled in a large area before the *malae*, or great house. At the end of a road, opening into this area, stood several men with spears and clubs, incessantly reciting short sentences, in mournful accents, which conveyed an idea of distress. This was continued about an hour; during which time, many people came down the road, each having a yam tied to the middle of a pole, which they laid down before those who continued repeating the sentences. At length, the king and prince arrived, and seated themselves upon the area; and we were requested to sit down by them, to take off our hats, and to untie our hair. The bearers of the yams having all entered,

formed
of confe-
sore, the
al of us
who had
e. initiat-
ich was,
nour he

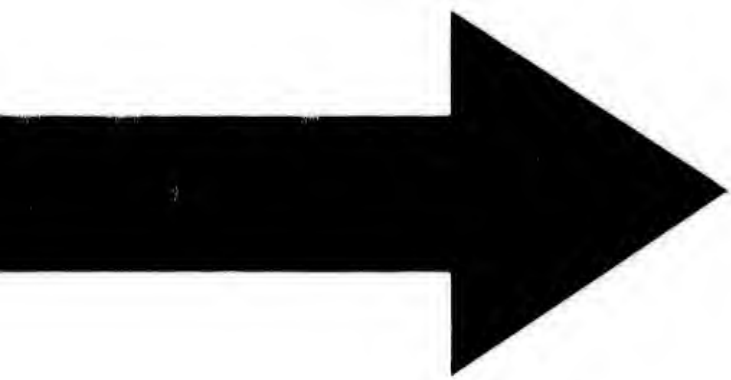
g we ar-
ing, with
ini, with-
e, as usu-

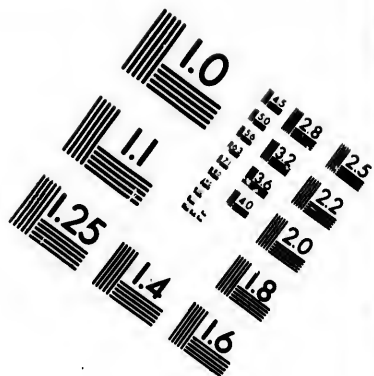
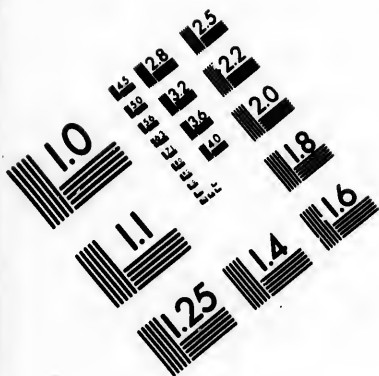
As this
a visit to
what pre-
ony, which

mbléd in a
eat house.

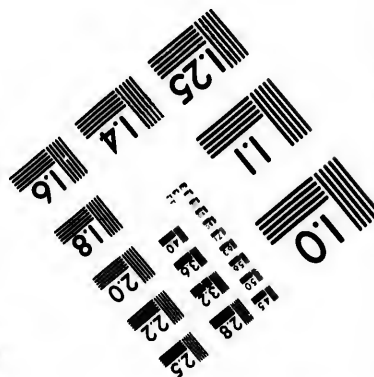
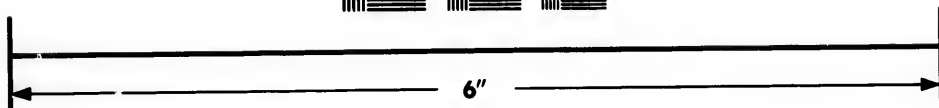
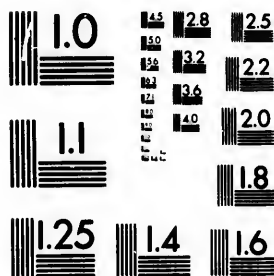
this area,
ubs, inces-
ournful ac-
efs. This
ing which
road, each
ole, which
tinued re-
e king and
upon the
down by
untie our
ing all en-
tered,







**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.5
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0

10
01
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20



THE NATALIE A CEREMONY IN HONOUR OF THE KING'S SON IN TONGATABOO.

to
w
to
to
ph
by
co
di
ff
wa
ing
chi
fo
giv
us,
ing
hou
of a
the
to t
pos
the
and
mul
wou
fear
mon
we
Coo
to f
very

tered, each pole was taken up between two men, who carried it over their shoulders. They afterwards formed themselves into companies, of ten or twelve each, and marched across the place, with a rapid pace, each company headed by a man who had a club or spear, and defended, on the right, by several others, armed with different weapons. About two hundred and fifty persons walked in the procession, which was closed by a man carrying on a perch a living pigeon.

Ormai was desired by Captain Cook to ask the chief where the yams were to be carried, with so much solemnity; but he seemed unwilling to give us the information we required; some of us, therefore, followed the procession, seemingly contrary to his inclination.

They stopped before a *marai* or *fiatoko* of one house standing upon a mount, about a quarter of a mile from where they first assembled. Here they deposited the yams, and gathered them into bundles; but for what purpose, we could not possibly learn. Our presence seeming to give them offence or uneasiness, we quitted them, and returned to Poulaho, who advised us to amuse ourselves by walking about, as nothing would be done for a considerable time. The fear of losing the sight of any part of the ceremony, prevented our being long absent. When we returned to the king, he desired Captain Cook to order the boat's crew not to presume to stir from the boat, for every thing would, very soon, be *taboo*; and if any of our people

THE NATIVE A CEREMONY IN HONOUR OF THE KING'S SON IN TONGATABOO.

or of their own, should be seen walking about, they would certainly be knocked down with clubs; nay *matord*; that is, killed. He also informed us, that we could not be present at the ceremony; but that we should be placed in such a situation, as to be able to see every thing that passed. Our dress was particularly objected to, and we were told, that, to qualify us to be present, we must be naked as low as the breast, and our hats taken off, and our hair untied. Omai readily agreed to conform to these requisites, and immediately began to strip; but other objections were then started, and he was excluded equally with ourselves.

Not relishing this restriction, the Captain stole out, to see what might now be going forward. Very few people, however, were to be seen, except those who were dressed to attend the ceremony; some having in their hands small poles, about four feet in length, to the under part of which were fastened two or three other small sticks, about six inches long. These men were going towards the *morai*. Captain Cook took the same road, and was frequently stopped by them, all crying out *tahas*. However he ventured to go forward till he came in sight of the *morai*, and of the people sitting before it. He was now strongly urged to go back, and, not knowing what might be the consequence of a refusal, he complied. He had observed, that those who carried the poles, passed the *morai*; and guessing, from this circumstance, that something was transacting beyond it he had some thoughts

though
this pur
by thro
putting
shake o
lase, wh
afterwar
but he i
who hae
him. I
came wi
ka or mo
people w
just befo
which th
he could
pany fro
thither;
The m
tained in
they quit
off in pro
pair carry
poles on t
that the f
poles; we
they were
atically.
placed on
pole, as if
the weight
they all f
This proce

thoughts of advancing, by making a round for this purpose; but he was so narrowly observed by three men, that he had no opportunity of putting his design in execution. In order to shake off these fellows, he returned to the *malass*, where he had parted from the king, and afterwards made an elopement a second time; but he instantly met with the same three men, who had doubtless received instructions to watch him. He paid no attention to them, till he came within sight of the king's principal *fiatoola* or *morai*; before which a great number of people were sitting, being those whom he had just before seen pass by the other *morai*, from which this was but a little distant. Seeing that he could observe the proceedings of this company from the king's plantation, he repaired thither, accompanied by several of his people.

The number of persons at the *fiatoola*, continued increasing for some time; and at length, they quitted their sitting posture, and marched off in procession. They walked in pairs, every pair carrying between them, one of the small poles on their shoulders. We were informed, that the small pieces of sticks, fastened to the poles; were yams; it is therefore probable, that they were meant to represent this root emblematically. The hindmost man of each couple placed one of his hands to the middle of the pole, as if it were not strong enough to carry the weight that hung to it, and under which they all seemed to bend, as they proceeded. This procession consisted of one hundred and eight

eight pairs, and principally men of rank. Having seen them all pass, we repaired to Poulaho's house, and saw him going out. We were not permitted to follow him; but were immediately conducted to the place allotted to us, behind a fence adjoining to the area of the *fatooka*, where the yams had been deposited in the morning.

Arriving at our station, we saw two or three hundred people, sitting on the grass, near the end of the road opening into the area of the *morai*; and others were continually joining them. At length, arrived a few men, each carrying some small poles and branches, or leaves of the cocoa-nut tree. As soon as they appeared, an old man seated himself in the road, and pronounced a long oration in a serious majestic tone. He then retired, and the others advancing to the middle of the area, began to erect a small shed or hut; employing, for that purpose, the materials already mentioned. Their work being finished, they all squatted down, for a moment, before it, then rose up, and joined the rest of the company. Poulaho's son arrived soon after, preceded by four or five men. After them appeared about twelve or fourteen women of the first rank, advancing slowly in pairs, each pair carrying between them a narrow piece of white cloth, about two or three yards in length. They approached the prince, squatted down before him, and wrapped some of the pieces of the cloth round his body; they then rose up, and retired in the same order, to some distance on

his

his le
laho
four
fat do
tance
ted hi
the sh
placed
canopy
his bac
about
from a
and, r
down f
the fam
them fu
green b
ced tow
seconds,
ed; and
their br
wards t
The g
the othe
they ent
right of
selves on
heavy bu
the princ
the same
most ser
long the
rous ban

his left, where they seated themselves. Poulaho now made his appearance, preceded by four men, walking two and two abreast, and sat down on his son's left hand, at a small distance from him. The young prince then quitted his first position, and seated himself under the shed, with his attendants; many others placed themselves on the grass before this royal canopy. The prince sat facing the people, with his back to the *morai*. Three companies of about ten or a dozen men in each, started up from among the crowd, soon after each other, and, running hastily to the opposite side, sat down for a few seconds; and then returned, in the same manner, to their former stations. To them succeeded two men, each having a small green branch in his hand, who rose and advanced towards the prince, sitting down, for a few seconds, three different times as they approached; and retired in the same manner, inclining their branches to each other as they sat. Afterwards two other repeated the same ceremony.

The grand procession, which marched from the other *morai*, now began to come in. As they entered the area, they proceeded to the right of the shed, and having prostrated themselves on the grass, deposited their pretended heavy burthens, (the poles), and faced round to the prince. They then rose up, and retired in the same order, closing their hands with the most serious aspect, and seated themselves along the front of the area. While the numerous band were entering, and depositing their poles,

poles, three men, who sat with the prince, continued pronouncing separate sentences, in a mournful melancholy tone.

A profound silence then ensued for a short time, after which a man who sat in the front of the area, began a kind of oration, during which, at several different times, he broke one of the poles, which had been brought in. Having concluded his oration, the people, sitting before the shed, separated, to make a lane, through which the prince and his attendants passed, and the assembly closed.

Satisfied with what they had already seen, some of our party now returned to the ships, but Captain Cook, and some more of the officers, remained at Moota, to see the conclusion of the solemnity, which was not to be till the day following. The small poles, which had been brought by those who walked in procession, being left on the ground, after the crowd had dispersed, the Commodore examined them, and found that, to the middle of each, two or three small sticks were tied, as has been related. They were probably intended as only artificial representations of small yams.

Our supper, consisting of fish and yams, was got ready about seven o'clock. The king supped with us, and drank so freely of brandy and water, that he retired to bed with a sufficient dose. We continued the whole night in the same house with him and his attendants.

All, except Poutabo himself, rose at day-break; soon after which, a woman, one of those

who

who g
in, and
gan the
ed upon
with h
instead
ry effec
Capt
the prin
precedin
the king
distance
him with
sitting b
There w
bout the
longed to
We th
crowded
ly of old
paring, a
were intr
to our sha
va drinke
We aft
ral other
morning
Returnin
a retired h
ing on his
arose again
again lay
and waited

who generally attended upon the chief, came in, and, sitting down by him, immediately began the same operation which had been practised upon Futafaha, tapping or beating gently, with her clinched fists, on his thighs. This, instead of adding to his repose, had the contrary effect, and he awoke.

Captain Cook and Omai now paid a visit to the prince, who had parted from us early the preceding evening; for he did not lodge with the king, but in apartments of his own, at some distance from his father's house. We found him with a circle of boys, about his own age, sitting before him; and an old man and woman. There were others of both sexes, employed about their necessary affairs, who probably, belonged to his household.

We then returned to the king, who had a crowded levee before him, consisting principally of old men. While a bowl of *kava* was preparing, a baked hog and yams, smoking hot, were introduced; the greatest part of which fell to our share, for these people especially the *kava* drinkers, eat very little in a morning.

We afterwards walked out, and visited several other chiefs; all of whom were taking their morning draught, or they had already taken it. Returning to the king, we found him asleep in a retired hut, with two women tapping or striking on his breast. About eleven o'clock he arose again, and ate some fish and yams, and again lay down to sleep. We now left him, and waited on the prince, with a present of cloth,

cloth, beads and other articles. There was a sufficient quantity of cloth to make him a complete suit, and he was immediately clad in his new habiliments. Proud of his dress, he first went to exhibit himself to his father, and then conducted Captain Cook to his mother, with whom were about a dozen other women of a very respectable appearance. Here the prince changed his apparel, and made Captain Cook a present of two pieces of the cloth which had been manufactured in the island.

It was now about noon, when, by appointment, the Captain repaired to the palace to dinner; which was soon after served up, and consisted of two pigs and some yams. The drowsy monarch was roused to partake of what he had appointed for our entertainment. Two mullets, and some shell-fish, were introduced, as if intended for his separate portion. But he added it to our fare, sat down with us, and made a very hearty meal.

Dinner being over, we were informed that the ceremony would soon begin, and were strictly enjoined not to venture out. The Commodore had resolved, however, to peep no longer from behind the curtain, but, if possible, to mix with the actors themselves. With this view he walked towards the *morai*, the scene of the solemnity. He was frequently desired to return, but he paid no regard to the admonitions he received, and was permitted to pass on. When arrived at the *morai*, he saw a number of men seated on the side of the area. A few

were

were
men
the m
the m
to sit
he sat
dles, c
ed to
rows.
cerning
time to
turned
and ma
ed, tha
mention
that pro
around;
much ap
desired
ing him
to uncov
he readi
longer se
The p
length ap
ing day.
shed, two
repeating,
and put th
gan their
ran backw
in the for
two men,
VOL. I.

were also sitting on the opposite side, and two men in the middle, with their faces turned to the *morai*. When Captain Cook had got into the midst of the first company, he was desired to sit down, which he accordingly did. Where he sat, there were lying a number of small bundles, composed of cocoa-nut-leaves, and fastened to sticks made into the form of hand-barrs. All the information he could get concerning them was, that they were *taboo*. From time to time, one or another of the company turned to those who were coming to join us, and made a short speech, in which we remarked, that the word *areetee*, (king) was generally mentioned. Something was said by one man that produced loud bursts of laughter from all around; others of the speakers, were also much applauded. The Captain was frequently desired to leave the place; but, at length, finding him determined to stay, they requested him to uncover, his shoulders as theirs were. This he readily complied with, and then they no longer seemed uneasy at his presence.

The prince, the women, and the king, at length appeared, as they had done the preceding day. The prince being placed under the *morai*, two men, each with a piece of mat, came, repeating something in a very serious strain, and put them about him. The people now began their operations, and different companies ran backward and forward across the area, as in the former day. Presently afterwards, the two men, in the middle of the area, made a

short speech, and then the whole company rose up, and placed themselves before the shed in which the prince, and three or four men were seated. One of the company who seemed very desirous of obliging Captain Cook, procured him such a situation, that if he could have made use of his eyes, nothing could have escaped him. But it was necessary to have a demure countenance and downcast looks.

The procession soon after arrived, as on the preceding day; a pole, with a cocoa-nut-leaf plaited round the middle of it, being carried on the shoulders of every two persons. These were deposited with the same ceremonies as on the day before. After this succeeded another procession, composed of men, who brought baskets, made of palm-leaves, such as are generally used by this people to carry provisions in. A third procession followed, in which a variety of small fish, each placed at the end of a forked stick, were brought. An old man, who sat on the prince's right hand, without the shed, received the baskets; each of which he kept in his hand, making a short speech or prayer; then laying that aside, he called for another, repeating the same kind of prayer; he proceeded in this manner till he had gone through the whole number of baskets. Two men, who, till this time, had in their hands green branches, and were seated on the left, received the fish one by one, as they were presented to them on the forked sticks. The first fish they laid down on their right, and the second on their left. The third being presented,

pres
hind
did a
every
hind,
tion,
hold
What
and le
sion o
touchi
(very
through
he had
him;
The pe
fish, d
manner
had bee
of the l
or pray
signal b
paces,
prince.
look beh
by this
prince h
and from
honour o
roasted y
that purp
Soon a
kind of f

presented, a stoutish man, who was seated behind the other two, endeavoured to seize it, as did also the other two at the same time. Thus every fish was contended for; but the man behind, on account of his disadvantageous situation, got only pieces; for he never quitted his hold till the fish was torn out of his hand. What the others got, were laid on the right and left. At last the person behind got possession of a whole fish, the other two not even touching it. Upon this, the word *marcai*, (very good), was pronounced in a low voice throughout the whole crowd. It appeared, that he had now done all that was expected from him; for he did not contend for the other fish. The persons who brought in these baskets and fish, delivered them sitting; and in the same manner, the poles carried in the first procession, had been placed upon the ground. At the close of the last procession, there was some speaking or praying by different persons. Then, on a signal being given, we all rose up, ran several paces, and sat down, with our backs to the prince. The Commodore was requested not to look behind him; but he was not discouraged, by this injunction, from facing about. The prince had now turned his face to the *morai*, and from that moment he was admitted to the honour of eating with his father; and a piece of roasted yam was presented to each of them for that purpose.

Soon after, we all turned about, forming a kind of semicircle before the prince, and leaving

an open space between us. Presently some men advanced towards us, two and two, bearing large poles upon their shoulders, waving their hands as they proceeded, and making a noise like singing. When they came near us, they made a shew of walking quick, without advancing a single step. Several men, armed with large sticks, immediately started from the crowd, and ran towards the new visitors, but they instantly made off, having thrown down the poles from their shoulders. The others attacked the poles, and having beat them most unmercifully, returned to their places. The former as they ran off, gave the challenge used here in wrestling; and, in a short time, some lubby fellows came from the same quarter, repeating the challenge as they approached. These were resisted by a company, who arrived at that instant from the opposite side. Both parties, however, returned to their own quarter, after having paraded about the area for some minutes. Afterwards for the space of half an hour, wrestling and boxing-matches succeeded. Speeches were then delivered by two men, who seated themselves before the prince, with which the solemnity ended, and the whole assembly broke up.

In vain did we endeavour to find out the purport of the solemnity, called *Natche*. All the answer we received to our enquiries, was *taboo*; which, as has been already observed, is applied to many things. There was a mysterious solemnity in the whole transaction; and from the manner of performing it, as well as the place

where

where
there
on.
dress a
that ou
that wa
cross-le
ther.
the chi
ed in th
the cele
evidenti
selves ad
Being, u
From
It may b
few yam
not be m
was intin
consecrat
We w
space of t
ed a more
casion, th
vaoo, and
to the chi
erificing t
people.
enquiring
practice, w
sary part o
the Deity
The day
1810

where it was performed, it was evident, that there was a mixture of religion in the institution. Upon no occasion had they regarded our dress and deportment; but now it was required, that our hair should now about our shoulders; that we should be uncovered to the waist; sit cross-legged; and have our hands locked together. It should be observed also, that none but the chief people, and those who were concerned in the ceremony, were admitted to assist in the celebration of it. All these circumstances evidently pointed out that they supposed themselves acting under the inspection of a Supreme Being, upon this occasion.

From the above account of the present *natche*, it may be considered as merely figurative. The few yams which were seen the first day, could not be meant as a general contribution; and it was intimated to us, that they were a portion consecrated to the *Otaoa*, or Divinity.

We were, however informed, that in the space of three months, there would be represented a more important solemnity; on which occasion, the tribute of Tongataboo, Hapaec, Vavaoo, and all the other islands, would be brought to the chief, and more awfully confirmed, by sacrificing ten human victims from amongst the people. A horrid solemnity indeed! On our enquiring into the occasion of so barbarous a practice, we were informed, that it was a necessary part of the *Natche*; and that, if omitted, the Deity would destroy their king.

The day was far spent before the breaking up

Vigiboo

of the assembly; and as we were at some distance from the ships, we were impatient to set out from Mooa. Taking leave of Poulaho, he pressed us earnestly to stay till the next day, in order to be present at a funeral ceremony. The wife of Mareewagee, his mother-in-law, had lately died; and, on account of the *natche*, her corps had been carried on board a canoe in the *lagoon*. Poulaho told Captain Cook, that when he had paid the last offices to her, he would attend him to Eooa; but if he did not chuse to wait, that he would follow him thither. He would gladly have seen this ceremony, had not the tide been now favourable. The wind too, which had been very boisterous, was now moderate and settled. Besides, we were informed, the funeral ceremonies would continue five days, which, as the ships lay in such a situation, that we could not get to sea at pleasure, was too long a time to stay. The Captain, however, assured the king, that if he did not immediately sail, he would visit him again the next day. Whereupon we all took leave of him, and arrived at our ships about eight o'clock in the evening.

While the Commodore was attending the *natche*, at Mooa, he ordered the horses, bull, and other cattle, to be brought thither, thinking they would be safer there, than at a place that would be, in a great measure deserted, the moment after our departure. Besides, we had left with our friends here, a young English boar, and three young English sows. They were ex-

ceedingly

ceeding
ing tha
breed,
two ral
which
failed.
to these
boo is a
extreme
We we
o'clock i
turned th
isles calle
at first, s
to the lag
that from
of the lag
sions stro
these disa
exceeds t
there can
rocks, in
where a sh
pools. T
design he
when we v
wards of
ral. He
ceremony,
ous a situat
the two tid
out eiber
suddenly g

ceedingly desirous of them, naturally supposing that they would greatly improve their own breed, which is but small. Feenou also got two rabbits from us, a buck and a doe, from which young ones were produced before we sailed. If the cattle succeed, the acquisition to these islands will be great; and as Tongataboo is a fine level country, the horses will be extremely useful.

We weighed anchor on the 10th, about eight o'clock in the morning, and, with a steady gale, turned through the channel, between the small isles called Makahaa and Monooafai. The flood, at first, set strong, in our favour, till leading up to the lagoon, where the east-ward flood meets that from the west. This, with the indraught of the lagoon, and of the shoals before it, occasions strong riplings and whirlpools. Besides these disadvantages, the depth of the channel exceeds the length of a cable; consequently there can be no anchorage, except close to the rocks, in forty and forty-five fathoms water, where a ship would be exposed to the whirlpools. The Captain, therefore, abandoned the design he had formed of coming to an anchor, when we were through the narrows, and afterwards of making an excursion to see the funeral. He rather chose to be absent from that ceremony, than to leave the ships in so dangerous a situation. We plied to wind-ward, between the two tides, till it was near high water, without either gaining or losing an inch, when we suddenly got into the influence of the eastern tide,

ride, where we expected the ebb to run strong to the east-ward in our favour. It proved, however, very inconsiderable. Convinced that we could not get to sea before it was dark, we anchored under the shore of Tongataboo, in forty-five fathoms water. The Discovery dropped anchor under our stern; but drove off the bank before the anchor took hold, and did not recover it till about midnight.

After remaining in this station till eleven o'clock the next day, we weighed and plied to the eastward. At ten o'clock at night we weathered the east end of the island, and stretched away for Middleburg, or Eooa (as the inhabitants call it) where we anchored, about eight the next morning, in forty fathoms water; being nearly the same place where the Captain took his station in 1773, when he named it *English Road*.

As soon as we had anchored, Taooa the chief, and several of the natives, visited us on board, and seemed rejoiced at our arrival. This Taooa had been Captain Cook's *Tayo* when he was here in 1773, and therefore they were not strangers to each other. The Captain accompanied him on shore in search of fresh water, the procuring of which was the chief object that brought him to Eooa. He had heard at Tongataboo of a stream here, which ran from the hills into the sea; but this was not the case at present. He was conducted to a brackish spring, among rocks, between low and high water mark. When they perceived that we

did not
way in
we found
attended
to the sh
might be
than un
contente
received

Before
sic for ho
not procu
this island
the Cape
them to v
lighted wi
fortunate circ
they had b
the present
sent, it see
ing of thee

While w
had a very
lately seen,
scape. It is
we had le
which appe
ally toward
from this c
discover an
them; but
presents an
trees, in be

did not approve of this, we were shown a little way into the island; where, in a deep chasm, we found some excellent water; which, though attended with some trouble, might be conveyed to the shore, by means of spouts or troughs, that might be provided for that purpose: but rather than undertake that tedious task, the Captain contented himself with the supply the ships had received at Tongataboo.

Before he returned on board, he began a traffic for hogs and yams. Of the former, we could not procure many; but, of the latter, plenty. At this island we landed the ram and two ewes, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, and committed them to the care of Taofa, who seemed delighted with his charge. It was, perhaps a fortunate circumstance that Mareewagee, to whom they had been given, as before related, slighted the presents: as Eooa had no dogs upon it at present, it seemed to be a fitter place for the rearing of sheep than Tongataboo.

While we were lying at anchor, this island had a very different aspect from any that we had lately seen, and formed a most pleasing landscape. It is the highest of any we had seen since we had left New-Zealand, and from its top, which appears to be almost flat, declines gradually towards the sea. The other isles, which from this cluster, being level, the eye cannot discover any thing except the trees that cover them; but here the land rising gently upwards, presents an extensive prospect, where groves of trees, in beautiful disorder, are interspersed at irregular

irregular distances. Near the shore, it is quite shaded with a variety of trees, among which are erected the habitations of the natives; and to the right of where we were stationed, was one of the most extensive groves of cocoa-palms that we had ever seen.

In the afternoon of the 13th, a party of us ascending the highest part of the island, a little to the right of our ships, to have a perfect view of the country. Having advanced about half way up, we crossed a deep valley, the bottom and sides of which were clothed with trees. We found plenty of coral till we approached the summits of the highest hills; the soil near the top is, in general, a reddish clay; which, in many places, is very deep. On the most elevated part of the island we saw a round platform supported by a wall of coral stones. Our conductors informed us, that this mount had been raised by the direction of their chief; and that they met there, occasionally, to drink *káva*. They called it *Étobes*; by which name an erection was distinguished which we had seen at Tongataboo. At a small distance from it was a spring of most excellent water; and, about a mile lower down, a stream, which, we were told, ran into the sea when the rains were copious. We also discovered water in several small holes; and supposed that plenty might be found, by digging.

From this elevation we had a complete view of the whole island, except a small part to the south. The south-east side, from which the hills

hills we
with gre
sea; so t
the north
tufts of tre
a most de
view. W
enchanting
idea, that
the same cr
ed with cat
and that th
lent purpo
tions, woul
had not bee
besides the
isles, a spec
tree.

All, or m
were told,
boo: the inh
fals, to them
case at all th
mooka, whe
with some k
was much est
was tempted
chief of this
them; and h
ed the offer,
contrary by C
he thought h
native isle.

hills we were now upon are not far distant, rises with great inequalities, immediately from the sea; so that the plains and meadows lie all on the north-west side; which being adorned with tufts of trees, intermixed with plantations, form a most delightful landscape in every point of view. While Captain Cook was surveying this enchanting prospect, he enjoyed the pleasing idea, that some future navigators might, from the same eminence, behold these meadows stocked with cattle, brought by the ships of England; and that the completion of this single benevolent purpose, exclusive of all other considerations, would sufficiently prove that our voyages had not been useless. We found, on this height, besides the plants common on the neighbouring isles, a species of *acrosticum*, *melastoma*, and fern-tree.

All, or most of the land on this island, we were told, belonged to the chiefs of Tongataboo: the inhabitants being only tenants, or vassals, to them. This seemed, indeed, to be the case at all the neighbouring isles, except Annamooka, where some of the chiefs seemed to act with some kind of independence. Omai, who was much esteemed by Feenou and many others, was tempted with the offer of being appointed a chief of this island, if he would continue among them; and he seemed inclinable to have accepted the offer, had he not been advised to the contrary by Captain Cook, though not because he thought he would do better for himself in his native isle.

Returning

Returning from our country excursion, we heard that a party of the natives, in the quarter where our people traded, had struck one of their own people with a club, which fractured his skull, and afterwards, broke his thigh with the same instrument. No signs of life were remaining, when he was carried to a neighbouring house, but in a short time, he recovered a little. On our desiring to know the reason of such severity, we were informed, that he had been discovered in an indelicate situation with a woman who was *taboo'd*. We soon understood, however, that she was no otherwise *taboo'd* than by belonging to another person, who was superior in rank to her gallant. We discovered from this circumstance, how these people punish such infidelities. But the female sinner, as we were informed, has a much milder punishment for her misdemeanour, and only receives a remonstrance and a very slight beating.

Captain Cook, the next morning, planted a pine-apple, and sowed the seeds of melons, and other articles, in the chief's plantation. He had reason, indeed, to suppose, that his endeavours of this kind would not be fruitless; for a dish of turnips was, this day, served up at his dinner, which was the produce of the seeds he had left here in 1773.

The Captain having fixed upon the 15th for sailing, Taofa pressed him to stay a little longer, in order to receive a present which he had prepared for him. His intreaties, together with the daily expectation of receiving a visit from some

some of
to deser
ceived fr
of two li
fruit, wh
ther isles.
of the in
and, as w
numerous
islanders,
their pilfe
ing, were
in the latte
The divers
ed with th
dent happ
at least, pro
One of our
or thirty of
him down,
cloaths. He
ed two cand
on the chief
be restored,
livered up to
cerned at wh
cessary steps
were assemb
that most of
when they
meant to tak
insult, they
was soon deli

some of his friends at Tongataboo, induced him to defer his departure. The next day he received from the chief the present; consisting of two little heaps of yams, and a quantity of fruit, which seemed to be collected as at the other isles. On this occasion the greatest part of the inhabitants of the island had assembled; and, as we had many times experienced on such numerous meetings among their neighbouring islanders, it gave no small trouble to prevent their pilfering. Cudgelling, wrestling, and boxing, were exhibited for our entertainment; and in the latter, combatants of both sexes engaged. The diversions were intended to have been finished with the *bomai*, or night-dance; but an accident happened that either put a total stop to it, or at least, prevented our staying on shore to see it. One of our people was surrounded by twenty or thirty of the natives, some of whom knocked him down, stripped him, and carried off all his cloaths. Hearing of this, the Commodore seized two canoes, and a large hog; and insisted on the chief's not only causing the apparel to be restored, but also on the offenders being delivered up to him. Taofa seemed greatly concerned at what had happened, and took the necessary steps to satisfy him. The people who were assembled were so alarmed at this affair, that most of them immediately fled: However, when they were informed that the Captain meant to take no other measures to revenge the insult, they returned. One of the delinquents was soon delivered up to him, and a shirt and a

pair of trowsers restored. The remainder of the stolen goods not coming in before the evening, the Commodore was obliged to leave them, in order to go aboard; the sea running so high, that it was extremely difficult for the boats to get out of the creek even with day-light, and would be attended with much more danger in the dark. He came ashore again the next morning, bringing with him a present for Taoofoa, in return for what he had received from him. Being early, there were but few people at the landing place, and even those few not without their fears and apprehensions; but on the Captain's desiring Omai to assure them, that we did not mean to injure them; and having restored the canoes, and released the offender, who had been delivered up to him, they resumed their usual cheerfulness, and a large circle was presently formed, in which the chief and the principal men of the island took their respective places.

The remainder of the cloaths were at length brought in, but, having been torn off the man's back by pieces, they were not thought worth carrying on board, Taoofoa shared the present he had received with three or four other chiefs, reserving only a small part for himself. This donation so far exceeded their expectation, that a venerable old chief told the Captain, they were not deserving of it, considering how little he had received from them, and the ill treatment one of his people had met with. Captain Cook continued with them, till they had emptied their bowl of *kava*; and then, after paying for the hog,

hog, which
turned out
one of the
piece of
stem for
present:
We were
breeze a
Taoofoa,
found, o
ble had b
sides this
nishing s
Presently
the creek
ships. A
ducted by
ving but
considerab
informed,
which we
tions to th
hogs; and
would be
days. The
return to
reason to
but, being
sufficient i
ally, as we
visions to la
sides Taoofo
tity of yam

hog, which he had taken the day before, returned on board, in company with Taoofa, and one of Poulaho's servants, by whom he sent a piece of bar iron, as a parting mark of his esteem for that chief, that being as valuable a present as any he could possibly make.

We weighed soon after, and with a light breeze at south-east, stood out to sea, when Taoofa, and some other natives, left us. We found, on heaving up the anchor, that the cable had been much injured by the rocks. Besides this, we experienced, that a most astonishing swell rolls in there from the south-west. Presently we observed a sailing canoe entering the creek before which we had anchored our ships. A few hours after, a small canoe, conducted by four men, came off to us: for, having but very little wind, we were still at no considerable distance from the land. We were informed, by these men, that the sailing canoe, which we had seen arrive, had brought directions to the people of Eooa, to furnish us with hogs; and that the king, and the other chiefs, would be with us in the space of two or three days. They requested, therefore, that we would return to our former station. There was no reason to doubt the truth of this information; but, being now clear of the land, it was not a sufficient inducement to bring us back; especially, as we had, already, a sufficient stock of provisions to last us in our passage to Otaheite. Besides Taoofa's present, we received a large quantity of yams at Eooa, in exchange for nails &c.

and added considerably to our supply of hogs. Finding that we would not return, these people left us in the evening, as did some others, who had come off in two canoes, with cocoa-nuts and shaddocks, to barter for what they could get; their eagerness to possess more of our commodities, inducing them to follow us out to sea, and to continue their intercourse with us even to the last moment.

We have now taken leave of the Friendly Islands, and their inhabitants, after a cordial intercourse with the latter for between two and three months. Some differences, indeed, occasionally happened, on account of their natural propensity to thieving, though too frequently encouraged by the negligence and inattention of our people. These differences, however, were never attended with any fatal consequences; and few, belonging to our ships, parted from their friends without some regret.

‘The time employed among the natives of the Friendly Islands,’ says Captain Cook, ‘was not thrown away. We expended very little of our sea provisions; subsisting, in general, upon the produce of the islands, while we staid; and carrying away with us a quantity of refreshments sufficient to last till our arrival at another station where we could depend upon a fresh supply. I was not sorry, besides, to have had an opportunity of bettering the condition of these good people, by leaving several very useful animals among them; and, at the same time, those designed for Otahcite, received fresh strength in the

the pass
therefo
ing her
tional
ceived,
secution
season
has been
the reso
Iron
Axes, h
and files
and color
also in g
which ar
cially the
be purch
it should,
merely on
one time,
first arriv
willing to
when Fee
brought t
with the v
In retur
rated, all
duce may
by the Frie
grown to p
their pork
ferior in q
Good w

the pastures of Tongataboo. Upon the whole, therefore, the advantages we received, by touching here, were very great; and I had the additional satisfaction to reflect, that they were received, without retarding one moment, the prosecution of the great object of our voyage; the season for proceeding to the North, being, as has been already observed, lost, before I took the resolution of bearing away for these islands.

Iron tools are the best articles for traffic here. Axes, hatchets, nails of all sizes, knives, rasps, and files, are much demanded. Red cloth, white and coloured linen, looking-glasses and beads, are also in great estimation; but of the latter, those which are blue are preferred to all others, especially the white ones. A hog might, at any time, be purchased, by a string of large blue beads: it should, nevertheless, be observed, that articles, merely ornamental, may be highly esteemed at one time, and disregarded at another. On our first arrival at Annamooka, the people were unwilling to take them in exchange for fruit; but, when Feenou arrived, his approbation of them brought them into vogue, and stamped them with the value above-mentioned.

In return for the commodities just enumerated, all the refreshments that the islands produce may be procured. The yams, produced by the Friendly Islands, are excellent, and when grown to perfection, preserve well at sea: but their pork, plantains, and bread-fruit, are inferior in quality to the same articles at Otaheite.

Good water is scarce in these islands. It may

be found, indeed, in all of them, but not to serve the purposes of navigators; for either the situations are too inconvenient, or the quantities too inconsiderable. Whilst we lay at anchor under Kotoo, we were informed, that there was a stream of water at Kao, which ran from the mountains into the sea, on the south-west side of the Island. This intelligence may probably deserve the attention of future navigators.

We must include, under the denomination of Friendly Islands, not only the group at Hapae, but also those which have been discovered to the north, nearly under the same meridian, as well as some others under the dominion of Tongataboo, which is the capital, and seat of government.

From the best information we could receive, this archipelago is very extensive. One of the natives enumerated one hundred and fifty islands and Mr Anderson procured all their names. Sixty-one of them are marked upon our chart of the Friendly Islands, and upon the sketch of the harbour of Tongataboo. Keppel's and Boscawen's Islands, two of Captain Wallis's discoveries in 1765, are doubtless comprehended in Mr Anderson's list.

But the most considerable of all the islands that we heard of in this neighbourhood, are Hamoa, Vavaoo, and Feejee; each of which is larger than Tongataboo; but it does not appear that any European has ever yet seen any one of them.

Hamoa lies two days sail north-west from Vavaoo.

vaoo.
islands;
produce
freshme
ed. Pou
and the
Tongata
Feejee
west, ab
It about
fruits an
others; a
but not f
islands of
gataboo
and the i
much afr
body for
hands, to
ority to th
matter of
dered the
in the use
their savag
mies as th
It has b
first occa
but where
jee people
of plenty?
bitants of
the friendl
jee through

vaoo. It is said to be the largest of all their islands; affords harbours and good water, and produces, in abundance, all the articles of refreshment that are found at the places we visited. Poulaho frequently resides upon this island; and the people here are in high estimation at Tongataboo.

Feejee lies in the direction of north-west by west, about three days sail from Tongataboo. It abounds with hogs, dogs, fowls, and such fruits and roots as are to be found in any of the others, and is much larger than Tongataboo; but not subject to its dominion, as the other islands of the archipelago are. Feejee and Tongataboo often engage in war against each other and the inhabitants of the latter, are often so much afraid of this enemy, that they bend the body forward, and cover the face with their hands, to express the sense of their own inferiority to the Feejee men. This is, indeed, no matter of surprise, for those of Feejee have rendered themselves formidable, by their dexterity in the use of bows and slings; but more so, by their savage practice of eating such of their enemies as they kill in battle.

It has been insisted on, that extreme hunger first occasioned men to feed on human flesh; but where could be the inducement for the Feejee people to continue the practice in the midst of plenty? It is held in detestation by the inhabitants of Tongataboo, who seemed to cultivate the friendship of their savage neighbours of Feejee through fear; though they occasionally, venture

ture to skirmish with them on their own territory, and carry off large quantities of red feathers as trophies. When a profound peace reigns between the two islands, they have frequently intercourse together; tho' it is probable, they have not long been known to each other; or, it might be supposed that Tongataboo, and its neighbouring islands, would before this time, have been supplied with a breed of dogs, which are numerous at Feejee, and were not brought to Tongataboo, when Captain Cook first visited it in 1773.

The colour of the natives of Feejee was, at least, a shade darker than that of the inhabitants of the other Friendly Islands. We saw one of the natives of Feejee, who had his left ear slit, and the lobe so stretched, that it almost extended to his shoulder; which singularity had been observed by Captain Cook at other islands of the South Sea, during his second voyage. The Feejee men were much revered here; not only on account of their power and cruelty in war, but also for their ingenuity; for they greatly excel the inhabitants of Tongataboo in workmanship. Specimens were shewn us of their clubs and spears which were ingeniously carved. We were also shewn some of their beautifully chequered cloth, variegated mats, earthen pots, and other articles, all of which displayed a superiority in the execution.

Feejee, as has been already mentioned, is three days sail from Tongataboo; these people having no other method of discovering the distance from island to island, but by mentioning the

the tim
canoes.
some p
their c
log, fou
tle gale,
from th
as in ge
miles an
ever, is n
for when
no more
or ten or
morning
second, i
day, they
night, by
can only h
the winds
at that tin
they are c
intended p
The story
driven to
that those
ways lost.

The har
taboo is sup
these island
its capacity
we ran in
caution eve
ign that par

the time required for the voyage in one of their canoes. That this might be ascertained with some precision, Captain Cook sailed in one of their canoes, and by repeated trials with the log, found that she went close hauled, in a gentle gale, seven miles in an hour. He supposed from this, that they will sail, with such breezes as in general blow in their seas, seven or eight miles an hour on an average. Each day, however, is not to be reckoned at twenty-four hours; for when they talk of one day's sail, they mean no more than from the morning to the evening, or ten or twelve hours at the most. From the morning of the first day till the evening of the second, is, with them, two day's sail. In the day, they are guided by the sun; and, in the night, by stars. When these are obscured, they can only have recourse to the points from whence the winds and waves come upon the vessel. If, at that time, the winds and waves should shift, they are quite bewildered, often missing their intended port, and being never heard of more. The story of Omai's countrymen, who were driven to Wateoo convinces us, however, that those who are not heard of, are not always lost.

The harbour and anchoring place of Tongataboo is superior to any we have met with among these islands, as well from its great security, as its capacity, and goodness of bottom. The risk we ran in entering it from the north, should caution every future commander from attempting that passage again, especially with a ship of burden

burden, since that by which we left it may be pursued with greater ease and safety.

Though the harbour of Tongataboo, has the preference, its water is exceeded in goodness, by that at Annamooka, and yet this cannot be reckoned good. Tolerable water may, nevertheless, be procured, by digging holes near the side of the pond. Besides, Annamooka being nearly in the centre of the group, is the best situated for procuring refreshments from the others. There is a creek in the reef on the north side of the island, wherein two or three ships may lie securely.

Those who are desirous of having a more particular description of the Friendly Islands, must have recourse to the chart, where every thing is delineated as accurately as circumstances would permit. To the same chart, recourse may also be had for tracing the several stations of the ships, and their route.

What may have been here omitted, concerning the geography of these islands, will be found in the history of Captain Cook's last voyage*, to which narrative the reader is referred; for such particulars as he had then observed. At present, we shall only relate such interesting circumstances, as either were omitted in that account, or were imperfectly and incorrectly represented.

After living among them between two and three months, it is reasonable to expect, that

* Cook's Voyage, Vol. I. p. 211. 213-
p. 213. 225.

† *Ibid.*

we sho
and to
manner
as relig
with us
as well
terprete
task. U
thing c
tion, we
tent kno
was certa
we were
troubled
when he
ideas wer
differed s
counts, in
ed us. Be
mong the
inclination
ed. And
offended a
deemed fr
where we
was likew
the countr
but few in
as with the
so that we
the domest
That we co
bring away

we should be able to clear up every difficulty, and to give a tolerably good account of their manners, customs, and institutions, civil as well as religious; particularly as we had a person with us, who, by understanding their language as well as ours, might be enabled to act as an interpreter. But Omai was not qualified for that task. Unless we had before us the object or thing concerning which we wanted information, we found it difficult to obtain a competent knowledge from his explanations. Omai was certainly more liable to make mistakes than we were; for, having no curiosity, he never troubled himself with making remarks; and when he attempted to explain matters to us, his ideas were apparently so limited, and, probably, differed so much from ours, that his confused accounts, instead of instructing often only perplexed us. Besides, we could seldom find a person, among the natives, who had both the ability and inclination to give us the information we required. And many of them, we observed, appeared offended at being asked, what they, perhaps, deemed frivolous questions. At Tongataboo, where we continued the longest, our situation was likewise unfavourable; being in a part of the country, where, except fishers, there were but few inhabitants. With our visitors, as well as with those we visited, it was always holiday; so that we could not observe, what was really the domestic way of living among the natives. That we could not, therefore, in this situation, bring away satisfactory accounts of many things,

is not the least surprizing. Some of us, indeed, endeavoured, by diligent observation, to remedy those disadvantages; and we are indebted to Mr Anderson, for a considerable share of what information we obtained.

The Friendly Islanders seldom exceed the common stature, (though some here were above six feet in height) and are strong and well proportioned. Their shoulders are, in general, broad; and we saw several who were really handsome, though their muscular disposition rather conveyed the idea of strength than of beauty. Their features are so various, that, unless it be by a fulness at the point of the nose, which is common, it is impossible to fix any general likeness by which to characterise them. On the other hand, many genuine Roman noses, and hundreds of European faces, were seen amongst them. They have good eyes and teeth; but the latter are neither so well set, nor so remarkably white as among the Indian nations. Few of them, however, have that uncommon thickness about the lips, so frequent in other islands.

The women are less distinguished from the men by their features, than by their general form, which seems destitute of that strong fleshy firmness that appears in the latter. Though the features of some are very delicate, and a true index of their sex, laying claim to a considerable share of beauty and expression, yet the rule is not, by any means so general as in many other countries. This is generally, however, the most exceptionable part; for the bodies and limbs of
 most

mo
 fou
 fig
 the
 lica
 peti
 T
 copp
 men
 the
 prob
 sun;
 the
 quen
 mong
 frequ
 peopl
 hue,
 the pa
 may b
 We sa
 at An
 been f
 appreh
 than a
 Upo
 or defo
 we obs
 inward
 diseases
 with th
 tish serj
 another
 VOL.

most of the females are well proportioned; and some, absolutely, perfect models of a beautiful figure. But the most remarkable distinction in the women, is the uncommon smallness and delicacy of their fingers, which may be put in competition with the finest in Europe.

The general colour is a cast deeper than the copper brown; but several of the men and women have a true olive complexion; and some of the last are even a great deal fairer; which is probably the effect of being less exposed to the sun; as a tendency to corpulence, in a few of the principal people, seems to be the consequence of a more indolent life. It is also amongst the last, that a soft clear skin is most frequently observed. Amongst the bulk of the people, the skin is, more commonly, of a dull hue, with some degree of roughness, especially the parts that are not covered; which, perhaps, may be occasioned by some cutaneous disease. We saw a man and boy at Hapaee, and a child at Annamooka, perfectly white. Such have been found amongst all black nations; but, I apprehend, that their colour is rather a disease, than a natural phenomenon.

Upon the whole, however, few natural defects or deformities are to be seen among them; tho' we observed two or three with their feet bent inwards. Neither are they exempt from some diseases. Vast numbers of them are affected with the tetter or ringworm, which leaves whitish serpentine marks behind it. But they have another disease of a more mischievous conse-

quence, which is also very frequent, and appears on every part of the body, in large broad ulcers, discharging a thin, clear pus, some of which had a very virulent appearance, particularly on the face. Some, however, appeared to be cured of it, and others mending; but it was generally attended with the loss of the nose, or a considerable part of it. It being certainly known, and even acknowledged by themselves, that the natives were subject to this disease before they were visited by the English, it cannot be the effect of venereal contagion, notwithstanding the similarity of the symptoms; unless we adopt a supposition, that the venereal disorder, was introduced here by our people, in 1773. It certainly was amongst them at this time; for, soon after we arrived there, some of our people received the infection; and Captain Cook had the mortification to learn from thence, that all the care he took in 1773, to prevent the communication of this dreadful disease, had proved ineffectual. They do not seem, however, to regard it much; and, as we did not see many instances of its destroying effects, perhaps the climate, and the way of living of these people, may abate its virulence. Two other diseases are common among them; one of which is a firm swelling, which affects the legs and arms; the other is a tumour in the testicles, which sometimes exceed the size of the two fists. In other respects, they are remarkably healthy, not a single person, having, during our stay, been confined to the house by any kind of sickness. Their strength

are
swell
exerc
they
rous
of in
The
which
perfo
as a
laugh
ly stu
inequ
The
the ab
they p
vage
rous st
ey, tha
restrict
such a
steadin
same ti
ed; th
chiefs,
such a
and has
Their
ced, fro
have me
of offer
tinely, a
inhabita

Strength and activity are, in every respect, answerable to their muscular appearance; and they exert both, in such a manner, as to prove, that they are as yet little debilitated by the numerous diseases that are the natural consequence of indolence.

The graceful mien and firmness of step with which they walk, are obvious proofs of their personal accomplishments. They consider this as a thing so necessary to be acquired, that their laughter was excited when they saw us frequently stumbling upon the roots of trees, or other inequalities, in walking.

Their countenances very remarkably express the abundant mildness, or good nature, which they possess; and are entirely free from that savage keenness which marks nations in a barbarous state. One would, indeed, be apt to fancy, that they had been bred up under the severest restrictions, to acquire an aspect so settled, and such a command of their passions, as well as steadiness in conduct. But they are, at the same time, frank, chearful, and good-humoured; though sometimes, in the presence of their chiefs, they put on a degree of gravity, and such a serious air, as becomes stiff and awkward, and has an appearance of reserve.

Their peaceable disposition is sufficiently evinced, from the friendly reception all strangers have met with, who have visited them. Instead of offering to attack them openly, or clandestinely, as has been the case with most of the inhabitants of these seas, they have never ap-

peared, in the smallest degree, hostile; but, on the contrary, like the most civilized people, have courted an intercourse with their visitors, by bartering, which is the only medium that unites all nations in a sort of friendship. Perhaps, no nation in the world traffic with more honesty and less distrust. We could always safely permit them to examine our goods, and to hand them about, one to another; and they put the same confidence in us. If either party repented of the bargain, the goods were re-exchanged with mutual consent and good-humour. Upon the whole, they seem possessed of many of the most excellent qualities that adorn the human mind; such as industry, ingenuity, perseverance, affability, and, perhaps, other virtues which our short stay with them might prevent our observing.

The only defect sullyng their character, that we know of, is a propensity to thieving; to which, we found those of all ages, and both sexes, addicted; and to an uncommon degree. It should however, be considered, that this exceptionable part of their conduct seemed to exist merely with respect to us; for, in their general intercourse with one another, I had reason to be of opinion, that thefts do not happen more frequently (perhaps less so) than in other countries, the dishonest practices of whose worthless individuals are not supposed to authorise any indiscriminate censure on the whole body of the people. Great allowances should be made for the foibles of these poor natives

nati
over
new
amo
of th
ing
pitue
rules
extre
of re
illand
quen
had
to let
solely
sefs
tome
ple
haps,
semin
are in
be do
tice w
into t
The
thick,
it bus
pears
some
ple col
The fir
ing a
water,

natives of the Pacific ocean, whose minds were overpowered with the glare of objects, equally new to them, as they were captivating. Stealing, amongst the civilized, and enlightened nations of the world, may well be considered as denoting a character deeply stained with moral turpitude, with avarice unrestrained by the known rules of right, and with profligacy producing extreme indigence, and neglecting the means of relieving it. But at the Friendly and other islands which we visited, the thefts, so frequently committed by the natives of what we had brought along with us, may be fairly traced to less culpable motives. They seemed to arise, solely, from an intense curiosity or desire to possess something which they had not been accustomed to before, and belonging to a sort of people so different from themselves. And, perhaps, if it were possible, that a set of beings, seemingly as superior in our judgment, as we are in theirs, should appear amongst us, it might be doubted, whether our natural regard to justice would be able to restrain many from falling into this error.

The hair of these islanders is, in general, thick, straight, and strong; though some have it bushy or frizzled. The natural colour appears to be black, but many of the men, and some of the women, stain it of a brown, or purple colour; and a few give it an orange cast. The first of these colours is produced by applying a sort of plaster of burnt coral mixed with water, the second by the raspings of a reddish

wood, mixed into a poultice, and laid over the hair; and the third is said to be the effect of *turmeric root*.

They are so whimsical in their fashions of wearing their hair, that it is difficult to say which is most in vogue. Some have none on one side of the head, while it remains long on the other side; some have only a part of it cut short; others have parted with the whole, except a single lock on one side. Some permit it to grow to its full length, without any of these mutilations. The women usually wear it short. The beards too are cut short; and both sexes strip the hair from their arm-pits. The men are stained with a deep blue colour from the middle of the belly, to half way down the thighs. This is effected with a flat-bone instrument full of fine teeth, which by a stroke of a bit of stick introduces the juice of *doee doee* into the skin, by which means indelible marks are made. Lines and figures are thus traced, which, in some, are very elegant. The women have only some small lines, thus imprinted, in the inside of their hands. As a mark of distinction, their kings are exempted from this custom. The men are not circumcised, but rather supercised; the operation consists in cutting off only a piece of the foreskin at the upper part, which is thus rendered incapable of ever covering the *glands*. They have no other aim in this operation, and only practise it from a notion of cleanliness.

The dress of both sexes is the same; consisting of a piece of cloth or matting, about two

yards

yards
leng
coat,
That
girdle
tende
the sh
dress;
cloth,
people
small
vering
narrow
They p
the wa
their be
various
are emb
Both
their fa
made of
The c
are the
are neck
and vari
the gene
small sh
bones of
the breat
polished
the uppe
shells on
cd togeth

yards in breadth, and two yards and a half in length. It is double before, and, like a petticoat, hangs down to the middle of the leg. That part of the garment which is above the girdle, is plaited into several folds, which extended, is sufficient to draw up and wrap round the shoulders. This, as to form, is the general dress; but the fine matting, and long pieces of cloth, are worn only by the superior class of people. The inferior sort are contented with small pieces, and, very often, have only a covering made of leaves of plants, or the *maro*, a narrow piece of cloth, or matting, like a sash. They pass this between the thighs and round the waist. It is seldom used but by the men; in their *baivas*, or grand entertainments, they have various dresses, which, though the same in form, are embellished, more or less, with red feathers.

Both men and women occasionally defend their faces from the sun with little bonnets, made of various sorts of materials.

The ornaments, worn by those of either sex, are the same. Those which are most common are necklaces, made of the fruit of the *pandanus*, and various sweet smelling flowers, known by the general name of *kabulla*. Others consist of small shells, shark's teeth, the wing and leg-bones of birds, &c. all which are pendant upon the breast. In this manner, they often wear a polished mother-of-pearl shell, or a ring, on the upper part of the arm; rings of tortoise-shells on the fingers; and several of these, joined together, formed into bracelets on the wrists.

Two

Two holes are perforated in the lobes of the ears, in which they wear cylindrical bits of ivory, of the length of three inches, introduced at one hole, and drawn out of the other; or bits of reed, filled with a yellow pigment. This appears to be a fine powder of *turmeric*, which the women rub all over their bodies, in the same manner as the European ladies use their dry rouge upon their cheeks.

Personal cleanliness is their delight, to produce which, they bathe frequently in the ponds. Though the water has an intolerable stench in most of them, they always prefer them to the sea; and they are so sensible that their skin is injured with salt water, that, when they are obliged to bathe in the sea, they have fresh water poured over them to wash off its bad effects. They are extravagantly fond of cocoa-nut-oil; a great quantity of which they pour upon their head and shoulders, and rub the body all over with a smaller quantity.

The domestic life of these people is neither so laborious as to be disagreeable, nor so free from employment as to suffer them to degenerate into indolence. Their country has been so favoured by nature, that the first can scarcely occur; and their disposition appears to be a sufficient bar to the last. By this fortunate concurrence of circumstances, their necessary labour seems to yield, in its turn, to their amusements and recreations, which are never interrupted by the thoughts of being obliged to recur to business, till they are induced by satiety to wish for
that

tha
me
the
clo
cess
scri
fine
imp
they
ed.
ter
est
that
A
ed t
exce
resp
thes
forts
man
cipal
of t
they
danu
sleep
The
tance
whic
baske
and
the c
plain
neatr

that transition. The employment of the women is not difficult; and is generally such as they can execute in the house. The making of cloth is entirely entrusted to their care; the process of which manufacture has been already described. Their cloth is of different degrees of fineness: the coarser kind does not receive the impression of any pattern; but of the finer sort, they have various patterns, differently coloured. The cloth, in general, is able to resist water for some time; but that which has the strongest glaze, is the least liable to be penetrated by that fluid.

Another manufacture, which is also assigned to the women, is that of their mats, which excel those of most other countries, both with respect to their texture and their beauty. Of these mats there are seven or eight different sorts, which they either wear or sleep upon; and many are merely ornamental. The last are principally made from the tough, membranous part of the stock of the plaintain-tree; those that they wear, are generally composed of the *pandanus*; and the coarser kind, on which they sleep, are formed from a plant called *evarra*. There are several other articles of less importance, that employ their females; as combs, of which they make great quantities; and small baskets made of the same substance as the mats, and others composed of the fibrous husk of the cocoa-nut, either interwoven with beads, or plain; all which are finished with extraordinary neatness and taste.

The

The province of the men is, as might reasonably be expected, far more laborious and extensive than that of the other sex. Architecture, boat-building, agriculture, and fishing, are the principal objects of their care. As cultivated roots and fruits form their chief subsistence; they find it necessary to practise husbandry, which they have brought by their diligence to some degree of perfection. In planting yams and plantains, they dig small holes for their reception, and afterwards root up the surrounding grass. The instruments used by them for this purpose are called *hoo*; and are nothing more than stakes of various lengths, flattened and sharpened to an edge at one end; and the largest ones have a short piece fixed transversely, by means of which they press the implement into the ground with the foot. When they plant the two above mentioned vegetables, they observe such particular exactness, that, which every way you turn your eyes, the rows present themselves complete and regular.

The bread-fruit and cocoa-nut-trees, are dispersed about, without any order; and, when they have arrived at a certain height, give them little or no trouble. The same may be said of another large tree, which produces a roundish compressed nut, called *tesee*; and of a smaller tree bearing an oval nut, with two or three triangular kernels. The *kappe* is, in general, planted regularly, and in large spots; but the *ma-uhaha* is interspersed among other things, as are also the yams and *jeejoe*. Sugar-cane is usually

in

in sm
of wh
and H
danus
gethe
Th
the co
lower
suffici
Thos
more
of a n
sions,
in bre
are, p
suppor
with
mattin
round
on the
branch
woven
three
and pl
the sid
for the
rest of
floor,
part fr
there
servant
of som
pillows

in small spots, closely crouded. The mulberry, of which the cloth is made, is kept very clean, and has a good space allowed for it. The *pandanus* is commonly planted in a row, close together, at the sides of the fields.

They display very little taste or ingenuity in the construction of their houses. Those of the lower class of people are wretched huts, scarce sufficient to shelter them from the weather. Those of the better sort are larger, as well as more commodious and comfortable. A house of a middling size is of the following dimensions, viz. about twelve feet in height, twenty in breadth, and thirty in length. Their houses are, properly speaking, thatched roofs or sheds, supported by rafters and posts. The floor is raised with earth smoothed, and covered with thick matting. Some of their habitations are open all round; but the major part of them are enclosed on the weather side with strong mats, or with branches of the cocoa-nut-tree, plaited or interwoven with each other. A thick mat, about three feet broad, bent into a semicircular form, and placed edgeways, with the ends touching the side of the house, encloses a sufficient space for the master and mistress to sleep in. The rest of the family sleep upon any part of the floor, the unmarried men and women lying apart from each other. If the family is large, there are little huts adjoining, in which the servant sleep. Their whole furniture consists of some wooden stools, which serve them for pillows; baskets of different sizes, in which they
put

put their combs, fish-hooks, and tools; two or three wooden bowls, in which they make *kava*; some cocoa-nut shells, a few gourds, and a bundle or two of cloth.

They are very skilful in building their canoes, which, indeed, are the most perfect of their mechanical productions. The double ones are made sufficiently large to carry about fifty persons, and sail at a great rate. Upon them they generally fix a hut or shed, for the reception of the master and his family. They are made of the bread-fruit tree, and the workmanship is extremely neat. They appear on the outside as if they were composed of one solid piece; but, upon closer inspection, they are found to consist of a great number of pieces, which fit each other exactly, and by means of a ledge on the inside are secured together with cocoa-nut line. The single canoes are furnished with an outrigger. The only tools which they make use of in the construction of these boats, are hatchets, or adzes, of a smooth black stone; augers, made of shark's teeth: and rasps, composed of the rough skin of a fish, fastened on flat pieces of wood. The same tools are all they have for other works, except shells, which serve them for knives. Their cordage is made of the fibres of the cocoa-nut husk, which, though not above ten inches long, they plait about the size of a quill, to whatever length is required, and roll it up in balls; from which the ropes of a larger size are made, by twisting several of those together. Their fishing-lines are as strong and

ev
fist
are
poi
W
bon
bou
leng
fom
T
the
piec
whic
mad
inch
a hol
whic
them
with
to th
The
the l
finge
In th
prod
nassa,
Th
ornam
bows
muse
for th
ther
four
Vo

even as our best cord. Their small hooks consist entirely of pearl-shell; but the large ones are only covered with it on the back: and the points of both, are, in general, of tortoise-shell. With the large hooks they catch albacores, and bonnetos, by putting them to a bamboo-rod, about twelve feet long, with a line of the same length. They have also numbers of small seines some of which are of the most delicate texture.

Their musical reeds or pipes, which resemble the *syrinx* of the ancients, have eight or ten pieces placed parallel to each other, most of which are of unequal lengths. Their flutes are made of a joint of bamboo, about eighteen inches long, and are closed at both ends, having a hole near each end, and four others; two of which, and only one of the first, are used by them in playing. They close the left nostril with the thumb of the left hand, and blow into the hole at one end with the other nostril. The fore finger of the right hand is applied to the lowest hole on the right, and the middle finger of the left to the first hole on that side. In this manner, with only three notes, they produce a pleasing, tho' simple, music. Their *nassa*, or drum, has been already described.

Their warlike weapons are clubs, curiously ornamented, spears, and darts. They also make bows and arrows; but these are intended for amusement, such as shooting at birds, and not for the purposes of war. Their stools, or rather pillows, are about two feet long, but only four or five inches in height, and near four in

breadth, inclining downwards towards the middle; with four strong-legs and circular feet; the whole composed of brown or black wood, neatly polished, and sometimes inlaid with ivory. They likewise inlay with ivory the handles of fly-flaps; and, with a shark's tooth, shape bones into figures of men, birds, &c.

Their vegetable diet principally consists of plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and yams. Their chief articles of animal food are hogs, fish, and fowls; but the common people frequently eat rats. Their hogs, fowls, and turtle, however, seem to be only occasional dainties, reserved for persons of rank. Their food is, in general, dressed by baking, as at Otaheite; and they make, from different sorts of fruit, several dishes, which are very good. They sometimes boil their fish in the green leaves of the plantain-tree, which serve as a bag to hold both fish and water: having tied them up, they wrap them again in three or four other leaves, and place them upon stones heated for the purpose: when they are sufficiently done, they not only eat the fish, but drink the liquor or soup. They are not very cleanly either in their cookery, or their manner of eating. Their usual drink at their meals is water or cocoa-nut milk, the *kava* being only their morning beverage. The food that is served up to the chiefs, is generally laid upon plantain-leaves. The king, at his meals, was commonly attended upon by three or four of the natives, one of whom cut large pieces of the fish, or of the joint, another

not
the
else
serv
mea
men
with
are r
'This
we k
T
foon
part,
ther
toget
unco
the p
house
neigh
by co
priva
singir
men
is cal
form
differ
melod
songs
of the
and
grace
W
ther t

n.
the mid-
feet; the
ood, neat-
with ivory.
andles of
ape bones

onsists of
nd yams.
are hogs,
people fre-
, and tur-
onal dain-
Their food
Otaheite;
s of fruit,
d. They
n leaves of
ag to hold
m up, they
her leaves,
for the pur-
done, they
e liquor or
her in their
Their u-
cocoa-nut
rning beve-
o the chiefs,
aves. The
ttended up-
ne of whom
he joint, a-
nother

nother afterwards divided it into mouthfuls, and the rest stood by with cocoa-nuts, and whatever else he might happen to want. We never observed a large company sit down to a sociable meal, by eating from the same dish. The women are nor excluded from taking their meals with the men; but there are certain ranks that are not allowed either to eat or drink together. This distinction begins with his majesty, but we know not where it ends.

They rise at day-break, and retire to rest as soon as it becomes dark. They, for the most part, sleep also in the day time, when the weather is very hot. They are fond of associating together; in consequence of which, it is not uncommon to find several houses empty, and the possessors of them assembled in some other house, or upon some convenient spot in the neighbourhood, where they relax themselves by conversation and other amusements. Their private diversions chiefly consist of dancing, singing, and music. When two or three women snap their fingers, and sing in concert, it is called *oobai*; but when there are more, they form several parties, each of which sings in a different key, which constitutes an agreeable melody, and is termed *heeva* or *haiva*. The songs are generally accompanied with the music of their flutes. The dances both of the men and women, are performed with an ease and grace which are difficult to be described.

We could not determine with precision, whether their marriages were rendered durable by

any kind of solemn contract: it is certain, however that the major part of the people contented themselves with one wife. The chiefs, indeed, commonly have several women, though there was only one who (as we thought) was considered in the light of mistress of the family. Though female chastity seemed to be held in little estimation, not a single breach of conjugal fidelity happened, to our knowledge, during our whole continuance at these islands; nor were the unmarried women of rank more liberal of their favours. But there were great numbers of a very different character.

The concern shewn by these islanders for the dead is a strong proof of their humanity. Besides the *tooge*, which we have mentioned before, and burnt circles and scars, they strike a shark's tooth into their heads till the blood flows considerably, beat their teeth with stones, and thrust spears not only through their cheeks into their mouths, but also into the inner part of their thighs, and into their sides. The more painful operations, however, are only practised when they mourn the death of those who were most nearly connected with them. When one of them dies, he is wrapped up in mats and cloth, and then interred. The *fiatookas* seem to be appropriated to the chiefs and other persons of distinction, as their burial places; but the inferior people have no particular spot set apart for their interment. It is uncertain what part of the mourning ceremony follows immediately afterwards; but there is something besides the
 general

ge
 ble
 ing
 tio
 evi
 cul
 cor
 ser
 of
 wh
 tisf
 tha
 affl
 the
 The
 cept
 tory
 the
 use
 per
 the
 tha
 tate
 clas
 fing
 to v
 V
 form
 con
 dea
 nat
 thir
 ren

general one which is continued for a considerable time, the funeral of Mareewagee's wife being attended with ceremonies of five days duration. They seem to consider death as a great evil, to avert which they practise a very singular custom. When Captain Cook, during his second voyage, first visited these islands, he observed that many of the natives had one or both of their little fingers cut off; of the reason of which mutilation he could not then obtain a satisfactory account. But he was now informed, that they perform this operation when they are afflicted with some dangerous disorder, which they imagine may bring them to the grave. They suppose, that the little finger will be accepted of by the Deity, as a kind of propitiatory sacrifice sufficiently efficacious to procure their recovery. In cutting it off, they make use of a stone hatchet. There was scarcely one person in ten who was not thus mutilated; and they sometimes cut so close, as to encroach upon that bone of the hand which joins the amputated finger. It is also common for the lower class of people to cut off a joint of their little finger, on account of the sickness of the chiefs to whom they respectively belong.

When the rigid strictness with which they perform their mourning and religious ceremonies is considered, it might be expected, that they endeavoured thereby to secure to themselves eternal happiness; but their principal object regards things merely temporal; for they have apparently little conception of future punishment

for sins committed in the present life. They believe, however, that they meet with just punishment upon earth; and, therefore, put every method in practice to render their divinities propitious. They admit a plurality of deities, all of them inferior to *Kallafootonga*, who they say is a female, and the supreme author of most things, residing in the heavens, and directing the wind, rain, thunder, &c. They are of opinion, that when she is much displeas'd with them, the productions of the earth are blasted, many things consumed by lightning, and themselves afflicted with sickness and death; but that when her anger abates, every thing is immediately restored to its former state. Among their subordinate deities, they mention *Futtasaihe*, or *Footafooa*, who has the administration of the sea, and its productions; *Toofooa-boolootoo*, god of the clouds and fog; *Talletambo*, *Mattaba*, *Tareeva*, and others. The same system of religion does not extend all over the Friendly Islands; the supreme deity of Hapae, for instance, being called *Alo Alo*. They entertain very absurd opinions relative to the power and various attributes of these beings, who, they suppose, have no farther concern with them after death. They have, however, juster sentiments respecting the immortality and immateriality of the soul; which they call life, the living principle, or an *Otooa*, that is, a divinity. They imagine that immediately after death, the souls of their chiefs are separated from their bodies, and go to a delightful region called *Boolootoo*, the god

god
they
coro
fitor
veye
feast
tive
fully
infer
fer a
(they
upon
TI
creat
They
fruit,
blema
to do
Their
ing g
them
ly to
and g
W
of' go
the fe
establ
fions,
rant.
the k
the al
of hi
offere

god of which is named *Gooleho*. By this *Gooleho* they probably personify death. His country, according to their mythology, is the general repository of the dead; and those who are once conveyed thither, are no more subject to death, but feast on all the favourite productions of their native soil, with which this blissful abode is plentifully furnished. As for the souls of people of an inferior class, they are supposed by them to suffer a kind of transmigration; or are eaten up (they say) by a bird called *loata*, which walks upon the graves with that intent.

They do not worship any visible part of the creation, or any thing made by their own hands. They make no offerings of dogs, hogs, and fruit, (as is the custom at Otaheite), unless emblematically. But there seems to be no reason to doubt of their offering up human sacrifices. Their *fiatookas*, or *morais*, are in general, burying grounds and places of worship: some of them, however, appeared to be appropriated only to the former purpose; but these were small, and greatly inferior to the rest.

We are very little acquainted with their form of government. A subordination, resembling the feudal system of our ancestors in Europe, is established among them; but of its subdivisions, and the constituent parts, we are ignorant. Though some of them informed us that the king's power is unbounded, and that he has the absolute disposal of the lives and properties of his subjects: yet the few circumstances that offered themselves to our observation, contradicted,

dicted rather than confirmed, the idea of despotic sway. Mareewagee, Feenou, and Old Toobou, acted each the part of a petty sovereign, and not unfrequently counteracted the measures of the king. Nor was his court superior in splendour to those of Old Toobou and Mareewagee, who next to his Majesty, were the most potent chiefs in these islands; and, next after them, Feenou appeared to stand highest in rank and authority. But, however independent on the king the principal men may be, the inferior people are totally subject to the will of the chiefs to whom they severally belong.

The islands of Tongataboo is divided into numerous districts, each of which has its peculiar chief, who distributes justice, and decides disputes, within his own territory. Most of these chieftains have estates in other islands, whence they procure supplies. The king, at stated times, receives the product of his distant domains at Tongataboo, which is not only the usual place of his residence, but the abode of most persons of distinction among these islands. Its inhabitants frequently call it the Land of Chiefs, and stigmatize the subordinate isles with the appellations of Lands of Servants.

The chiefs are stiled by the people lords of the earth, and also of the sun and sky. The royal family assume the name of Futtafaihe, from the god distinguished by that appellation, who is probably considered by them as their tutelary patron. The king's peculiar title is simply *Ta-ee Tonga*. The order and decorum observed in his

his
chi
dov
him
ent
one
to c
beh
miff
maj
him
he k
an a
an o
and
jesty
here
N
ver
der
sion
the
fect
Such
able
body
quer
most
hara
purp
•
of Ca
for th
little

his presence, and likewise in that of the other chiefs, are truly admirable. Whenever he sits down, all the attendants seat themselves before him, forming a semicircle, and leaving a sufficient space between them and him, into which no one, unless he has particular business, presumes to come. Nor is any one suffered to sit, or pass behind him, or even near him, without his permission. When a person wishes to speak to his majesty, he comes forward, and having seated himself before him, delivers in a few words what he has to say; then, after being favoured with an answer from his seat, unless he is to receive an order; in which case he rises from his place, and seats himself cross-legged * before his majesty. To speak to the king standing, would here be considered as a glaring mark of rudeness.

None of the most civilized nations have ever exceeded these islanders in the great order and regularity maintained on every occasion, in ready and submissive compliance with the commands of their chiefs, and in the perfect harmony that subsists among all ranks. Such a behaviour manifests itself in a remarkable manner, whenever their chiefs harangue a body of them assembled together, which frequently happens. The greatest attention and most profound silence are observed during the harangue; and whatever might have been the purport of the oration, we never saw a single instance,

* It may be proper to mention here, on the authority of Captain King, that this posture is peculiar to the men; for the females always sit with both their legs thrown a little on one side.

stance, when any one of those who were present shewed signs of his being displeas'd, or seem'd in the least inclined to dispute the declared will of the speaker.

It is a peculiar privilege annexed to the person of the king, not to be punctured, nor circumcised, or rather supercised, as all his subjects are. Whenever he walks out, all who meet him must sit down till he has pass'd. No person is suffer'd to be over his head; but, on the contrary, all must come under his feet. The method of doing homage to him, and the other chiefs, is as follows: the person who is to pay obeisance, squats down before the great personage, and bows the head down to the sole of his foot, which he taps or touches with the under and upper side of the fingers of each hand; then rising up, he retires. We had reason to think, that his majesty cannot refuse any one who is desirous of paying him this homage, which is call'd by the natives *moe moea*; for the people would frequently think proper to shew him these marks of submission when he was walking; and he was on those occasions oblig'd to stop, and hold up one of his feet behind him, till they had performed this respectful ceremony. This, to so corpulent and unwieldy a man as Poulaho, must have been painful and troublesome; and we have sometimes seen him endeavour, by running, to get out of the way, or to reach a convenient place for sitting down. The hands, after having been thus applied, become, in some cases, useles for a little time; for, till they are washed,

wall
This
far
inco
whic
bed
pose
this
mer
the
curr
it m
othe
od.
been
othe
mite
their
of br
verei
obeis
plies
he th
she i
clean
cour
we a
was)
frequ
TI
catio
boo;
to be

washed they must not touch food of any sort. This prohibition, in a country where water is far from being plentiful, would be attended with inconvenience, if a piece of any juicy plant, which they can immediately procure, being rubbed over the hands, did not serve for the purpose of purification. When the hands are in this situation, they term it *taboo rema*; the former word generally signifying forbidden, and the latter implying hand. When the *taboo* is incurred, by doing homage to a person of rank, it may thus easily be washed off: but, in several other cases, it must continue for a certain period. We have often seen women, who have been *taboo rema*, not fed by themselves, but by others. The interdicted person, after the limited time has elapsed, washes herself in one of their baths, which are, in general, dirty ponds of brackish water. She then waits upon the sovereign, and, after having paid the customary obeisance, takes hold of his foot, which she applies to her shoulders; breast, and other parts: he then embraces her on both shoulders, and she immediately retires, purified from her uncleanness. If it be always necessary to have recourse to his majesty for this purpose (of which we are not certain, though Omai assured us it was) it may be one reason for his travelling very frequently from one island to another.

The word *taboo* has a great latitude of signification. They call human sacrifices *tangata taboo*; and when any particular thing is prohibited to be eaten, or made use of, they say it is *taboo*.

They

They informed us, that, if the king should go into a house belonging to one of his subjects, that house would in consequence become *taboo*, and could never be again inhabited by the owner of it; so that, wherever his majesty travels, there are houses peculiarly assigned for his accommodation. At this time Old Toobou presided over the *taboo*; that is, if Omai did not misunderstand those who gave him the intelligence, he and his deputies had the inspection of all the produce of the island, taking care that each individual should cultivate and plant his quota, and directing what should, and what should not, be eaten. By so prudent a regulation, they take effectual precautions against a famine; sufficient ground is employed in raising provisions; and every article is secured from unnecessary consumption.

When we take into consideration the number of islands of which this state consists, and the distance at which some of them are removed from the seat of government, attempts to throw off the yoke of subjection might be apprehended. But they informed us, that this circumstance never happens. One reason of their not being thus embroiled in domestic commotions may be this; that all their principal chiefs take up their residence at Tongataboo. They also secure the dependence of the other isles, by the decisive celerity of their operations; for if a seditious and popular man should start up in any of them, Feenou, or whoever happens to hold his office, is immediately dispatch-

ed

ed thither to put him to death ; by which means they extinguish an insurrection while it is yet in embryo.

The different classes of their chiefs seemed to be nearly as numerous as among us ; but there are few comparatively speaking, that are lords of extensive districts of territory. It is said, that when a person of property dies, all his possessions devolve on the sovereign ; but that it is customary to give them to the eldest son of the deceased, with this condition annexed, that he should provide out of the estate, for the other children. The crown is hereditary ; and we know, from a particular circumstance, that the Futtafaihes, of which family is Poulaho, have reigned in a direct line, for the space of at least one hundred and thirty five years, which have elapsed between our present visit to these islands, and Tasman's discovery of them. Upon our enquiring of them, whether any traditional account of the arrival of Tasman's ships had been preserved among them till this time, we found, that this history had been delivered down to them from their ancestors, with great accuracy : for they said that his two ships resembled ours, and also mentioned the place where they had lain at anchor, their having continued but a few days, and their quitting that station to go to Annamooka ; and, for the purpose of informing us how long ago this affair had happened, they communicated to us the name of the Futtafaihe who reigned at that time, and those who had succeeded him in the sovereignty, down to

Poulaho, who is the fifth monarch since that period.

It might naturally be imagined, that the present sovereign of the Friendly Isles had the highest rank of any person in his dominions. But we found it to be otherwise; for Latoolibooloo, who has been already mentioned, and three women, are superior, in some respects, to Paulaho himself. These great personages are distinguished by the title of *Tammaba*, which implies a chief. When we made enquiry concerning them, we were informed that the late king, father of Poulaho, left him behind a sister of equal rank, and older than himself; that she, by a native of Feejee, had a son and two daughters; and that these three persons, as well as their mother, are of higher rank than the king. We endeavoured to discover the reason of this pre-eminence of the *Tammabas*, but without effect. The mother, and one of her daughters, named Toocela-kaipa, reside at Vavaoo. The other daughter, called Mongoula-kaipa, and Latoolibooloo the son, dwell at Tongataboo. Mongoula-kaipa is the lady who has been mentioned as having dined with Captain Cook on the 21st of June. Latoolibooloo was supposed, by his countrymen, to be disordered in his senses. At Eooa, or Middleburg, they shewed us a considerable quantity of land, which was said to be his property; and we saw there a son of his, a child, who was honoured with the same title that his father enjoyed.

The language of these islands bear a striking resemblance

since that
 at the pre-
 the high-
 ions. But
 polibooloo,
 and three
 respects, to
 onages are
 aba, which
 inquiry con-
 at the late
 chind a sis-
 nself; that
 n and two
 ons, as well
 k than the
 the reason
 mahas, but
 one of her
 eside at Va-
 d Mongou-
 n, dwell at
 e lady who
 d with Cap-
 atoolibooloo
 to be disor-
 Middleburg,
 tity of land,
 and we saw
 as honoured
 njoyed.
 ar a striking
 resemblance

resemblance to that of New-Zealand, of Ota-
 heite, and the Society Isles. The pronuncia-
 tion of these people differs, indeed, in many
 instances, from that both of Otahcite and New-
 Zealand; but notwithstanding that, a great
 number of words are either very little changed,
 or exactly the same. The language, as spoken
 by the Friendly Islanders, is sufficiently copious
 to express all their ideas; and, besides being to-
 lerably harmonious in common conversation, is
 easily adapted for the purposes of music. They
 have terms to signify numbers as far as a hun-
 dred thousand, beyond which they either would
 not, or could not, reckon.

The latitude of that part of Tongataboo where
 our observatory was erected, which was near the
 middle of the north side of the island, was, ac-
 cording to the most accurate observations, 21°
 $8' 19''$ south; and its longitude was $184^{\circ} 55'$
 $18''$ east.

The tides are more considerable at the Friend-
 ly Islands, than at any other of Captain Cook's
 discoveries in this ocean, that are situate within
 either of the tropics. At Annatooka the tide
 rises and falls about six feet, upon a perpendicu-
 lar. At Tongataboo, it rises and falls four feet
 and three quarters, on the full and change days;
 and three feet and a half at the quadratures.

A
VOYAGE
TO THE
PACIFIC OCEAN.

BOOK III.

CONTENTS.

Island of Toobonai discovered—Arrival at Otahcite—
Omai's Reception—Otahcite visited by the Spaniards
—Their Attempts to depreciate the Character of the
English—Interview with Waheia doo, the Chief of Ti-
araboo—Omai's imprudent conduct—Poultry and Cat-
tle left on the Island—Captain Cook admitted into a
Council of the Chiefs—Reflections on a human Sacri-
fice—Heevas described—Girls dressed to bring a Pre-
sent—Manner of preserving the body of a dead Chief
—Riding on Horseback—Mock Fight between two
War Canoes—Manner of conducting a War—A curi-
ous Medical Operation—Otoo's Art—Omai's War
Canoe—Naval Power, &c.

WE had now taken our final leave of the
Friendly Islands. On the 17th of Ju-
ly, at eight o'clock in the evening, Eooa bore
north-east by north, distant 3 or 4 leagues.
The wind blew a fresh gale at east. We stood
to the south, till after six o'clock the next morn-
ing, when, from the same direction, a sudden
squall

squal
trim
and
On
the s
to th
W
meet
at sev
very
were,
courf
most
utmor
This
movin
we co
and,
main-
weath
the la
the no
29°
23' ea
were t
At
a sign
wards
mast
reder
ly dan
thing
him, t

squall took our ship aback; and before we could trim the ships on the other tack, the main-sail and the top gallant sails were considerably torn.

On the 19th and 20th, the wind kept between the south-west, and south-east; then it veered to the east, north-east, and north.

We stretched to the east-south-east, without meeting with anything remarkable, till the 29th, at seven o'clock in the evening, when we had a very heavy squall of wind from the north. We were, at this time, under single-reefed top-sails, courses, and stay-sails. Two of the latter were almost demolished by the wind, and it was with the utmost difficulty that we saved the other sails. This squall being over, we saw several lights moving about on board the Discovery; whence we conjectured that something had given way; and, the next morning, we perceived that her main-top-mast had been lost. Both wind and weather remained very unsettled till noon, when the latter cleared up, and the former settled in the north-west quarter. Our latitude was now $29^{\circ} 6'$ south and our longitude was $198^{\circ} 23'$ east. We saw some pintado-birds, which were the first we had seen, since we left the land.

At noon, on the 31st, Captain Clerke made a signal to speak with Captain Cook; and afterwards informed him, that the head of the main-mast had sprung, and in such a manner, as to render the rigging of another top-mast extremely dangerous; that he must therefore rig something lighter in its place. He further informed him, that he had lost his main-top-gallant-yard;

and had not another on board, nor a spar to make one. Captain Cook sent him the Resolution's sprit-fail-top-fail-yard, which supplied this want for the present. The next day, by getting up a jury-top-mast, on which he set a mizen-top-fail, he was enabled to keep way with the Resolution.

We steered east-north-east, and north-east, without meeting with any remarkable occurrence till the morning of the 8th of August, at eleven o'clock; when land was observed bearing north-north-east, about nine or ten leagues distant. At first it appeared like so many separate islands; but, as we approached, we found it was all connected, and formed one and the same island. We steered directly for it with a fine gale, and, at half past six in the afternoon, it extended from north by east, to north-north-east, distant three or four leagues.

At day-break, the next morning, we steered for the north-west side of the island, and as we stood round its south-west part, we saw it guarded by a reef of coral-rock, extending, in some places, at least a mile from the land, and a high surf breaking upon it. As we drew near, we saw people walking or running along shore, on several parts of the coast, and, in a short time after, when we had reached the lee-side of the island, we saw two canoes launched, in which were about a dozen of men, who paddled towards us.

In order to give these canoes time to come up with us, as well as to sound for anchorage, we shortened

shortened
from
five
adva
denk
on s
the
gum
with
to th
callin
peop
up fo
const
We
being
open
passed
Capt
a fair
appea
requi
tain
fore,
to pr
we m
ving
was
23°
Th
reflic
howe
confi

shortened sail, and at the distance of half a mile from the reef, we found from forty to thirty-five fathoms water. The canoes, after having advanced within pistol shot of the ships, suddenly stopped. Omai was desired, as was usual on such occasions, to endeavour to prevail upon the men in them to come nearer; but no arguments could induce them to trust themselves within our reach. They often pointed eagerly to the shore with their paddles, at the same time calling to us to go thither; and many of their people who were standing upon the beach, held up something white in their hands, which we construed as an invitation for us to come to land. We could easily have accomplished this, there being good anchorage without the reef, and an opening in it, through which the canoes had passed, which had no surf upon it. But the Captain did not chuse to risk the advantage of a fair wind, in order to examine an island, that appeared to be but of little consequence. We required no refreshments, if we had been certain of meeting with them there, and therefore, after making several unsuccessful attempts to prevail upon these people to come near us, we made sail to the north, and left them; having first learned that the name of their island was Toobouai. It is situated in the latitude of $23^{\circ} 25'$ south; and in $210^{\circ} 37'$ east longitude.

The greatest extent of this island, in any direction, is not above five or six miles. Small, however, as it appears, there are hills in it of a considerable elevation; at the foot of which, is

a narrow border of flat land, extending almost all round it, bordered with a white sand-beach. The hills were covered with herbage, except a few rocky cliffs, with patches of trees interspersed to their summits. This island, as we were informed by the men in the canoes, is plentifully stocked with hogs and fowls; and produces the several kinds of fruits and roots that are to be met with at the other islands in this neighbourhood.

From the conversation we had with those who came off to us, we discovered that the inhabitants of Toobouai speak the Otahite language: an indubitable proof that they are of the same nation. Those whom we saw in the canoes, were a stout copper-coloured people; some wearing their hair (which was straight and black) flowing about the shoulders, and others having it tied in a bunch on the crown of the head. Their faces were roundish and full, but the features flat; and their countenances expressed a degree of natural ferocity. Their covering was a piece of narrow stuff wrapped round the waist, and passing between the thighs; but some of those whom we beheld upon the beach, were completely clothed in white. Some of our visitors, in the canoes, had their necks ornamented with pearl-shells; and one of them continued blowing a large conch-shell, to which a reed, of about two feet long, was fixed; he began in a long tone, without any variation; and afterwards converted it into a kind of musical instrument. Whether the blowing of the conch por-

tended

tenc
four
T
abou
abov
The
rose
grad
fides
fides
riou
of t
were
black
times
close
boat
faces
out p
deter
repea
whet
frien
had
with
were
Le
with
we p
appea
Bay
We
there

tended any thing, we cannot say, but we never found it the messenger of peace.

The length of their canoes appeared to be about thirty feet, and they rose about two feet above the surface of the water, as they floated. The fore-part projected a little; the after-part rose to the height of two or three feet, with a gradual curve, and, like the upper part of the sides, was carved all over. The rest of the sides were ornamented with flat white shells curiously disposed. There were eight men in one of the canoes, and seven in the other. They were conducted with small paddles, whose blades were almost circular; and they sometimes paddled with the two opposite sides so close together, that they appeared to be but one boat; the rowers occasionally turning their faces to the stern, and pulling that way, without paddling the canoes round. Seeing we were determined to leave them they stood up, and repeated something aloud; but we knew not whether they were expressing their enmity, or friendship. It is certain, however, that they had not any weapons with them; nor could we with our glasses discover, that those on shore were armed.

Leaving the island, we steered to the north with a fresh gale, and at day-break, on the 12th, we perceived the island of Maitea. Otaheite appeared soon after; the point of Oheitepeha Bay bearing west, about four leagues distant. We steered for this bay, intending to anchor there, in order to draw some refreshments from
the

the south-east part of the island, before we proceeded to Matavai, where we expected our principal supply. We had a fresh gale till two o'clock in the afternoon; when, at about a league from the bay, the wind suddenly died away. About two hours after, we had sudden squalls with rain, from the east. About nine o'clock, we were obliged to stand out, and spend the night at sea.

When we came near the island, several canoes came off to the ship, each conducted by two or three men. But, as they were common fellows, Omai took no particular notice of them, nor they of him. They did not even seem to perceive that he was one of their countrymen, altho' they conversed with him for some time. At length, a chief whom I had known before, named Ootee, and Omai's brother-in-law, who chanced to be now at this corner of the island, and three or four more persons all of whom knew Omai, before he embarked with Captain Furneaux, came on board. Yet there was nothing either tender or striking in their meeting. On the contrary, there seemed to be a perfect indifference on both sides, till Omai, having taken his brother down into the cabin, opened the drawer where he kept his red feathers, and gave him a few. This being presently known, amongst the rest of the natives upon deck, the face of affairs was entirely turned, and Ootee, who would hardly speak to Omai before, now begged that they might be *tayos* (friends) and exchange names. Omai accepted the honour, and

and
and
hog
tha
wer
his
moo
que
flow
Om
I ow
but
go o
frien
the
of m
the f
Socie
pene
gree
ry to
repea
and f
signi
Th
on bo
shore
gun t
round
with
At fir
what
chase

and confirmed it with a present of red feathers ; and Ootee, by way of return, sent ashore for a hog. But it was evident to every one of us, that it was not the man, but his property, they were in love with. Had he not shewn to them his treasure of red feathers, which is the commodity in greatest estimation at the Island, I question much whether they would have bestowed even a cocoa-nut upon him. Such was Omai's first reception among his countrymen. I own, I never expected it would be otherwise ; but still I was in hopes, that the valuable cargo of presents, with which the liberality of his friends in England had loaded him, would be the means of raising him into consequence, and of making him respected, and even courted, by the first persons throughout the extent of the Society Islands. This could not but have happened, had he conducted himself with any degree of prudence. But, instead of it, I am sorry to say, that he paid too little regard to the repeated advice of those who wished him well, and suffered himself to be duped by every designing knave.

The important news, of red feathers being on board our ships, having been conveyed on shore by Omai's friends, day had no sooner begun to break next morning, than we were surrounded by a multitude of canoes, crowded with people bringing hogs and fruits to market. At first, a quantity of feathers, not greater than what might be got from a tom-tit, would purchase a hog of forty or fifty pounds weight.

But,

But, as almost every body in the ships was possessed of some of this precious article of trade, it fell in its value, above six hundred *per cent* before night. However, even then, the balance was much in our favour; and red feathers continued to preserve their superiority over every other commodity. Some of the natives would not part with a hog, unless they received an axe in exchange; but nails, beads, and other trinkets, which, during our former voyages, had so great a run at this island, were now so much despised, that few would deign to look at them.

In the morning of the 13th, Captain Cook came to anchor in a bay called Oheitepeha. Soon after, Omai's sister came on board to see him; and the Captain was happy to observe, that much to the honour of each, their meeting was marked with expressions of the most tender affection. After this moving scene, Omai and the Captain went ashore. Here, the attention of the former was soon drawn to an old woman, the sister of his mother. She was already at his feet, and had bedewed them plentifully with tears of joy. The Captain left him with the old lady, encircled by a number of people, in order to go and take a view of a house and cross erected by the Spaniards. When he returned, he found Omai holding forth to a large company; and it was with some difficulty he could be got away to accompany the Captain on board. Captain Cook, it seems, had found, from the natives, that two Spanish ships from Lima had twice put into Oheitepeha Bay, since

his

his
dog
first
four
the
ship
ers,
a sh
but
at a
en m
to ha
occur
It wa
the
stead
the r
the h
the w
Ther
air-h
fire
found
en cro

On th
took
visits

Vo

was possess-
trade, it fell
gent before
balance was
ers continu-
every other
would not
d an axe in
er trinkets,
had so great
ch despised,
em.
Captain Cook
Oheitepeha.
board to see
to observe,
their meet-
of the most
ng scene, O-
Here, the
drawn to an
er. She was
d them plen-
tain left him
a number of
a view of a
iards. When
ng forth to a
ome difficulty
y the Captain
s, had found,
h ships from
ha Bay, since
his

his last visit in 1774. They had left some hogs, dogs, goats, a bull, and a ram, on shore. The first time they came, they built a house, and left four men behind them, carrying away four of the natives. In about ten months, the same ships returned, bringing back two of the islanders, the other two having died at Lima. After a short stay, they took away their own people, but left the house standing. This was situated at a small distance from the beach. The wooden materials of which it was composed, seemed to have been brought, ready prepared, to set up occasionally; for all the planks were numbered. It was divided into two small rooms; and, in the inner one, were a bench, a table, a bedstead, some old hats, and other trifles, of which the natives seemed to be very careful, as also of the house itself, which had suffered no hurt from the weather, a shed having been built over it. There were scuttles all round, which served as air-holes; and perhaps they were also meant to fire from, with musquets, if ever it should be found necessary. At some distance, stood a wooden cross, on the transverse part of which was cut

CHRISTIS VINCIT.

And on the perpendicular part was

CAROLUS III. IMPERIT. 1774.

On the other side of the post, Captain Cook took care to preserve the memory of the prior visits of the English, by inscribing

GEORGIUS TERTIUS REX,

Annis 1767.

1769, 1773, 1774, & 1777.

VOL. I.

F f

Near

Near the foot of this cross was the grave of the Commodore of the two ships, who died here, while they lay in the bay, the first time. The Spaniards seemed to have taken great pains to ingratiate themselves with the inhabitants, who, on every occasion, mentioned them with the strongest expressions of esteem and veneration. The former, however, did not succeed in their attempts to depreciate the character of the English. One of the four persons whom they left behind, and whom the natives called Mateema, made himself very popular. He took uncommon pains to study their language, that he might be enabled to impress their minds with the most exalted ideas of the greatness of the Spanish monarchy, and make them think meanly of the English. He even went so far as to assure them, that we no longer existed as an independent nation; that *Prelane* was only a small island which they (the Spaniards) had entirely destroyed; and that as for Captain Cook, they had met with him at sea, and with a few shot, had sent his ship, with every soul in her, to the bottom. All this, and many other improbable falsehoods, did the Spaniards make this people believe. But, if Spain had no other views, in this expedition, than to depreciate the English, she had better have kept her ships at home; for Captain Cook's return to the island (which, in course, was quite unexpected) was considered as a complete refutation of all that Mateema had said.

Waheia doo, Sovereign of Tiaraboo, (which

was

was
new
me
the
not
with
here
boy
the
twen
tuto
brat
Oma
form
by s
ter t
nor
coun
all th
rema
matio
Span
desire
heite
that
son,
this i
far fr
he wa
rende
of eve
that t
cy of

was the name of this part of the island) was now absent. However, he soon after sent a message to notify his arrival, and to desire that the Captain would visit him ashore. This was not the same person, though of the same name, with the chief, whom Captain Cook had seen here during his last voyage; but his brother, a boy about ten years old, who had succeeded on the death of the elder Waheiaodoo, about twenty months before, and was now under the tutorage of a chief, named Etoera. The celebrated Queen Oberea was dead. Accordingly, Omai and the Captain prepared to make him a formal visit. On this occasion, Omai, assisted by some of his friends, dressed himself: not after the English fashion, nor that of Otaheite, nor that of Tongataboo, nor in the dress of any country upon earth; but in a strange medley of all that he was possessed of. There was nothing remarkable in this interview, except the information which Captain Cook received, that the Spaniards, when they visited the island, had desired the chiefs not to suffer him to enter Oheitepeha Bay, if he should return again, for that the island belonged to them. But the person, says Captain Cook, who addressed me with this information, assured me, that they were so far from paying any regard to this request, that he was authorized now to make a formal surrender of the province of Tiaraboo to me, and of every thing in it; which marks very plainly, that these people are no strangers to the policy of accommodating themselves to present cir-

the grave of
who died
first time.
great pains
inhabitants,
them with
and venera-
not succeed
character of
sons whom
lives called
He took
guage, that
minds with
ness of the
think mean-
so far as to
ed as an in-
only a small
ad entirely
Cook, they
a few shot,
her, to the
improbable
this people
er views, in
the English,
t home; for
(which, in
considered as
lateema had
aboo, (which
was

circumstances. At length, the young chief was directed, by his attendants, to come and embrace me; and, by way of confirming this treaty of friendship, we exchanged names. The ceremony being closed, he and his friends accompanied me on board to dinner.

Omai had prepared a *maro*, composed of red and yellow feathers, which he intended for Otoo, the king of the whole island, and, considering where we were, it was a present of very great value. I said all that I could to persuade him not to produce it now, wishing him to keep it on board till an opportunity should offer of presenting it to Otoo with his own hands. But he had too good an opinion of the honesty and fidelity of his countrymen to take my advice. Nothing would serve him, but to carry it ashore, on this occasion, and to give it to Wabeiadoo, to be by him forwarded to Otoo, in order to its being added to the royal *maro*. He thought by this management, that he should oblige both chiefs; whereas he highly disobliged the one, whose favour was of the most consequence to him, without gaining any reward from the other. What I had foreseen happened; for Wabeiadoo kept the *maro* himself, and only sent to Otoo a very small piece of feathers; not the twentieth part of what belonged to the magnificent present.

On the 19th, Captain Cook received from the young chief, a present of ten or a dozen of hogs some cloth, and a quantity of fruit. In the evening, we exhibited some fire-works, which both pleased and astonished the numerous spectators.

Some

chief was
and em-
g this trea-
nes. The
friends ac-
posed of red
d for Otoo,
considering
ry great va-
ade him not
keep it on
r of present-
But he had
nd fidelity of
e. Nothing
more, on this
boa, to be by
to its being
ught by this
both chiefs;
nc, whose fa-
o him, with-
her. What
heiadoo kept
Otoo a very
ventieth part
nt present.
ved from the
dozen of hogs
In the even-
which both
us spectators.
Some

Some of our gentlemen, in their walks, discovered, as they thought, a Roman Catholic chapel. They described the altar which they said they had seen, and every other constituent part of such a place of worship. They mentioned, however, that two persons who had the care of it, would not permit them to go in; on which account the Captain imagined they were mistaken, and had the curiosity to pay a visit to it himself. The supposed chapel happened to be a *toopapao*, in which the body of the late Waheiado lay, in a kind of state. It was in a pretty large house, enclosed with a low palisade. The *toopapao* was remarkably neat, and resembled one of those little awnings over their large canoes. It was hung and covered with cloths and mats of a variety of colours, which had a beautiful effect. One piece of scarlet broad cloth of the length of four or five yards, appeared conspicuous among the other ornaments; which had probably been received as a present from the Spaniards. This cloth, and some tassels of feathers, suggested to our gentlemen the idea of a chapel; and their imagination supplied whatever else was wanting to create a resemblance; hearing that the Spaniards had visited this place, might also operate on their minds upon this occasion, and add to the probability of its being a chapel. Small offerings of fruits and roots seemed to be daily made at this shrine, some pieces being now quite fresh. These were deposited on a kind of altar, which stood without the palisades; within which we

were not permitted to enter. Two men constantly attended here, both night and day; as well to watch over the place, as to dress and undress the *toopapaa*. When Captain Cook went to survey it, the cloth and its appendages were rolled up; but, at his request, the two attendants placed it in order, but not till after they had dressed themselves in clean white robes. The chief, we were informed, had been dead about twenty months.

Having provided a fresh supply of water, and finished all our necessary operations, on the 22d we brought off our animals from shore, and made ready for sea. While the ships were unmooring, Omai and Captain Cook landed, in the morning of the 23d, to take leave of the young chief. While they were with him, one of those persons, whom they call *Eatoos*, from a persuasion that they possess the spirit of the divinity, presented himself before them. He had all the appearances of insanity about him, and his only covering was a quantity of plantain leaves wrapped round his waist. He uttered what he had to say in a low, squeaking voice, so as hardly to be understood. But Omai said he perfectly comprehended him, and that he was advising *Wahaiadoo*, not to accompany Captain Cook to *Matavai*, an expedition which he had never known that he intended, nor had the Captain ever made such a proposal to him. The *Eatoo*, also, predicted, that the ships would not arrive that day at *Matavai*. In this, however, he was mistaken; though appearances, at that

tha
not
Wh
sho
run
to c
half
was
the
C
was
rive
man
little
tion
butcl
the
well
durin
know
man
move
them
he se
what
upon
So
breez
and t
at M
in till
prop
Oz

that time, favoured his assertion, as there was not a single breath of wind in any direction. While he was delivering his prophecy, a heavy shower of rain came on, which occasioned all to run for shelter, except himself, who appeared to disregard it. He continued speaking about half an hour, and then retired. No attention was paid to what he uttered, though some of the natives laughed at him.

Captain Cook asked the chief, whether he was an *Earee* or a *Toutow*? The answer he received was, that he was *taata eno*, that is, a bad man. And yet, notwithstanding this, and the little notice taken of the mad prophet, superstition so far governs the natives, that they absolutely believe such persons to be possessed with the spirit of the *Eatooa*. Omai seemed to be well instructed concerning them. He said, that during the fits, with which they are seized, they know nobody, and that if any one of them is a man of property, he will then give away every moveable he possesses, if his friends do not put them out of his reach; and, when he recovers, he seems not to have the least remembrance of what he had done during the time the fit was upon him.

Soon after the Captain got on board, a light breeze springing up at east, we got under sail, and the *Resolution* anchored, the same evening, at *Matavai Bay*; but the *Discovery* did not get in till the next morning, consequently the man's prophecy was half fulfilled.

On the 24th of August, Captain Cook left the

the Bay of Oheitepaha, and in the evening anchored in Matavai Bay, in another part of the island, whence he expected his principal supply. Here he and Omai had an interview, on shore, with Otoo, the King of the whole island. Omai, says the Captain, had prepared himself for this ceremony, by dressing himself in his very best cloaths, and behaved with a great deal of respect and modesty. Nevertheless, very little notice was taken of him. Perhaps, envy had some share in producing this cold reception. He made the chief a present of a large piece of red feathers, and about two or three yards of gold cloth; and I gave him a suit of fine linen, a gold laced hat, some tools, and, what was of more value than all the other articles, a quantity of red feathers, and one of the bonnets in use at the Friendly Islands.

After the hurry of this visit was over, the King, and the whole Royal Family, accompanied me on board, followed by several canoes, laden with all kinds of provisions, in quantity sufficient to have served the companies of both ships for a week. Each of the family owned, or pretended to own, a part; so that I had a present from every one of them; and every one of them had a separate present in return from me; which was the great object in view. Soon after, the King's mother, who had not been present at the first interview, came on board bringing with her a quantity of provisions and cloth, which she divided between me and Omai. For, although he was but little noticed at first,

by

by his
know
court
as I co
Otoo.
anima
able to
ment
I knew
his nat
ted.
my ad
dent a
of Otoo
Otahei
bonds
plunde
they w
worth
rily dro
chiefs;
from a
sents,
people,
Capt
the po
island.
a turke
a drake
Oparre
geese a
At Opa
tives fa

by his countrymen, they no sooner gained the knowledge of his riches, than they began to court his friendship. I encouraged this as much as I could; for it was my wish to fix him with Otoo. As I intended to leave all my European animals at this island, I thought he would be able to give some instruction about the management of them, and about their use. Besides, I knew, and saw, that the farther he was from his native island, he would be the better respected. But, unfortunately, poor Omai rejected my advice, and conducted himself in so imprudent a manner, that he soon lost the friendship of Otoo, and of every other person of note in Otaheite. He associated with none but vagabonds and strangers, whose sole views were to plunder him. And, if I had not interfered, they would not have left him a single article worth carrying from the island. This necessarily drew upon him the ill-will of the principal chiefs; who found that they could not procure, from any one in the ships, such valuable presents, as Omai bestowed, or the lowest of the people, his companions.

Captain Cook was next engaged in landing the poultry, with which he was to stock the island. They consisted of a peacock and hen, a turkey-cock and hen, a gander and three geese, a drake and four ducks. All these he left at Oparre, in the possession of Otoo; and the geese and ducks began to breed before he sailed. At Oparre, he found a gander, which the natives said was the same that Captain Wallis had given

given Oberea ten years before; several goats; and the Spanish bull; which latter could have been of no use, if Captain Cook had not arrived; as the Spaniards had left no cows ashore. Probably, they died in their passage from Lima. Captain Cook sent three cows to this bull; and the bull which he himself had brought, with the horse and mare, and sheep, he put ashore at Matavai. He likewise planted a piece of ground with several articles, very few of which he believed the natives would ever look after. Some melons, potatoes, and two pine-apple plants, were in a fair way of succeeding, before he left the place. He also planted several shaddock trees, which he had brought from the Friendly Islands. These, he thought, could hardly fail of success, unless their growth should be impeded by the same premature curiosity, which destroyed a vine planted by the Spaniards at Oheitepeha. A number of the natives got together, to taste the first fruit it bore; but, as the grapes were still sour, they considered it as little better than poison, and it was unanimously determined to tread it under foot. In that state, Omai found it by chance, and was overjoyed at the discovery: for he had a full confidence, that if he had but grapes, he could easily make wine. Accordingly, he had several slips cut off from the tree, to carry away with him; and the remainder of it was pruned, and put in order. Perhaps, becoming wise by Omai's instructions, they may now suffer the fruit to grow to perfection, and not pass so hasty a sentence

sente
tende
set up
and,
for th
ple as
partm
entru
astron
we re
were
The I
and m
Our f
our sh
compl
the br
found
At
tercou
are re
and, w
Spania
him a
in app
he had
them t
when
not fail
could.
We
young
real na

eral goats; could have ad not ar- pws ashore. from Lima. bull; and ught, with put ashore. a piece of w of which look after. pine-apple ding, before several shad- t from the ight, could owth should e curiosity, ne Spaniards natives got ore; but, as sidered it as unanimous- ot. In that d was over- a full confi- e could ea- had several y away with pruned, and wise by O- ffer the fruit s. so hasty a sentence

sentence upon it again. As Captain Cook intended to continue here a considerable time, we set up our two observatories on Matavai Point; and, adjoining to them, two tents were pitched, for the reception of a guard, and of such people as might be left on shore, in different departments. The command at this station was entrusted to Mr King; who also attended the astronomical and other observations. While we remained here, the crews of both ships were occupied in many necessary operations. The Discovery's main-mast was carried ashore, and made as good as it had ever been before. Our sails and water-casks were repaired; both our ships were caulked; and the rigging was completely over-hauled. We likewise inspected the bread that we had on board in casks, and found that but little of it was damaged.

At Matavai, Captain Cook renewed his intercourse with all his old friends, whose names are recorded in his account of his second voyage; and, while there, one of the natives, whom the Spaniards had carried with them to Lima, paid him a visit. Though not to be distinguished, in appearance, from the rest of his countrymen, he had not forgot some Spanish words. Among them the most frequent were, *si Senyor*; and, when a stranger was introduced to him, he did not fail to rise up and accost him as well as he could.

We also found here, says Captain Cook, the young man whom we called Oedidee, but whose real name is Heeteheete. I had carried him from

from Ulitea in 1773, and brought him back in 1774; after he had visited the Friendly Islands, New Zealand, Easter Island, and the Marqueses; and being on board my ship, in that extensive navigation, about seven months. He was at least as tenacious of his good breeding, as the man who had been at Lima; and *yes, Sir, or if you please, Sir,* were as frequently repeated by him, as *si Sennor,* was by the other. Heeteheete, who is a native of Bolabola, had arrived in Otaheite, about three months before, with no other intention, that we could learn, than to gratify his curiosity, or, perhaps, some other favourite passion; which are, very often, the only objects of the pursuit of other travelling gentlemen. It was evident, however, that he preferred the modes, and even garb, of his countrymen, to ours. For, though I gave him some cloaths, which our Admiralty Board had been pleased to send for his use (to which I added a chest of tools, and a few other articles, as a present from myself), he declined wearing them after a few days. This instance, and that of the person who had been at Lima, may be urged as a proof of the strong propensity natural to man, of returning to habits acquired at an early age, and only interrupted by accident. And, perhaps, it may be concluded, that even Omai, who had imbibed almost the whole English manners, will, in a very short time after our leaving him, like Oedidee, and the visitor of Lima, return to his own native garments.

In the morning of the 27th, a man from O-

heitepeha

heir
had
and
som
got
that
they
days
whic
the a
dispa
look
time,
defen
peace
that a
opene
son to
impos
doubt
follow
that h
no shi
there
of the
told u
vented
they c
they f
to qui
tants o
might
there;
Vol

aim back in
 dly Islands,
 e Marque-
 that exten-
 . He was
 ding, as the
 es, Sir, or if
 repeated by
 er. Heete-
 had arrived
 before, with
 learn, than
 ps, some o-
 very often,
 other travel-
 however, that
 garb, of his
 h I gave him
 ty Board had
 o which I ad-
 other articles,
 lined wearing
 nce, and that
 Lima, may be
 openness natu-
 ts acquired at
 d by accident.
 ed, that even
 he whole Eng-
 time after our
 the visitor of
 arments.
 man from O-
 heitepeha

heitepeha informed us, that two Spanish ships
 had anchored in that bay the preceding night ;
 and to confirm this intelligence, he produced
 some coarse blue cloth, which, he said, he had
 got out of one of the ships. He further said,
 that Mateema was in one of the ships ; and that
 they would come to Matavai in two or three
 days. These, and some other circumstances,
 which he mentioned, gave the story so much
 the appearance of truth, that the Commodore
 dispatched Lieutenant Williamson in a boat, to
 look into Oheitepeha Bay ; and, in the mean
 time, both our ships were put in a posture of
 defence. For, tho' England and Spain were at
 peace when he left England, he did not know but
 that a different scene might, by this time, have
 opened. Upon enquiry, however, we had rea-
 son to imagine, that the relater of the story had
 imposed upon us ; and this was put beyond all
 doubt, when Mr Williamson returned the day
 following, who made his report to Captain Cook,
 that he had been at Oheitepeha, and found that
 no ships were there at present, nor had any been
 there since we left it. The people of this part
 of the island, where we now were stationed,
 told us, indeed, at first, that it was a fiction in-
 vented by those of Tiaraboo. But what view
 they could have, we could not conceive, unless
 they supposed that the report would induce us
 to quit the island, and thus deprive the inhabi-
 tants of Otahete-nooe of the advantages they
 might otherwise reap from our ships remaining
 there ; the natives of the two parts of the island
 being

being inveterate enemies to each other. Since we arrived at Matavai, the weather had been unsettled till the 29th; before which day we were unable to get equal altitudes of the sun for ascertaining the going of the time-keeper. The caulking, and other repairs of the ships, were also retarded by the same cause. In the evening of this day, the islanders made a precipitate retreat, both from our land station, and from on board the ships. We conjectured that this arose from their knowing that some theft had been committed, and apprehending punishment upon that account. At length, we became acquainted with the whole affair. One of the Surgeon's mates had made an excursion into the country to purchase curiosities, and had taken with him four hatchets for the purpose of exchange. Having been so imprudent as to employ a native to carry them, the fellow took an opportunity of running off with so valuable a prize. This was the reason of the sudden flight, in which Otoo himself, and all his family, had joined; and it was with difficulty that the Captain stopped them, after following them for the space of two or three miles. As he had determined to take no measures for the recovery of the hatchets, that his people for the future might be more upon their guard against such negligence, every thing quickly resumed its former tranquility.

The next morning, some messengers arrived from Eimeo, with intelligence, that the people of that island were in arms; and that Otoo's partizans

parti
fite
quar
in r
form
tain
the r
a ref
succe
ed no
gers,
the C
the h
cil.
ness v
purpo
affair
chiefs
was o
menc
some
corum
ry tur
that t
diet.
as the
stored
ed; an
ly, tha
Otoo f
Those
war, a
and all

er. Since
had been
h day we
he fun for
ber. The
hips, were
the even-
precipitate
and from
d that this
the theft had
punishment
became ac-
One of the
on into the
had taken
pose of ex-
t as to em-
ow took an
valuable a
the sudden
his family,
ty that the
g them for
he had de-
he recovery
the future
gainst such
med its for-
ers arrived
the people
hat Otoo's
partizans

partizans there had been obliged by the oppo-
site party to retreat to the mountains. The
quarrel between the two islands, which began
in 1774, had partly subsided ever since. A
formidable armament had failed soon after Cap-
tain Cook left Otaheite in his last voyage; but
the malecontents of Eimeo had made so gallant
a resistance that the fleet had returned without
success; and now another expedition was deem-
ed necessary. On the arrival of these messen-
gers, the chiefs assembled at Otoo's house, where
the Captain actually was at that time, and had
the honour of being admitted into their coun-
cil. One of the messengers opened the busi-
ness with a speech of considerable length, the
purport of which was to explain the situation of
affairs in Eimeo, and to excite the Otaheitean
chiefs to arm on the occasion. This opinion
was opposed by others who were against com-
mencing hostilities; and the debate was for
some time, carried on with great order and de-
corum. At length, however, they became ve-
ry tumultuous, and the Captain began to expect
that their meeting would conclude like a Polish
diet. But the contending chiefs cooled as fast
as they grew warm, and order was speedily re-
stored. In the end, the party for war prevail-
ed; and it was resolved, though not unanimou-
sly, that a strong force should be sent to Eimeo.
Otoo said very little during the whole debate.
Those of the council, who were inclinable for
war, applied to the Captain for his assistance;
and all of them were desirous of knowing what

part he would take. Omai was sent for to act as interpreter; but, as he could not be found the Captain being under a necessity of speaking for himself, told them, as well as he could, that as he was not perfectly acquainted with the dispute, and as the natives of Eimeo had never given him the least cause of offence, he could not think of engaging in hostilities against them. With this declaration, they either were, or appeared to be satisfied. The Council was then dissolved; but before the Captain retired, Otoo desired him to come again in the afternoon, and bring Omai with him.

A party of us accordingly waited upon him at the appointed time; and he conducted us to his father, in whose presence the dispute with Eimeo was again discussed. The Commodore being very desirous of effecting an accommodation, founded the old chief on that subject; but he was deaf to any such proposal, and fully determined to carry on hostilities. On our enquiring into the cause of the war, we were informed, that several years ago, a brother of Waheidaoo of Tiaraboo, was sent to Eimeo, at the desire of Maheine, a popular chief of that island, to be their king; but he had not been there many days, before Maheine having caused him to be put to death, set up for himself, in opposition to Tieratabonooe, nephew of the deceased, who now became the lawful heir, or perhaps had been appointed, by the people of Otakeite, to succeed to the government on the death of the other.

Towha,

the
mar
Ein
vai
at t
that
and
eag
tem
qua
crif
ing
Thi
mor
nec
defi
ther
per
read
in t
tou,
mai
they
taha
ants
two
add
affi
feen
dina
him
refu

Towha, who is related to Otoo, and chief of the district of Tettaha, and who had been commander in chief of the armament sent against Eimeo in 1774, happened not to be at Mattavai at this time, and therefore, was not present at these consultations. It appeared, however, that he was no stranger to what was transacted; and that he entered into the affair with great eagerness and spirit. For, on the 1st of September, a messenger arrived from him to acquaint Otoo, that he had killed a man to be sacrificed to the *Eatooa*, with the view of imploring the assistance of the deity against Eimeo. This ceremony was to be performed at the great *morai*, at Attahooroo; and Otoo's presence was necessary on the occasion. Captain Cook was desirous of being present at this solemnity, and therefore proposed to Otoo, that he might be permitted to accompany him. To this the king readily consented; and they immediately set out in the Captain's boat, with his old friend Potatou, Mr Anderson, and Mr Webber, while Omai followed them in a canoe. In their way they landed upon a small island, lying off Tettaha, where they found Towha and his attendants. After a little conversation between the two chiefs, on the subject of the war, Towha, addressed himself to the Captain, soliciting his assistance. When he excused himself, Towha seemed displeas'd; thinking it rather extraordinary, that one who had constantly declared himself the friend of their island, should now refuse to fight against its enemies. Before they

parted, Towha gave to Otoo two or three red feathers, tied up in a tuft; our party then re-embarked, having taken on board a priest who was to assist at the solemnity.

As soon as they landed at Attahooroo, which was about two o'clock, Otoo desired that the sailors might be ordered to continue in the boat; and that Captain Cook, Mr Anderson, and Mr Webber, would take off their hats as soon as they should come to the *Morai*, to which they immediately proceeded, attended by numbers of men, and some boys; but not one woman was present. They found four priests, with their assistants, waiting for them. The dead body or sacrifice, was in a small canoe, that lay on the beach, fronting the *Morai*. Two of the priests, with several of their attendants, were sitting by the canoe; the others at the *Morai*. Our company stopped at the distance of twenty or thirty paces from the priests. Here Otoo placed himself; our gentlemen, and a few others, standing by him, while the majority of the people were removed at a greater distance.

The ceremonies now commenced. One of the attendants of the priests brought a young plantain-tree, and laid it down before the king. Another approached, bearing a small tuft of red feathers, twisted on some fibres of the cocoa-nut husk, with which he touched one of Otoo's feet, and afterwards retired with it to his companions. One of the priests who were seated at the *morai*, now began a long prayer; and at particular times, set down young plantain-trees, which

which
this
ciatin
in on
the
allow
tooa.
the
down
rying
renew
tain-t
times
wrapp
was in
the b
round
and o
for ab
ped o
rallel
standi
a long
joined
tuft o
prayer
the in
ken o
green
howev
man v
thers
with t

three red
y then re-
priest who
oo, which
d. that the
the boat ;
n, and Mr
as soon as
which they
y numbers
ne woman
iests, with
The dead
canoe, that
i. Two of
attendants,
at the Mo-
distance of
fts. Here
and a few
majority of
r distance.
d. One of
ht a young
e the king.
tuft of red
the cocoa-
e of Otoo's
to his com-
were seated
yer ; and at
tain-trees,
which

which were placed upon the sacrifice. During this prayer, an islander, who stood by the officiating priest, held in his hands two bundles, in one of which, as we afterwards found, was the royal *maro* ; and the other, if we may be allowed the expression, was the ark of the *Ea-tooa*. The prayer being finished, the priests at the *morai*, with their assistants, went and sat down by those who were upon the beach, carrying the two bundles with them. They here renewed their prayers, during which the plantain-trees were taken, one by one, at various times, from off the dead body, which, being wrapped up in cocoa-leaves and small branches, was now taken out of the canoe, and laid upon the beach. The priests placed themselves around it ; some standing, and others sitting ; and one, or more of them, repeated sentences for about ten minutes. The body was now stripped of the leaves and branches, and placed parallel with the sea-shore. Then one of the priests, standing at the feet of the corpse, pronounced a long prayer, in which he was occasionally joined by the others, each of them holding a tuft of red feathers in his hand. During this prayer, some hair was pulled off the head of the intended sacrifice, and the left eye was taken out ; both which being wrapped up in a green leaf, were presented to the king ; who, however, did not touch them, but gave, to the man who presented them, the tuft of red feathers which he had received from Towha. This, with the eye and hair, was taken to the priests.
Not

Not long after, his majesty sent them another piece of feathers. In the course of this last ceremony, a king-fisher making a noise in the trees, Otoo turned to Captain Cook, saying, "That is the *Eatooa*;" and seemed to consider it as a favourable prognostic.

The corpse was then carried a little way, and laid under a tree; near which were fixed three thin pieces of wood variously carved. The bundles of cloth were placed on a part of the *morai*; and the tufts of red feathers were laid at the feet of the dead body, round which the priests stationed themselves; and our gentlemen were now permitted to go as near as they pleased. He who seemed to be the chief priest spoke for about a quarter of an hour, with different tones and gestures; sometimes appearing to expostulate with the deceased; at other times, asking several questions; then making various demands, as if the dead person either had power himself, or interest with the deity, to engage him to grant such requests; among which he desired him to deliver Eimeo, Moheine its chief, the women, hogs, and other things of the island, into their hands; which was, indeed, the express object of the sacrifice. He then prayed near half an hour, in a whining tone, and two other priests joined in the prayer, in the course of which a priest plucked some more hair from the head of the corpse, and put it upon one of the bundles. The chief priest now prayed alone, holding in his hand the feathers received from Towha. Having finished, he gave them to another

ther pri
the tuft
dles of
this plac

The c
conspicu
and the
beat flo
laid agai
the foot
seated t
their pra
a hole ab
they thro
stones an
the body
upon wh
was the
the mean
duced, a
hair was
taken ou
they wer
heart, an
put on h
dog, afte
was, wit
priests, w
ing. —Th
over the
very loud
in a loud
said, was

ther priest, who prayed in like manner; then all the tufts of feathers were placed upon the bundles of cloth, which concluded the ceremony at this place.

The dead body was now carried to the most conspicuous part of the *marai*, with the feathers, and the two bundles of cloth, while the drums beat slowly. The feathers and bundles were laid against the pile of stones, and the body at the foot of them. The priests having again seated themselves round the corpse, renewed their prayers, while some of their assistants dug a hole about the depth of two feet, into which they threw the victim, and covered it over with stones and earth. While they were committing the body to the grave, a boy squeaked aloud, upon which Omai said to Captain Cook, that it was the *Eatooa*. A fire having been made in the mean time, a lean half starved dog was produced, and killed by twisting his neck. The hair was then singed off, and the entrails being taken out, were thrown into the fire, where they were left to be consumed; but the kidney, heart, and liver, were only roasted, by being put on heated stones; and the carcase of the dog, after being rubbed over with the blood, was, with the liver, &c. laid down before the priests, who were seated round the grave, praying. They for some time uttered ejaculations over the dog, while two men, at intervals, beat very loud on two drums; and a boy screamed, in a loud shrill voice, three times. This, they said, was to invite the *Eatooa* to feast on the banquet

banquet that they had provided for him. When the priests had finished their prayers, the body, heart, liver, &c. of the dog, were placed on a *whatta*, or scaffold, about six feet in height, on which lay the remains of two other dogs, and of two pigs, which had been lately sacrificed. The priests and attendants now gave a kind of shout, which put an end to the ceremonies at present. The evening being arrived, our gentlemen were conducted to a house belonging to Potatou, where they were entertained, and lodged for the night. Having been informed, that the religious rites were to be renewed the next morning, they would not quit the place while any thing remained to be seen. Some of them repaired to the scene of action early in the morning; and, soon afterwards, a pig was sacrificed, and laid upon the same scaffold with the others. About eight o'clock, Otoo took our party again to the *morai*, where the priests, and a great multitude of people, were by this time assembled. The two bundles occupied the place where they had been deposited the preceding evening; the two drums were in the front of the *morai*, and the priests were stationed beyond them. The king placed himself between the drums, and desired Captain Cook to stand by him.

The ceremony of this day began with bringing a young plantain-tree, and laying it at his majesty's feet. A prayer was then repeated by the priests, holding in their hands several tufts of red feathers, and also a plume of ostrich feathers,

feathers
to Otoo
had end
tion, an
tlemen
who had
ceding
tinued n
the tufts
upon the
four pigs
mediatel
ken to a

One o
was four
Otaheite
of the cl
full leng
bout fift
quarter
the same
of cloth,
the waist
red feath
One end
about th
edges we
other en
ricious len
rows, in
pleasing
some of
to the up

. When
 he body,
 placed on
 eight, on
 ogs, and
 sacrificed.
 a kind of
 monies at
 our gen-
 onging to
 ned, and
 informed,
 ewed the
 the place
 Some of
 arly in the
 ig was sa-
 ffold with
 Otoo took
 he priests,
 re by this
 cupied the
 l the pre-
 ere in the
 ere station-
 himself be-
 n Cook to
 with bring-
 g it at his
 n repeated
 everal tufts
 of ostrich
 feathers,

feathers, which the Commodore had presented to Otoo on his first arrival. When the priests had ended the prayer, they changed their station, and placed themselves between our gentlemen and the *morai*. One of them, the same who had performed the principal part the preceding day, began another prayer, which continued near half an hour. During this prayer, the tufts of red feathers were put, one by one upon the ark of the *Eatooa*. Not long after, four pigs were produced, one of which was immediately killed, and the three others were taken to a neighbouring sty.

One of the bundles was now untied; and it was found to contain the *maro*, with which the Otaheiteans invest their kings. When taken out of the cloth, it was spread on the ground, at full length, before the priests. It is a girdle about fifteen feet in length, and one foot and a quarter in breadth, and is probably put on in the same manner as the common *maro*, or piece of cloth, used by these islanders to wrap round the waist. It was ornamented with yellow and red feathers; but principally with the former. One end of it was bordered with eight pieces, about the size and figure of a horse-shoe, whose edges were fringed with black feathers. The other end was forked, having the points of various lengths. The feathers were ranged in two rows, in square compartments, and produced a pleasing effect. They had been first fixed upon some of the cloth of the island, and then sewed to the upper end of the pendant which Captain
 Wallis

Wallis had left flying on shore, the first time of his arrival at Matavai. The priests pronounced a long prayer, relative to this part of the ceremony; and after it was ended, the badge of royalty was folded up with great care, and put into the cloth.

The other bundle, which we have already mentioned, under the name of the ark, was next opened, at one end; but our party were not permitted to approach near enough to examine its mysterious contents. The intelligence they obtained respecting it, was, that the *Eatooa*, (or rather what is supposed to represent him) was concealed in it. This sacred repository is composed of the twisted fibres of the husk of the cocoa-nut; and its figure is roundish, with one end considerably thicker than the other.

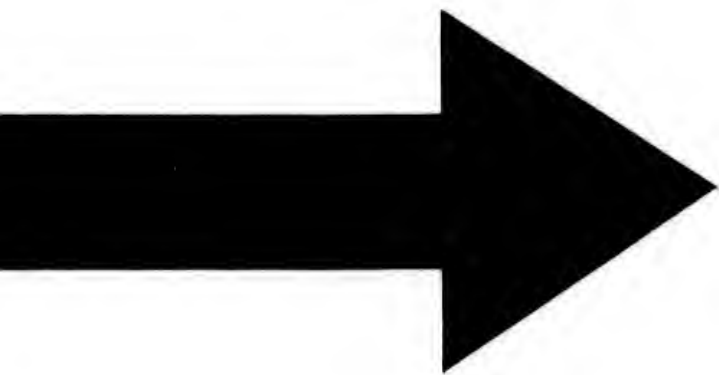
The pig that had been killed was by this time cleaned, and its entrails taken out. These happened to have many of those convulsive motions, which frequently appear in different parts, when an animal is killed; and this was considered as a very favourable omen to the intended expedition. After being exposed for some time, the entrails were carried and laid down before the priests. While one of them prayed, another closely inspected the entrails, and continued turning them gently with a stick. Having been sufficiently examined, they were then thrown into the fire. The sacrificed pig, and its liver, heart, &c. were now put upon the scaffold where the dog had been deposited; and then all the feathers, except the ostrich plume, being

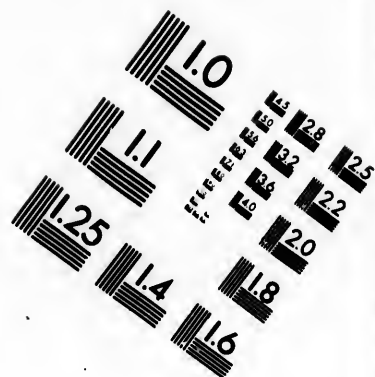
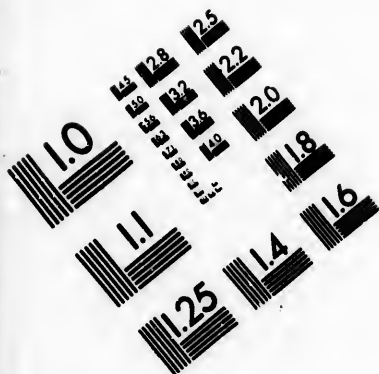
At time of
announced
the cere-
badge of
and put

e already
was next
were not
to examine
ence they
Eatooa, (or
him) was
ry is com-
ck of the
with one
er.
as by this
nt. These
ulfive mo-
rent parts,
was confi-
he intend-
for some
laid down
em prayed,
and con-
tick. Ha-
were then
d pig, aud
upon the
sited; and
ich plume,
being

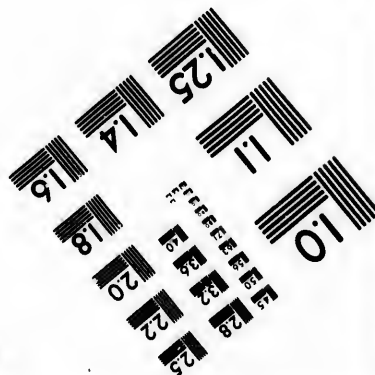
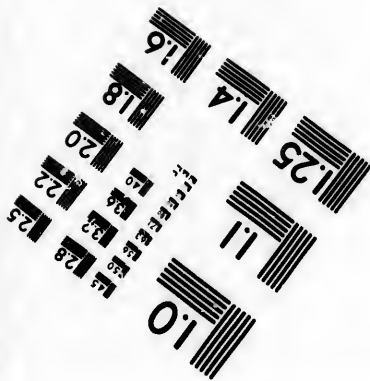
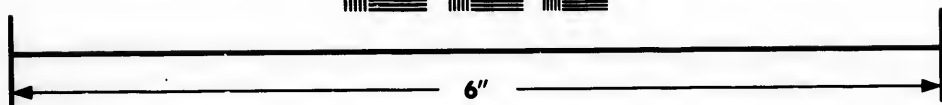
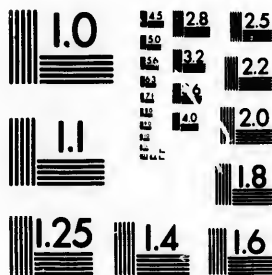
[Faint, mostly illegible text, possibly bleed-through from the reverse side of the page]







**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
15 12.8
12.5
12
11.8
11
10
9
8
7
6

15
12.8
12.5
12
11.8
11
10
9
8
7
6



Coats of Arms

being
whole
Fou
all the
A sm
fasten
fore-p
so, is
nuts,
upon
said, t
they w
out ag
The
casion,
and w
But it
them a
particu
tain,
guilty
bonds,
honest
mined
offered
ship, o
head a
temple
had bee
he had
The w
these o
their fa

VOL

being closed in the ark, an end was put to the whole solemnity.

Four double canoes remained upon the beach, all the morning, before the place of sacrifice. A small platform, covered with palm-leaves, fastened in mysterious knots, was fixed on the fore-part of each of these canoes; and this also, is called a *marai*. Some plantains, coconuts, bread-fruit, fish, and other articles, lay upon each of these naval *marais*. The natives said, that they belonged to the *Eatooa*, and that they were to attend the fleet that was to be sent out against Eimeo.

The unfortunate victim, offered on this occasion, was, to appearance, a middle-aged man, and was one of the lowest class of the people. But it did not appear, that they had fixed upon him on account of his having committed any particular crime, that deserved death. It is certain, however, that they usually select such guilty persons for their sacrifices, or else, vagabonds, who have no visible way of procuring an honest livelihood. Our gentlemen having examined the body of the unhappy sufferer, now offered up to the object of these people's worship, observed, that it was bloody about the head and face, and much bruised upon the right temple, which denoted the manner in which he had been killed. And they were informed, that he had been knocked on the head with a stone. The wretches who are destined to suffer on these occasions, are never previously apprized of their fate. Whenever any one of the principal

chiefs deems a human sacrifice necessary, on any great emergency, he fixes upon the victim, and then dispatches some of his trusty servants, who fall upon him suddenly, and either stone him to death, or beat out his brains with a club. The sovereign is next acquainted with it, whose presence is said to be absolutely requisite at the solemn rites that follow; and, indeed, on the late occasion, Otoo bore a capital part. The solemnity itself is termed *Poore Eree*, or the prayer of the chief; and the victim is called *Taata tabou* or consecrated man.

The *morai*, where the late sacrifice was offered, is always appropriated for the burial of the king of the whole island, and likewise of his family and some other persons of distinguished rank. It differs little, except in extent, from the common *morais*. Its principal part is a large oblong pile of stones, about thirteen feet in height, and contracted towards the top, with a quadrangular area on each side, loosely paved with pebbles, under which the bones of the chiefs are deposited. Not far from the end nearest the sea, is the place of sacrifice, where is a very large *whattu*, or scaffold, on which the offerings of fruits, and other vegetables, are placed; but the animals are laid on a smaller one, and the human sacrifices are interred under the pavement. There are several reliques scattered about the place; such as small stones raised in various parts of the pavement, some with bits of cloth fastened round them, others entirely covered with it; and, upon the side of the large pile, fronting the

the are
wood,
side oc
one en
form o
skulls
up afte
some p
carved
maro, a
ed to c
the cel

It is
offerin
of the
distant
And th
than o
at Ota
fions, i
to mak
cies; fo
forty-n
the *mo*
skulla
change
inferre
these v
practic
make i
be thos
if it c
Deity,

the area, are a great number of pieces of carved wood, in which their gods are supposed to reside occasionally. There is a heap of stones, at one end of the large scaffold, with a sort of platform on one side. On this they deposit all the skulls of the human sacrifices, which they take up after they have remained under ground for some months. Just above them, many of the carved pieces of wood are placed; and here the *maro*, and the other bundle, which was supposed to contain the god *Ooro*, were laid during the celebration of the late solemn rites.

It is probable that, this barbarous custom of offering human victims, prevails in all, or most of the islands of the Pacific Ocean, however distant from each other some of them may be. And though we should suppose, that not more than one person is sacrificed at one time, either at Otaheite, or other islands, yet these occasions, in all probability, occur so frequently, as to make a terrible havoc of the human species; for Captain Cook reckoned no less than forty-nine skulls of former victims, lying before the *maros*, at Attahooroo; and as none of those skulls appeared to have suffered any considerable change, or decay, from the weather, it may be inferred, that but a short time had elapsed, since these victims had been offered. This horrid practice, though no consideration whatever can make it cease to be detestable, might, perhaps, be thought less detrimental, in some respects, if it contributed to impress any awe for the Deity, or veneration for religion, upon the

minds of the spectators. But this was so far from being the case on the late occasion, that though a vast multitude of people had assembled at the *morai*, they shewed very little reverence for what was transacting. And Omai happening to arrive, after the ceremonies had begun, many of the islanders thronged round him, and were engaged, for the remaining part of the time in making him recount some of his adventures; to which they listened with great eagerness of attention, regardless of the solemn offices which their priests were then performing. Indeed, the priests themselves, except the one who sustained the principal part, either from their being familiarized to such objects, or from their reposing no great degree of confidence in the efficacy of their religious institutions, maintained very little of that solemnity which is necessary to give to acts of devotion their proper effect. Their habit was but an ordinary one; they conversed together with great familiarity; and the only attempt they made to preserve decorum, was by exerting their authority to prevent the populace from encroaching on the very spot where the rites were performed, and to suffer our gentlemen, as strangers, to come forward. They were, however, very candid in the answers which they gave to any interrogatories that were put to them, with regard to this inhuman institution. And, particularly, on being asked, what was the design of it, they replied, that it was an ancient custom, and was highly agreeable to their god,

god,
consec
tions.
did no
ved to
ficed
the co
his fee
to the
that h
only
(these
erifice
wasted

Hu
custon
of Ota
they h
savage
of the
ry abo
measu
Soon
come
and b
form
bury t
divinit
Th
chiefs
taha,
were
Tiarat

god, who came and fed upon the sacrifices; in consequence of which, he granted their petitions. It was then objected, that he certainly did not feed on these, as he was neither observed to do it, nor were the bodies of the sacrificed animals soon consumed; and that as to the corpse of a human victim, they prevented his feeding on that, by interring it. In answer to these objections, they gave it as their opinion, that he came in the night, invisibly, and fed only on the soul, or immaterial part, which (these people say) remains about the place of sacrifice, till the carcase of the victim is totally wasted by putrefaction.

Human sacrifices are not the only barbarous custom that still prevails amongst the inhabitants of Otaheite, though, in many others respects, they have emerged from the brutal manners of savage life. Besides cutting out the jaw-bones of their enemies slain in battle, which they carry about with them as trophies, they, in some measure, offer up their bodies to the *Eatooa*. Soon after an engagement, in which they have come off victorious, they collect all the dead, and bring them to the *morai*, where, with great form and ceremony, they dig a large hole, and bury them all in, as so many offerings to their divinities.

They treat, in a different manner, their own chiefs that fall in battle. Their late king, *Top-taha*, *Toubourai-tamaide*, and another chief, who were all slain in an engagement with those of *Tiaraboo*, were brought to the *morai* at *Atta-*

H h 3

hooroo.

hooroo. There the priests cut out their bowels before the great altar; and their dead bodies were afterwards interred in three different places, near the great pile of stones above mentioned; and the common men, who lost their lives in the battle, were all buried in one hole, at the foot of the same pile. This was performed the day after the battle, with much pomp and formality, amidst a numerous concourse of people, as a thanksgiving offering to the deity, for the victory they had obtained the preceding day. The vanquished, in the mean time, had taken refuge in the mountains, where they remained upwards of a week, till the fury of the victors began to abate. A treaty was then set on foot by which it was agreed, that Otoo should be proclaimed king of the whole island; and the solemnity of investing him with the *maro*, or badge of royalty, was performed at the same *morai*, with great magnificence.

At the close of the very extraordinary scene exhibited at the *morai*, our party embarked about twelve o'clock, in order to return to Matavai; and, in their way, paid a visit to Towha, who had continued in the little island, where they met him the preceding day. Some conversation about public affairs passed between Otoo and him; and the latter entreated Captain Cook, once more, to join them as an ally, in their war against Eimeo. By his positive refusal he entirely lost the good opinion of this chief.

Before they separated, he interrogated our gentlemen concerning the solemnity, at which they

they ha
if it an
they e
such a
country
lebratio
as it w
ments
ants;
ceal hi
with T
bloody
of it, a
making
would
this ve
intende
unsuccess
lengths
danger
war, th
violent
bout i
Maheia
stances
militar
insure
convey
on the
he sup
that th
especial
taken

they had been present; and asked, particularly, if it answered their expectations; what opinion they entertained of its efficacy; and whether such acts of worship were frequent in their own country? They had been silent during the celebration of the horrid ceremony; but, as soon as it was completed, freely expressed their sentiments upon the subject to Otoo, and his attendants; consequently Captain Cook did not conceal his detestation of it, in this conversation with Towha. Exclusive of the barbarity of the bloody custom, he urged the unreasonableness of it, alledging that such a sacrifice, instead of making the *Eatooa* propitious to their nation, would excite his vengeance; and that, from this very circumstance, he concluded, that their intended expedition against Maheine would be unsuccessful. This was proceeding to great lengths upon conjecture; but there was little danger of being mistaken; for, respecting this war, there were three parties in this island, one violent for it, another perfectly indifferent about it; and the third avowed supporters of Maheine, and his cause. Under these circumstances, it was not probable that such a plan of military operations would be settled, as could insure success. Omai acted as interpreter, in conveying the Captain's sentiments to Towha, on the subject of the late horrid sacrifice; and he supported his arguments with such spirit, that the chief appeared to be extremely angry; especially, on being informed, that if he had taken away the life of a man in England, as he had

had done here, his rank would not have protected him from an ignominious death. Upon this, he exclaimed, *maeno! maeno!* (vile! vile!) and would nor hear a syllable more about it. Many of the natives were present at this debate; particularly the attendants and servants of Towha; and when Omai mentioned the punishment that would in England be inflicted upon the greatest man, if he dared to kill the meanest servant, they listened very attentively: and, perhaps, on this subject, they thought differently from their master.

Leaving Towha, our gentlemen proceeded to Oparre, where Otoo solicited them to pass the night. They landed in the evening; and, on their way to his habitation, had an opportunity of observing how these people amuse themselves, in their private *beevas*. They saw about a hundred of them sitting in a house; in the midst of whom were two women, and an old man behind each of them, beating gently upon a drum; and the women, at intervals, singing with great softness and delicacy. The assembly were very attentive, and seemed, as it were, absorbed in the pleasure the music gave them; few of them taking any notice of the strangers, and the performers never once ceasing. When the party arrived at Otoo's house, it was almost dark. Here they were entertained with one of their public *beevas*, or plays, in which his three sisters represented the principal characters. This they call a *beeva raa*, and no person is suffered to enter the house or area, where it is exhibited.

This

This is
are the
sion, w
they ac
ed mar
whercin
to affor
which
compan
Matava
ther, fi
the Ca
short ti

Whil
sent fro
supplied
After th
pany an
us, amo
Omai, v
of fish,
being c
back to
vants b
ready fo
was a la
sence.
whole p
It was
ro, and
scraped
self. A
nels, wa

This is always the case, when the royal sisters are the performers. Their dress, on this occasion, was truly elegant and picturesque, and they acquitted themselves in a very distinguished manner; though some comic interludes, wherein four men were the performers, seemed to afford greater entertainment to the audience, which was numerous. The Captain and his companions proceeded, the next morning, to Matavai, leaving Otoo at Oparre; but his mother, sisters, and many other women, attended the Captain on board, and Otoo followed a short time after.

While Otoo and Captain Cook had been absent from the ships, they had been sparingly supplied with fruit, and had not many visitors. After their return, we had abundance of company and provisions. On the 4th, a party of us, among whom was Otoo, dined ashore with Omai, who provided excellent fare, consisting of fish, fowls, pork, and puddings. Dinner being over, Captain Cook accompanied Otoo back to his dwelling, where he found all his servants busy, in getting a quantity of provisions ready for him. Amongst other articles, there was a large hog, which they killed in his presence. There was also a large pudding; the whole process in making which the Captain saw. It was composed of bread-fruit, plantains, taro, and palm or pandanus-nuts, each rasped, scraped, or beat up very fine, and baked by itself. A quantity of the juice of cocoa-nut-kernels, was put into a kind of wooden tray. The

other

other articles, hot from the oven, were put into this vessel; together with some hot stones, in order to make the contents firmer. Three or four persons were employed in stirring up the several ingredients, till they were perfectly incorporated, and the juice of the cocoa-nut was turned to oil; and the whole mass, at last, was nearly of the consistency of a hasty-pudding. The hog being baked, and the pudding being made, they, together with two living hogs, some bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts were sent on board the Captain's ship in a canoe, followed by him and all the royal family.

A young ram, of the Cape-breed, that had been lambed, and carefully brought up on board Captain Cook's ship, was killed by a dog the following day. This was the more to be regretted, as it was the only one of that breed that we had; and only one of the English breed was now remaining.

On the 7th, in the evening, we exhibited some fire-works before a vast concourse of people, some of whom were highly entertained, but the greater number were much terrified with the exhibition; infomuch, that they could hardly be prevailed on to keep together, to see the whole of the entertainment. What concluded the business, was a table-rocket. It flew off the table, and dispersed the whole crowd in an instant; even the most resolute amongst them now fled with precipitation.

On the 8th of September, a party of us dined with our former ship-mate, Oedidee, on
fish.

fish and
pound
it was
ble, w
when
was fu
he said
cordin
I found
a prod
singula
of clo
was h
the ren
under
let fall
over th
a circu
the out
of diff
ably in
five or
this fin
could f
or brea
and gi
equipp
ship, t
ty of fi
sent to
ther se
but I b
large p

fish and pork. The hog weighed about thirty pounds; and it may be worth mentioning, that it was alive, dressed, and brought upon the table, within the hour. We had but just dined, when Otoo came, and asked me, if my belly was full? On my answering in the affirmative, he said, 'Then, come, along with me.' I accordingly went with him to his father's, where I found some employed in dressing two girls with a prodigious quantity of fine cloth, after a very singular fashion. The one end of each piece of cloth, of which there were a good many, was held up over the heads of the girls, while the remainder was wrapped round their bodies, under the arm-pits. Then the upper ends were let fall, and hung down in folds to the ground, over the other, so far as to bear resemblance to a circular hoop-petticoat. Afterward, round the outside of all, were wrapped several pieces of differently coloured cloth, which considerably increased the size; so that it was not less than five or six yards in circuit, and the weight of this singular attire was as much as the poor girls could support. To each were hung two *taames*, or breast-plates, by way of enriching the whole, and giving it a picturesque appearance. Thus equipped, they were conducted on board the ship, together with several hogs, and a quantity of fruit, which, with the cloth, was a present to me from Otoo's father. Persons, of either sex, dressed in this manner, are called *atee*; but I believe, it is never practised, except when large presents of cloth are to be made. At least,

I never saw it practised upon any other occasion ; nor, indeed, had I ever such a present before ; but both Captain Clerke and I had cloth given to us afterward, thus wrapped round the bearers.

The next day, Captain Cook received a present of five hogs, and some fruit from Otoo ; and one hog, and some fruit from each of his sisters. Other provisions were also in great plenty. Great quantities of mackarel had been caught here by the natives, for two or three successive days ; some of each were sold on board the ships.

Otoo was equally attentive to supply our wants, and contribute to our amusement. On the 10th, he treated a party of us at Oparre, with a play. His three sisters were the performers, and their dresses were new and elegant, much more so than we had met with in any of these islands.

The principal object, however, that the Captain had now in view, in going to Oparre, was to see an embalmed corpse, near the residence of Otoo. On enquiry, says he, I found it to be the remains of Tee, a chief well known to me, when I was at this island, during my last voyage. It was lying in a *toopapao*, more elegantly constructed than their common ones. It was in a pretty large house, enclosed with a low palisade. It resembled one of those little houses, or awnings, belonging to their large canoes. When we arrived at the place, the body was under cover, and wrapped up in cloth, within the *toopapao* ; but, at my desire, the man who had
the

an.

er occasion ;
sent before ;
cloth given
the bearers.
eived a pre-
from Otoo ;
each of his
also in great
el had been
wo or three
ere fold on

supply our
ment. On
at Oparre,
he perform-
nd elegant,
a in any of

at the Cap-
Oparre, was
e residence
found it to
d known to
ing my last
, more ele-
on ones. It
with a low
ittle houses,
rge canoes.
dy was un-
within the
n who had
the

Leah's Tomb.



THE BODY OF THE CHIEF, AS PRESERVED AFTER DEATH IN OTAHETI.

the ca
a kind
as full
were
close t
ed the
cloth,
effect.
every p
was th
begun,
smell p
one of
bove fo
ration t
the mu
nails w
hered f
pliable,
happen
were M
told m
thod of
bodies,
their de
ing the
anus; a
fed wit
part; t
skin, it
afterwa
of perfe
quently

VOL.

the care of it, brought it out, and laid it upon a kind of bier, in such a manner, that we had as full a view of it as we could wish; but we were not allowed to go within the pales that enclose the *toopapoo*. After he had thus exhibited the corpse, he hung the place with mats and cloth, so disposed as to produce a very pretty effect. We found the body not only entire in every part; but, what surprised us much more, was that putrefaction seemed scarcely to be begun, as there was not the least disagreeable smell proceeding from it; though the climate is one of the hottest, and Tee had been dead above four months. The only remarkable alteration that had happened, was a shrinking of the muscular parts and eyes: but the hair and nails were in their original state, and still adhered firmly; and the several joints were quite pliable, or in that kind of relaxed state which happens to persons who faint suddenly. Such were Mr Anderson's remarks to me, who also told me, that on his enquiring into the method of effecting this preservation of their dead bodies, he had been informed, that soon after their death, they are disembowelled, by drawing the intestines, and other *viscera*, out at the *anus*; and the whole cavity is then filled or stuffed with cloth introduced through the same part; that when any moisture appeared on the skin, it was carefully dried up, and the bodies afterward rubbed all over, with a large quantity of perfumed cocoa-nut oil; which, being frequently repeated, preserved them a great many

THE BODY OF TEE A CHIEF AS PRESERVED AFTER DEATH IN OTAHETI.

months ; but, that, at last, they gradually moulder away. This was the information Mr Anderson received ; for my own part, I could not learn any more about their mode of operation, than what Omai told me, who said, that they made use of the juice of a plant which grows amongst the mountains ; of cocoa-nut oil ; and of frequent washing with sea-water. I was also told, that the bodies of all their great men, who die a natural death, are preserved in this manner ; and that they expose them to public view for a very considerable time after. At first, they are laid out every day, when it does not rain ; afterwards, the intervals become greater and greater ; and, at last, they are seldom to be seen.

We quitted Oparre in the evening, leaving Otoo, and all the royal family. The Captain saw none of them till the 12th ; when all, except the chief himself, honoured him with a visit. He was gone, they said, to Attahooroo, to assist at another human sacrifice, sent by the chief of Tiaraboo to be offered up at the *morai*. This second instance, within so short a period, was a melancholy proof, that the victims of this bloody superstition are very numerous amongst this humane people. The Captain would have been present at this sacrifice also, had he been earlier informed of it, but now it was too late. For the same reason, he omitted being present at a public transaction, at Oparre, the preceding day, when Otoo, with great solemnity, restored to the adherents of the late king Tootaha, the
lands

lands
they

Oto
cising
and, t
compa
ed on
Matav
spectat
had, in
he had
trive t
fore, t
horse
repeate
and ye
unabat
made o
ed with
convey
of othe
Europe

The
Bolabo
Matav
canoes
of his
ple cor
ty. C
very p
beries
gulation
had er

lands and possessions, of which, after his death, they had been deprived.

Otoo returned the next evening, from exercising the most disagreeable of his royal duties; and, the next day, being honoured with his company the Captains Cook and Clerke, mounted on horseback, and rode round the plain of Matavai, to the astonishment of a vast train of spectators. Once or twice before this, Oinai had, indeed, attempted to get on a horse; but he had as often fallen off, before he could contrive to seat himself properly; this was, therefore, the first time they had seen any body on horseback. What the Captains had begun, was repeated daily, by one or another of our people; and yet the curiosity of the natives continued unabated. After they had seen the use that was made of these animals, they were greatly delighted with them; and we were of opinion, that they conveyed to them a better idea of the greatness of other nations, than all the novelties that their European visitors had carried amongst them.

The next day, Etary, or Olla, the god of Bolabola, removed from the neighbourhood of Matavai, to Oparre, attended by several sailing canoes. Otoo, we were told, did not approve of his being so near our station, where his people could more conveniently invade our property. Otoo, it must be acknowledged, took every prudent method to prevent thefts and robberies; and it was principally owing to his regulations, that so few were committed. He had erected a small house or two behind our

post; and two others near our tents, between the river and the sea. Some of his own people continually kept watch in all these places; and, as his father usually resided on Matavai Point, we were, in a manner, surrounded by them. They not only defended us in the night from thieves, but they had an opportunity of observing every thing that passed in the day; and were ready to receive contributions from such girls, as were privately connected with our people, which was usually done every morning; so that the measures he had taken to secure our safety, answered the more essential purpose of enlarging his own profits.

Otoo acquainted Captain Cook, that his presence was required at Oparre, where an audience was to be given to the great personage from Bolabola, and begged he would accompany him thither. The Captain readily consented, expecting to meet with something deserving his notice. Accordingly, they set out on the 16th, attended by Mr Anderson. Nothing, however, occurred, that was interesting or curious. Etary and his followers, presented some coarse cloth and hogs to Otoo, with some ceremony, and a set speech. After this, a consultation was held between them and some other chiefs, about their expedition to Eimeo. Etary, at first, disapproved of it; but his objections were at length over-ruled. It appeared, indeed, the next day, that it was too late to deliberate upon this business; for in the evening, a messenger arrived with intelligence, that there had been some skirmishes,

mish
side,
C
the
acco
shee
the i
ewe,
a pr
kent
divid
this
him,
have
and
at fi
agree
ting
posse
T
had
only
chan
all w
to su
he f
whic
or fe
T
Etary
ther
the
pig.

... between
own people
ces; and,
vay Point,
by them.
ight from
of obser-
day; and
from such
h our peo-
orning; so
secure our
urpose of

... at his pre-
e an audi-
onage from
pany him
ented, ex-
erving his
the 16th,
ng, howe-
or curious.
me coarse
ceremony,
tation was
iefs, about
t first, dis-
e at length
next day,
this busi-
er arrived
some skir-
mishes,

mishes, but that the loss or advantage, on either side, was inconsiderable.

Captain Cook, Mr Anderson, and Omai, in the morning of the 18th, went again to Oparre, accompanied by Otoo; taking with them the sheep which the Captain intended to leave upon the island. They consisted of an English ram and ewe, and three Cape ewes; all which he made a present of to Otoo. All the three cows had taken the bull, he therefore thought it adviseable to divide them, and carry some to Ulietea. With this view, he ordered them to be brought before him, and propos'd to Etary, that if he would have his bull with Otoo, he should have this, and one of the cows. To this proposal, Etary, at first started some objections; but, at last, agreed to it; however, as the cattle were putting into the boat, one of Etary's followers oppos'd the making any change whatever.

The Captain, upon this, suspecting that Etary had agreed to the arrangement, for the present, only to please him, dropp'd the idea of an exchange; and finally determin'd to leave them all with Otoo; whom he strictly enjoin'd not to suffer them to be removed from Oparre, till he should have got a stock of young ones; which he might then dispose of to his friends, or send to the neighbouring islands.

This matter being settled, our gentlemen left Etary and his party, and attend'd Otoo to another place, not far distant, where they found the servants of a chief, waiting with a hog, a pig, and a dog, as a present from their master

to the king. These were delivered with the usual ceremonies, and an harangue, in which the speaker inquired after the health of Otoo, and of his principal people. This compliment was re-echoed in the name of Otoo, by one of his ministers; and then the dispute with Eimeo was formally discussed. The deputies of this chief were advocates for prosecuting the war with vigour, advising Otoo to offer a human sacrifice on the occasion. A chief, who constantly attended the person of Otoo, opposed it, seemingly with great strength of argument. The Captain was now confirmed in his opinion, that Otoo never entered heartily into the spirit of this war. He received repeated messages from Towha, urging him to hasten to his assistance.

Having dined with Otoo, our party returned to Matavai, leaving him at Oparre. This day, and the 19th, we were very sparingly supplied with fruit. Otoo being informed of this, he and his brother, who had particularly attached himself to Captain Clerke, came from Caparre, with a large supply for both ships. All the royal family came the next day with presents, so that we now had more provisions than we could consume.

Our water being all on board, and every thing put in order, the Captain began to think of quitting the island, that he might have a sufficient time for visiting others in this neighbourhood. We therefore removed our observatories and instruments from the shore, and bent the sails.

Early the next morning, Otoo came on board to inform Captain Cook, that the war canoes of
Matavai,

Matavai
ing to
part of
general
was for
for fom
near th
in his l

What
those w
to abou
many r
ready t
the chi
they w
appeare
him an
their m
Otoo t
go thro
were ac
one of v
embark
When
and ad
by tur
During
ed their
tricks,
our jud
and pre
the sid
orders,

Matavai, and of three other districts, were going to join those belonging to Oparre, and that part of the island; and that there would be a general review there. The Squadron of Matavai was soon after in motion; and after parading for some time about the bay, assembled ashore, near the middle of it. Captain Cook now went in his boat to take a survey of them.

What they call their war canoes, which are those with stages, on which they fight, amount to about sixty in number; there are nearly as many more of a smaller size. The Captain was ready to have attended them to Oparre; but the chiefs soon after formed a resolution, that they would not move till the next day. This appeared to be a fortunate delay, as it afforded him an opportunity of getting some insight into their manner of fighting. He therefore desired Otoo to give orders, that some of them should go through the necessary manœuvres. Two were accordingly ordered out into the bay; in one of which, Otoo, Captain Cook and Mr King, embarked; and Omai went on board the other. When we had got sufficient sea-room, we faced, and advanced upon each other, and retreated by turns, as quick as our rowers could paddle. During this, the warriors on the stages flourished their weapons, and played a hundred antic tricks, which could answer no other end, in our judgment, than to work up their passions, and prepare them for fighting. Otoo stood by the side of our stage, and gave the necessary orders, when to advance, and when to retreat.

In

In this, great judgment, and a quick eye, combined together, seemed requisite, to seize every advantage that might offer, and to avoid giving any advantage to the adversary. At last, after advancing and retreating to and from each other, at least a dozen of times, the two canoes closed, head to head, or stage to stage; and, after a short conflict, the troops on our stage were supposed to be all killed, and we were boarded by Omai and his associates. At that very instant, Otoo, and all our paddlers leaped overboard, as if reduced to the necessity of endeavouring to save their lives by swimming.

If Omai's information is to be depended upon, their naval engagements are not always conducted in this manner. He told us, that they sometimes begin with lashing the two vessels together, head to head, and then fight till all the warriors are killed, on one side or the other. But this close combat, I apprehend, is never practised, but when they are determined to conquer or die. Indeed, one or the other must happen; for all agree, that they never give quarter, unless it be to reserve their prisoners for a more cruel death the next day.

The power and strength of these islands lie entirely in their natives. We never heard of a general engagement on land; and all their decisive battles are fought on the water. If the time and place of conflict are fixed upon by both parties, the preceding day and night are spent in diversions and feasting. Toward morning they launch the canoes, put every thing in order,

order
the f
The
figh
their
while
nor v
assem
Eato
as fac
any.
the c
own
land,
their
taken
carrie
thers
day,
the n
As
put o
one o
the f
full
draw
as m
indee
were
like.
this
thin
him.

order, and with the day, begin the battle the fate of which generally decides the dispute. The vanquished save themselves by a precipitate flight; and such as reach the shore, fly with their friends, to the mountains; for the victors, while their fury lasts, spare neither the aged, nor women, nor children. The next day, they assemble at the *morai*, to return thanks to the *Eatooa* for the victory, and to offer up the slain as sacrifices, and the prisoners also, if they have any. After this, a treaty is set on foot; and the conquerors, for the most part, obtain their own terms; by which particular districts of land, and, sometimes, whole islands, change their owners. Omai told us, that he was once taken a prisoner by the men of Bolabola, and carried to that island, where he and some others would have been put to death the next day, if they had not found means to escape in the night.

As soon as this mock-fight was over, Omai put on his suit of armour, mounted a stage in one of the canoes, and was paddled all along the shore of the bay; so that every one had a full view of him. His coat of mail did not draw the attention of his countrymen so much as might have been expected. Some of them, indeed, had seen a part of it before; and there were others again, who had taken such a dislike to Omai, from his imprudent conduct at this place, that they would hardly look at any thing, however singular, that was exhibited by him.

Otoo,

Otoo, and his father, came on board, in the morning of the 22d, to know when Captain Cook propos'd sailing. For hearing that there was a good harbour at Eimeo, he had inform'd them, that he should visit that island on his passage to Huaheine; and they propos'd to accompany him, and that their fleet should sail at the same time, to reinforce Towha. Being ready to take his departure, he submitted to them the appointment of the day; and the Wednesday following was determin'd upon; when he was to receive on board Otoo, his father, mother, and the whole family. These points being agreed on, the Captain propos'd immediately setting out for Oparre, where all the fleet was to assemble this day, and to be reviewed.

As Captain Cook was getting into his boat, news arriv'd that a treaty had been concluded between Towha and Maheine, and Towha's fleet had return'd to Artahooroo. From this unexpected event, the war canoes, instead of rendezvousing at Oparre, were order'd to their respective districts. Captain Cook, however, follow'd Otoo to Oparre, accompanied by Mr King and Omai. Soon after their arrival, a messenger arriv'd from Eimeo, and relat'd the conditions of the peace, or rather truce, it being only for a limited time. The terms being disadvantageous to Otaheite, Otoo was severely censur'd, whose delay, in sending reinforcements, had oblig'd Towha to submit to a disgraceful accommodation. It was even currently report'd, that Towha, resenting the treat-

ment

ment
media
would
attack
declar
inter
sumed
weigh
their i
This
effect,
hostile
the rep
ly disa
ha for
sidered
to Eim
to their
in the
Otoo
Captai
early a
Wh
Oparre
firing
the m
the G
tain C
out of
firous
might
on, h
partic

ment he had received, had declared, that immediately after Captain Cook's departure, he would join his forces to those of Tiaraboo, and attack Otoo. This called upon the Captain to declare, that he was determined to espouse the interest of his friend; and that whosoever presumed to attack him, should experience the weight of his displeasure, when he returned to their island.

This declaration, probably, had the desired effect, and, if Towha did entertain any such hostile intention at first, we heard no more of the report. Whappai, the father of Otoo, highly disapproved of the peace, and censured Towha for concluding it. The old man wisely considered, that Captain Cook's going with them to Eimeo, might have been of singular service to their cause, though he should not interfere in the quarrel. He therefore concluded, that Otoo had acted prudently in waiting for the Captain; though it prevented his giving that early assistance to Towha which he expected.

While we were debating on this subject at Oparre, a messenger arrived from Towha, desiring the attendance of Otoo the next day, at the *morai* in Attahooroo, to return thanks to the Gods for the peace he had concluded. Captain Cook was asked to attend; but being much out of order, he chose rather to decline it. Desirous, however, of knowing what ceremony might be exhibited on so memorable an occasion, he sent Mr King and Omai to observe the particulars, and returned to his ship, attended
by

by Otoo's mother, his three sisters and several other women.

'At first,' says Captain Cook, 'I thought that this numerous train of females came into my boat with no other view than to get a passage to Matavai. But when we arrived at the ship, they told me, they intended passing the night on board, for the express purpose of undertaking the cure of the disorder I complained of; which was a pain of the rheumatic kind, extending from the hip to the foot. I accepted the friendly offer, had a bed spread for them upon the cabin floor, and submitted myself to their directions. I was desired to lay myself down amongst them. Then, as many of them as could get round me, began to squeeze me with both hands, from head to foot, but more particularly on the parts where the pain was lodged, till they made my bones crack, and my flesh became a perfect mummy. In short, after undergoing this discipline about a quarter of an hour, I was glad to get away from them. However, the operation gave me immediate relief, which encouraged me to submit to another rubbing down before I went to bed; and it was so effectual that I found myself pretty easy all the night after. My female physicians repeated their prescription the next morning, before they went ashore, and again, in the evening, when they returned on board; after which, I found the pains entirely removed; and the cure being perfected, they took their leave of me the following morning. This they call *romee*; an operation

tion w
brush,
use of
mongst
formed
women
and tir
immed
legs; a
ceeding

On
Mr Kir
roo; a
he had
set, we
About
of Tett
meeting
be inter
themsel
which
being a
to him,
ately lai
ha's pec
ter I h
Otoo,
nor sayi
He aske
I answer
that I w
him kno
conversa
tion

tion which, in my opinion, far exceeds the flesh-brush, or any thing of the kind that we make use of externally. It is universally practised amongst these Islanders; being sometimes performed by the men, but more generally by the women. If at any time, one appears languid and tired, and sits down by any of them, they immediately begin to practise the *roinee* upon his legs; and I have always found it to have an exceedingly good effect.

On Thursday the 25th of September, Otoo, Mr King, and Omai, returned from Attahooroo; and Mr King gave a narrative of what he had seen to the following effect: 'At sunset, we embarked in a canoe, and left Oparre. About nine o'clock we landed at that extremity of Tettaha, which joins to Attahooroo. The meeting of Otoo and Towha, I expected, would be interesting. Otoo and his attendants seated themselves upon the beach, near the canoe in which Towha sat. He was then asleep; but being awakened, and Otoo's name mentioned to him, a plantain-tree and a dog were immediately laid at Otoo's feet; and several of Towha's people came and conversed with him. After I had been for sometime seated close to Otoo, Towha neither stirring from his canoe, nor saying any thing to us, I repaired to him. He asked me if *Toote* was displeased with him; I answered, No; and that he was his *tuio*; and that I was ordered to go to Attahooroo, to let him know it. Omai then entered into a long conversation with this chief; but I could not

gather any information from him. On my returning to Otoo, he desired that I should go to eat, and then to sleep; in consequence of which Omai and I left him. On questioning Omai on that head, he said, Towha was lame, and therefore could not stir; but that Otoo and he would soon converse together in private. This was probably true; for those we left with Otoo came to us in a little time; and about ten minutes after, Otoo himself arrived, when we all went to sleep in his canoe.

The *ava* was the next morning in great plenty. One man drank to such excess that he lost his senses, and appeared to be convulsed. He was held by two men, who busied themselves in plucking off his hair by the roots. I left this spectacle to see a more affecting one. It was the meeting of Towha and his wife, and a young girl, who was said to be his daughter. After the ceremony of cutting their heads, and discharging plenty of blood and tears, they washed, embraced the chief, and seemed perfectly unconcerned. But the young girl's sufferings were not yet concluded. Terridiri (Oberca's son) arrived; and she, with great composure, repeated those ceremonies to him which she had just performed on meeting her father. Towha having brought a war canoe from Eimeo, I enquired if he had killed the people belonging to her; and was informed, that there was not a person in her when she was captured.

About ten or eleven o'clock we left Tettaha, and landed close to the *morai* of Attahooro early
in

in the
on the
hogs
would
but no
Potato
meo,
which
fed for
ten rep
Otoo v
heard,

The
ven or
near
brough
Towha
was co
brough
dle of
head o
three p
grave;
branch
sheath

The
at inter
ed a n
by the
nued n
er, the
Otoo r
ing in

Ocean.

On my re-
ould go to
ce of which
ning Omai
lame, and
otoo and he
vate. This
with Otoo
ut ten mi-
hen we all

great plen-
that he lost
ulfed. He
emselves in
I left this
It was the
d a young
ter. After
s, and dif-
they wash-
d perfectly
s sufferings
i (Oberea's
composure,
ich she had
r. Towha
imeo, I en-
eloning to
was not a
ft Tettaha,
hooro early
in

in the afternoon. Three canoes lay hauled up-
on the beach, opposite the *morai*, having three
hogs in each. We expected the solemnity
would have been performed the same afternoon;
but nothing was done, as neither Towha nor
Potatou had joined us. A chief came from Ei-
meo, with a small pig, and a plantain-tree,
which he placed at Otoo's feet. They conver-
sed sometime together, and the Eimeo chief of-
ten repeating the word, *Warry, Warry*, (false,) Otoo was probably relating to him what he had heard, and the other contradicted it.

The next day, Towha and Potatou, with se-
ven or eight large canoes, arrived, and landed
near the *morai*. Several plantain-trees were
brought to Otoo, on behalf of different chiefs.
Towha remained in his canoe. The ceremony
was commenced by the principal priest who
brought out the *maro*, wrapped up, and a bun-
dle of a conic shape. These were placed at the
head of what I supposed to be a grave. Then
three priests sat down, at the other end of the
grave; having with them a plantain-tree, a
branch of some other kind of tree, and the
sheath of the flower of the cocoa-nut-tree.

The priests separately repeated sentences; and
at intervals, two, and sometimes all three, chant-
ed a melancholy ditty, very little attended to
by the natives. This kind of recitative contin-
ued near an hour. Then, after a short pray-
er, the chief priest uncovered the *maro*, and
Otoo rose up and wrapped it about him, hold-
ing in his hand a bonnet, composed of the red

feathers of the tropic bird, mixed with other blackish feathers. He stood opposite the three priests, who continued their prayers for about ten minutes; when a man rising suddenly from the crowd, said something ending with *heiva!* and the crowd echoed back to him three times *Earee!* The company then repaired to the opposite side of a large pile of stones, where is the king's *morai*; which is not much unlike a large grave. Here the same ceremony was again performed, and ended with three cheers. The *maro* was now wrapped up, and ornamented by the addition of a small piece of red feathers.

The people now proceeded to a large hut, near the *morai*, where they seated themselves in solemn order. An oration was then made by a man of Tiaraboo, which ended in about ten minutes. He was followed by a man of Attahooroo; Potatou spoke next, and with much more fluency and grace than any of them. Tootoo, Otoo's orator, exhibited, after him, and then a man from Eimeo. Some other speeches were made, but not attended to. Omai said, that the substance of their speeches recommended friendship, and not fighting; but as many of the speakers expressed themselves with great warmth, there were, perhaps, some recriminations and protestations of their future good intentions. In the midst of their harangues, a man of Attahooroo rose up having a sling fastened to his waist, and a large stone upon his shoulder. After parading for about fifteen minutes

minutes

minutes
senter
togeth
feet,
carried
Otoo
casion

Ret
set in,
fant w
two la
it, poi
We w
perfor

With
on, a
raged,
ha ha

Fro
as rela
thank
firmat
by Mi
the co
human
Cook
was la
the ki
the co
scribe
here;
scribe
very d

minutes in the open space, and chanting a few short sentences, he threw the stone down. This stone, together with a plantain-tree that lay at Otoo's feet, were, at the conclusion of the speeches, carried to the *anorai*; one of the priests, and Otoo with him, saying something upon the occasion.

Returning to Oparre, the sea-breeze having set in, we were obliged to land, and had a pleasant walk from Tettaha to Oparre. A tree, with two large bundles of dried leaves suspended upon it, pointed out the boundary of the two districts. We were accompanied by the man who had performed the ceremony of the stone and sling. With him Otoo's father held a long conversation, and appeared extremely angry. He was enraged, as I understood, at the part which Towaha had taken in the Eimeo business.

From what can be judged of this solemnity, as related by Mr King, it had not been only a thanksgiving, as Omai told us, but rather a confirmation of the treaty. The grave, mentioned by Mr King, appears to be the very spot where the celebration of the rites began, when the human sacrifice was offered, at which Captain Cook was present, and before which the victim was laid. It is here also, that they first invest the kings with the *maro*. Omai, who had seen the ceremony when Otoo was made king, described the whole solemnity, when we were here; which is nearly the same as that now described by Mr King; though perhaps, upon a very different occasion. The plantain-tree is al-

ways the first thing introduced in all their religious ceremonies, as well as in all their public and private debates; and probably, on many other occasions. While Towha was at Eimeo, he sent one or more messengers to Otoo every day. Every messenger, at all times, carried a young plantain-tree in his hand, which he laid at the foot of Otoo, before he mentioned his errand; then seated himself before him, and related the particulars of his message. When two men are in such high dispute that blows are expected to ensue, if one should lay a plantain-tree before the other, they both become cool, and proceed in the argument without further animosity. It is, indeed, the olive branch of these people upon all occasions.

As our friends knew that we were upon the point of sailing, they all paid us a visit on the 26th, and brought more hogs with them than we wanted; for, having no salt left to preserve any, we had fully sufficient for our present use.

Captain Cook accompanied Otoo, the next day, to Oparre; and before he left it, took a survey of the cattle and poultry, which he had consigned to his friend's care. Every thing was in a promising way; and seemed properly attended to. Two of the geese, as well as two of the ducks, were sitting; but the pea-hen and turkey-hen had neither of them begun to lay. He took four goats from Otoo, two of which he intended to leave at Ulietea; and to reserve the other two for the use of any other islands he might touch at in his passage to the north.

' A
I shall
ple are
their pu
at differ
was a sp
fession
and pro
carried
him, th
he had
would b
must no
and I w
the glas
same tin
by it.
ting it;
with hi
Clerke
did not
Otoo;
of more
give him
than he
' Well,
case, yo
a loser,
accepted
be told
' Our
this islan
away. T

‘A circumstance,’ says Captain Cook, ‘which I shall now mention, will shew, that these people are capable of much address and art, to gain their purposes. Amongst other things, which, at different times, I had given to this chief, was a spying-glass. After having it in his possession two or three days, tired of its novelty, and probably, finding it of no use to him, he carried it privately to Captain Clerke, and told him, that as he had been his very good friend, he had got a present for him, which he knew would be very agreeable. ‘But,’ says Otoo, you must not let *Toote* know it, because he wants it, and I would not let him have it.’ He then put the glass into Captain Clerke’s hands; at the same time, assuring him, that he came honestly by it. Captain Clerke, at first, declined accepting it; but Otoo insisted upon it, and left it with him. Some days after, he put Captain Clerke in mind of the glass; who, though he did not want it, was yet desirous of obliging Otoo; and thinking that a few axes would be of more use at this island, produced four to give him in return. Otoo no sooner saw this than he said, ‘*Toote* offered me five for it.’— ‘Well,’ says Captain Clerke, ‘if that be the case, your friendship for me shall not make you a loser, and you shall have six axes.’ These he accepted; but desired again, that I might not be told what he had done.

‘Our friend Omai got one good thing, at this island; for the many good things he gave away. This was a very fine double sailing canoe, completely

completely equipped, and fit for the sea. Some time before, I made up for him a suit of English colours; but he thought these too valuable to be used at this time; and patched up a parcel of colours, such as flags and pendants, to the number of ten or a dozen, which he spread on different parts of his vessel, all at the same time; and drew together as many people to look at her, as a man of war would, dressed, in an European port. These streamers of Omai were a mixture of English, French, Spanish, and Dutch, which were all the European colours that he had seen. When I was last at this island, I gave to Otoo an English jack and pendant, and to Towha a pendant; which I now found they had preserved with the greatest care.

Omai had also provided himself with a good stock of cloth and cocoa-nut oil, which are not only in greater plenty, but much better, at Otaheite, than at any of the Society Islands; inso-much, that they are articles of trade. Omai would not have behaved so inconsistently, and so much unlike himself, as he did, in many instances, but for his sister and brother-in-law, who, together with a few more of their acquaintance, engrossed him entirely to themselves, with no other view than to strip him of every thing he had got. And they would, undoubtedly, have succeeded in their scheme, if I had not put a stop to it in time, by taking the most useful articles of his property into my possession. But even this would not have saved Omai from ruin, if I had suffered these relations of his

his to
his inte
they ha
ther vi
shew th
ed in th
too wel
' On
formed
he desir
home,
no Pret
that he
tance.
this ma
entirely
him the
he fully
for the
ceived.
had bee
war; b
bab, abo
seemed
was dec
work, w
As it wa
could or
but it w
his pres
' The
this isla
sion, th

sea. Some of English valuable to up a parcel nts, to the e spread on same time; to look at , in an Eu-Omai were anish, and ean colours t this island, d pendant, now found care. with a good hich are not etter, at O-ands; info-ade. Omai stently, and in many in-ther in-law, f their ac-y to them-strip him of would, un-scheme, if y taking the nto my pos-ave saved O-e relations of his

his to have gone with, or to have followed us to, his intended place of settlement, Huaheine. This they had intended; but I disappointed their further views of plunder, by forbidding them to shew themselves in that island, while I remained in the neighbourhood; and they knew me too well not to comply.

On the 28th, Otoo came on board, and informed me, that he had got a canoe, which he desired I would take with me, and carry home, as a present from him to the *Earee rabié no Pretane*; it being the only thing, he said, that he could send, worth his Majesty's acceptance. I was not a little pleased with Otoo, for this mark of his gratitude. It was a thought entirely his own, not one of us having given him the least hint about it; and it shewed, that he fully understood to whom he was indebted for the most valuable presents that he had received. At first, I thought, that this canoe had been a model of one of their vessels of war; but I soon found, that it was a small *ivá-bah*, about sixteen feet long. It was double, and seemed to have been built for the purpose; and was decorated with all those pieces of carved work, which they usually fix upon their canoes. As it was too large for me to take on board, I could only thank him for his good intention; but it would have pleased him much better, if his present could have been accepted.

The frequent visits we had lately paid to this island, seem to have created a full persuasion, that the intercourse will not be discontinued,

nued. It was strictly enjoined to me by Otoo, to request, in his name, the *Earee rabie no Pretane*, to send him, by the next ships, red feathers, and the birds that produce them; axes; half a dozen musquets, with powder and shot; and, by no means to forget horses.

When these people make us a present, it is customary for them to let us know what they expect in return; and we find it convenient to gratify them; by which means our presents come dearer to us than what we get by barter. But, being sometimes pressed by occasional scarcity, we could have recourse to our friends for a supply as a present, when we could not get it by any other method. Upon the whole, therefore, this way of traffic was full as advantageous to us as to the natives. Captain Cook, in general, paid for each separate article as he received it, except in his intercourse with Otoo. His presents were so numerous, that no account was kept between him and the captain. Whatever he asked for, if it could be spared, the Captain never denied him, and he always found him moderate in his demands.

Captain Cook would not have quitted Otaheite so soon as he did, if he could have prevailed upon Omai to fix himself there. There was not even a probability of our being better supplied with provisions elsewhere, than we continued to be here, even at the time of our leaving it. Besides, such a friendship and confidence subsisted between us and the inhabitants, as could hardly be expected at any other place; and,

and, it
been on
cident,
been a t
is proba
conduct
a traffic
share of
tain by
was, in
view wit
Captain
the most
fer them
Omai wa
ing instr
them th
conduct,
tend a de
not alwa
they are
plain of
luable th
Cook, v
the day
the same
From th
ments to
and the
being so
The few
are high
asking u

e by Otoo,
hie no Pre-
s, red fea-
em; axes;
and shot;

esent, it is
what they
venient to
ur presents
t by barter.
sional scar-
friends for
d not get it
hole, there-
vantageous
ook, in ge-
as he re-
with Otoo.
no account
in. What-
ed, the Cap-
s found him

quitted Ota-
d have pre-
ere. There
eing better
han we con-
e of our lea-
dconfidence
abitants, as
other place;
and,

and, it was rather extraordinary, had never been once interrupted or suspended by any accident, or misunderstanding; nor had there been a theft committed, worthy of notice. It is probable, however, that their regularity of conduct resulted from their fear of interrupting a traffic, which might procure them a greater share of our commodities, than they could obtain by plunder or pilfering. This point, indeed, was, in some degree, settled at the first interview with their chiefs, after our arrival. For Captain Cook declared then to the natives, in the most decisive terms, that he would not suffer them to rob us, as they had formerly done. Omai was singularly useful in this business, being instructed by the Captain to point out to them the happy consequences of their honest conduct, and the fatal mischiefs that must attend a deviation from it. But the chiefs have it not always in their power to prevent thefts; they are often robbed themselves; and complain of it as the worst of evils. The most valuable things that Otoo received from Captain Cook, were left in the Captain's possession till the day before we sailed; Otoo declaring, at the same time, that they were no where so safe. From the acquisition of new riches, the inducements to pilfering must certainly have increased; and the chiefs are sensible of this, from their being so extremely desirous of having chests. The few that the Spaniards left amongst them are highly prized; and they were continually asking us for some. Captain Cook had one
made

made for Otoo, the dimensions of which were eight feet in length, five in breadth, and about three in depth. Locks and bolts are not considered as a sufficient security; but it must be large enough for two people to sleep upon, and consequently guard it in the night.

It may appear extraordinary, that we could never get any distinct account of the time when the Spaniards arrived, the time they stayed, and when they departed. The more we made inquiry into this matter, the more we were convinced of the incapability of most of these people to remember, calculate, or note the time, when past events happened; especially if for a longer period than eighteen or twenty months. It however appeared, by the inscription upon the cross, and by the information of the most intelligent of the natives, that two ships came to Oheitepeha in 1774, not long after Captain Cook left Matavai, which was in May the same year. The live stock they left here, consisted of one bull, some goats, hogs, and dogs, and the male of another animal; which we were afterwards informed was a ram, and was, at this time, at Bolabola.

The hogs are large; have already much improved the breed originally found by us upon the island; and, on our late arrival, were very numerous. Goats are also in plenty, there being hardly a chief without some. The dogs that the Spaniards put ashore are of two or three sorts: if they had all been hanged, instead of being left upon the island, it would have been better

better
ram fo
have a
remain
Two o
time i
roved
the isl
staid t
peha,
days.
have l
shews
deavor
still in
bring
and m
island
tain. C
return
which
him;
on of
his pe
how e
heite,
never
been
ing h
ducte
tablis
them
ever

V

which were
and about
e not confi-
it must be
upon, and

we could
time when
stayed, and
e made in-
e were con-
these peo-
e the time,
lly if for a
ty months.
ption upon
of the most
ships came
fter Captain
ay the same
e, consisted
dogs, and
h we were
nd was, at

much im-
by us upon
were very
, there be-
e dogs that
o or three
instead of
have been
better

better for the natives. Captain Cook's young ram fell a victim to one of these animals. We have already mentioned the four Spaniards that remained on the island after their ships left it. Two of these were priests who resided the whole time in the house at Oheitepeha; but Mateema roved about continually, visiting many parts of the island. After he and his companions had staid ten months, two ships arriving at Oheitepeha, took them aboard, and sailed again in five days. Whatever design the Spaniards might have had upon this island, this hasty departure shews they have now laid it aside. They endeavoured to make the natives believe, that they still intended to return; and that they would bring with them houses, all kinds of animals, and men and women who were to settle on the island. Otoo, when he mentioned this to Captain Cook, added, that if the Spaniards should return, they should not come to Matavai Fort, which, he said, was ours. The idea pleased him; but he did not consider that the completion of it would deprive him of his kingdom, and his people of their liberties. Though this shews how easily a settlement might be made at Orahete, it is hoped that such a circumstance will never happen. Our occasional visits may have been of service to its inhabitants, but (considering how most European establishments are conducted among Indian nations) a permanent establishment amongst them would probably, give them just cause to lament that our ships had ever discovered it. Indeed, a measure of this

It can neither answer the purposes of public ambition, nor of private avarice.

It has been already observed that Captain [] received a visit from one of the two natives of this island, who had been taken to Lima by the Spaniards. It is somewhat remarkable that [] never saw him afterwards, especially as the Captain received him with uncommon civility.

Captain [], however, supposed that Omai had [] him at a distance from him, from motives of jealousy, he being a traveller, that in some degree, might vie with himself. Our touching generosity was a lucky circumstance for Omai; he prided himself in having visited a place belonging to Spain, as well as this man. Captain [], who has seen the other man, spoke of [] as a low fellow, a little out of his senses; and his own countrymen entertained the same opinion of him. In short, these two adventures seemed to be held in little or no esteem. [] had not been so fortunate, indeed, as to [] home with such valuable property as had [] bestowed upon Omai; whose advantages in going to England were so great, that if he [] sink into the same state of insignificance, [] only himself to blame for it.

THE END OF VOLUME FIRST.

4843/44

Ocean.

thought of,
of public

at Captain
two natives
to Lima by
remarkable that
ally as the
non civility.
at Omai had
own motives
at in some
our touching
for Omai ;
a place be-
Captain
spoke of
his senses ;
the same
adventu-
no esteem.
good, as to
erty as had
advantages
, that if he
gnificance,

